



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

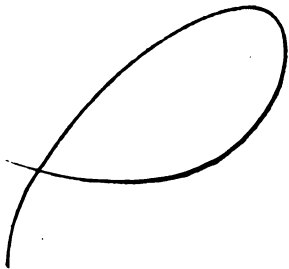
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

LLR
BERKELEY
LIBRARY *46*
UNIVERSITY OF
CALIFORNIA

EDUCATION LIBR.



JOHN S. PRELL
Civil & Mechanical Engineer.
SAN FRANCISCO, CAL.
POPULAR SCHOOL HISTORY

OF THE
UNITED STATES,

IN WHICH ARE INSERTED AS PART OF THE NARRATIVE

SELECTIONS FROM THE WRITINGS OF EMINENT AMERICAN
HISTORIANS, AND OTHER AMERICAN
WRITERS OF NOTE.

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

*The Declaration of Independence, and the Constitution of the
United States, with Copious Notes.*

FULLY ILLUSTRATED WITH MAPS, PORTRAITS, AND VIEWS

BY

JOHN J. ANDERSON, PH.D.,

*Author of a "Grammar School History of the United States," a "Manual of General
History," a "History of England," a "History of France," "The Historical
Reader," "The United States Reader," etc., etc.*

JOHN S. PRELL
Civil & Mechanical Engineer.
SAN FRANCISCO, CAL.

NEW YORK:
CLARK & MAYNARD, PUBLISHERS,
5 BARCLAY STREET.
1880.

EDUCATION LIBR.

Anderson's Historical Series.

A Junior Class History of the United States.
Illustrated with hundreds of portraits, views, maps, etc. 272 pages. 16mo.

A Grammar School History of the United States.
Annotated ; and illustrated with numerous portraits and views, and with more than forty maps, many of which are colored. 340 pp. 16mo.

A Pictorial School History of the United States.
Fully illustrated with maps, portraits, vignettes, etc. 490 pp. 12mo.

A Popular School History of the United States,
in which are inserted as a part of the narrative selections from the writings of eminent American historians and other American writers of note. Fully illustrated with maps, colored and plain ; portraits, views, etc. 356 pp. 12mo.

A Manual of General History. Illustrated with numerous engravings and with beautifully colored maps showing the changes in the political divisions of the world, and giving the location of important places. 488 pp. 12mo.

A School History of England. Illustrated with numerous engravings and with colored maps showing the geographical changes in the country at different periods. 333 pp. 12mo.

A School History of France. Illustrated with numerous engravings, colored and uncolored maps. 373 pp. 12mo.

A History of Rome. Amply illustrated with maps, plans, and engravings. 543 pp. By R. F. LEIGHTON, Ph.D. (Lips.).

A School History of Greece. In preparation.

Anderson's Bloss's Ancient History. Illustrated with engravings, colored maps, and a chart. 445 pp. 12mo.

The Historical Reader, embracing selections in prose and verse, from standard writers of Ancient and Modern History ; with a Vocabulary of Difficult Words, and Biographical and Geographical Indexes. 544 pp. 12mo.

The United States Reader, embracing selections from eminent American historians, orators, statesmen, and poets, with explanatory observations, notes, etc. Arranged so as to form a Class-manual of United States History. Illustrated with colored historical maps. 414 pp. 12mo.

CLARK & MAYNARD, Publishers,

5 Barclay Street, New York.

Copyright, 1879, by JOHN J. ANDERSON.

GIFT

PREFACE.

A TEXT-BOOK upon the history of our country so compiled as to be a pleasant reading-book, with enough variety to give it all the interest properly belonging to a reading-book, and, at the same time, contain all the United States history that is required for ordinary school purposes, has long been desired by many teachers.

It has been the aim of the author of this work to meet this want. He has realized, however, that to undertake the preparation of the work without outside assistance would surely end in failure, for no such undertaking could possibly have within itself the elements of variety so necessary in a school reader. But variety, merely as such, is of no special importance. It is that variety which not only elevates, but cultivates and ennobles the mind of the pupil—a variety only to be obtained by selecting from the writings that have met the approval of men of judgment and scholarship.

The plan carried out in this volume, it is believed, fully accomplishes this object. The works of all the American writers who have distinguished themselves in the domain of historic authorship, have been diligently consulted; and, as far as seemed possible consistently with the size and scope of the undertaking in hand, these authors have been made to contribute to the contents of the volume. It may, therefore, be said to be the work of many—fifty or more—of our best writers, past as well as present; and, in addition to its merits as a continuous historical narrative, it may be regarded as a text-book for young students in American literature. To know something of Bancroft, Palfrey, Prescott, Motley, Haw-

thorne, Irving, Bryant, Hildreth, Sparks, Everett, Parkman, and other distinguished American writers, and to have some knowledge of what and how they wrote, is not only to make a good beginning in an acquaintance with our leading authors and with the best American literature, but it is to create a taste for such literature and a desire for further acquaintance with these authors.

In presenting another history of our country as a text-book for schools, it has been the aim of the writer to give only those events that were important in themselves, or that had an important bearing upon or relation to important results. It will be seen, then, that very much of that which finds a place in the ordinary school history, is not found here. Details, except as far as they are necessary to the proper understanding of what should be known, are entirely omitted. Generally, they are not worth knowing, and, consequently, no time should be spent in lumbering the mind with them. For the same reason, dates have been given sparingly. The most prominent, those that mark the great events, are clearly given, while other events are regarded as contributing to, or resulting from these. More prominence has been given to the facts that have to do with the nation's progress in civil matters than to those of a military character. Therefore, the invention of the cotton-gin and the magnetic telegraph and the construction of railroads and steamboats, with the changes resulting therefrom, have been regarded and treated as of more value than the numerous small battles that in no wise modified the tendency of great events.

Too much importance cannot be given to geography in its connection with history. It is certain that an accurate knowledge of history cannot be acquired and retained without a full and clear knowledge of its accompanying geography. Events, to be remembered, must be associated with place. To study history in any other way is to waste time, as every successful student and teacher must be able to testify. The numerous maps in this work cover all the geography belong-

ing to the events narrated that have occurred within the limits of the United States and Mexico. Whenever any place is mentioned, its exact location should at once be ascertained.

This, like all the other books published by the writer, is a teaching manual. If history is to be taught in our schools, merely reading the story will not answer. It must be taught again and again just as other subjects are taught. If this course is not pursued and we look for satisfactory results, then are we unreasonable in our expectations.

The Summaries in this book, placed at the close of the periods, are recommended to such teachers as are preparing classes for examination. These will be found, in most cases, all-sufficient. Afterward it will be a labor of love to put flesh upon the skeleton and inspire it with life.

Hints for Teaching the History.

1. "Give out" a short lesson, at the same time designating a map to be drawn by the pupils, on paper or slate, the map to show, among other things, the location of the important places mentioned in the lesson. ~~Let~~ Let it be understood that no lesson is thoroughly acquired by a pupil until he has learned how every place mentioned in it is located.

2. Let the lesson be read by the class, care being taken to have all the proper names correctly pronounced. Endeavor, also, to give interest to the lesson by enlarging upon the facts, throwing in historical incidents, and referring to authors.

RECITATION.

3. Let the maps be examined and criticised. In this duty the teacher may be aided by a system of examinations carried out by the pupils themselves, who will derive benefit in many respects by the exercise.

4. Bring out the facts of the lesson with clearness, particularly the relation of causes to results. Use outline wall-maps, and question freely on the geography. Occasionally have the maps drawn on the blackboard. ~~Permit~~ Permit no answer to pass if it is not clear that the pupil is acquainted with the location of the places referred to in it.

REVIEWS.

5. Review by topics. Besides the oral method, the composition plan (see. p. 49) should occasionally be used.

6. Dates. Do not require dates too freely,—the month and the day of the month in no case, unless there is a special reason for it. Take the date of an important event as a turning-point; and when it is well fixed in the mind, arrange on the one side the train of events as causes, and on the other the train of results. (See model, p. 180.)

SELECTIONS AND AUTHORS.

The Northmen's Discoveries. From "History of the Northmen," etc.
Wheaton..... 15

Henry Wheaton.—This eminent scholar and statesman was born in Rhode Island in 1785. He held several important diplomatic positions in Europe, and while residing in Denmark published his "History of the Northmen." His contributions to American periodicals were numerous and marked by great ability; but his fame rests mainly upon his "Elements of International Law" and his "History of the Laws of Nations." The latter appeared originally in French at Leipsic. "No one, save Washington," says Allibone, "has done more to make the name of America respected by scholars and honored by statesmen." His death occurred in 1848.

Landing of Columbus. From "The Life and Voyages of Columbus."
Irving..... 21

Washington Irving, one of the most distinguished of modern authors, was born in New York City in 1783. The production which first gave him a decided reputation was the famous "History of New York, by Diedrich Knickerbocker," published in 1809. This is a work of inimitable humor, and was read with the greatest delight on both sides of the Atlantic. Sir Walter Scott enthusiastically admired it. The "Sketch Book" was published in London, and greatly enhanced the author's reputation. He also published "Life and Voyages of Columbus," "The Alhambra," "Bracebridge Hall," "Life of Washington," and many other popular works. Irving's style is remarkable for its elegance and copiousness; while the purity of his sentiments, his sympathy with mankind, his geniality and kindliness, his innocent and playful satire, mixed with the pathetic, make his writings an inexhaustible fountain of intellectual enjoyment. He died at his residence, Sunnyside, a charming spot on the banks of the Hudson, November 28, 1859, universally loved and esteemed for his artlessness and benevolence of character, and honored not only for his genius, but for the virtues by which it was adorned.

Return of Columbus to Spain. From "The History of the Reign of Ferdinand and Isabella." *Prescott*..... 23

William H. Prescott.—This eminent historian was born in Salem, Mass., in 1796, and was the grandson of Colonel Prescott, of Revolutionary fame. His principal works are the "History of Ferdinand and Isabella," "The Conquest of Mexico," "The Conquest of Peru," and the "History of the Reign of Philip II." The last-mentioned work he did not live to finish, dying in 1859. These various productions constitute a splendid contribution to English literature. The materials for their composition were collected with the most laborious research, and have been arranged with very great judgment and skill, while their style is a model for elegance and correctness. Though in affluent circumstances, and affected from early manhood with blindness, Mr. Prescott labored in his literary undertakings with indefatigable industry, and accomplished a task beyond the powers of most men in the enjoyment of every faculty. His high moral worth, amiable disposition, and geniality of manners won for him the esteem of a very large circle of friends.

The Indians. From "The History of the United States." *Ramsay*. . . 25

David Ramsay, M.D., was born in Pennsylvania in 1749. After graduating at the College of New Jersey, he studied medicine, and commenced practice in Charleston, South Carolina, where he resided during the remainder of his life. He was for several years (1782-5) a member of Congress, and during one year its president. His death was caused by a pistol-shot wound, received in the streets of Charleston, in 1815. In 1785 he published his "History of the Revolution in South Carolina," and five years afterward the "History of the American Revolution," which was received with universal commendation. His "Life of Washington" appeared in 1807, and the "History of South Carolina" in 1809. He was also the author of several other works. As a historian he was diligent in research, and his narrative is characterized by accuracy and impartiality, and is expressed in a simple and elegant style.

The Mound Builders. From "The Popular History of the United States." *Bryant and Gay*..... 27

William C. Bryant, though pronounced "the foremost of American poets," was also distinguished as a prose writer. He was many years the editor of the New York *Evening Post*. He was born in Massachusetts in 1794. His death occurred in New York City in 1878. He was universally esteemed for his active beneficence, unbending integrity, and kindness of disposition. (The extract is probably from Gay's pen.)

Were the Indians the Mound Builders? From "The Pre-Historic Races in the United States." *Foster*..... 29

John W. Foster, LL.D., an eminent geologist and archaeologist, was

born in Massachusetts in 1815. Besides the above work, he was the author of the "Physical Geography of the Mississippi Valley." His death occurred in 1878.

The New Lands not India. From "The Conquest of Peru." *Prescott.* 30

De Soto's Expedition. From "The Pioneers of France in the New World." *Parkman.*..... 34

Francis Parkman, a native of Boston, was born in 1823. His various histories, "The Conspiracy of Pontiac," "The Pioneers, etc.," "The Jesuits in North America," and other works, "exhibit a singular combination of the talents of the historian with those of the novelist." They have been warmly commended by critics on both sides of the Atlantic. No historical course of reading can be complete that excludes these charming volumes.

Discovery of the Mississippi. From "The Conquest of Florida." *T. Irving.*..... 35

Theodore Irving, LL.D., nephew of Washington Irving, was born in New York in 1809. Besides "The Conquest," he has written "The Fountain of Waters," and contributed numerous articles, mostly of a devotional character, to periodicals. His style is "terse and graceful."

Burial of De Soto. A translation from the "Knight of Elvas," a Spanish narrative. *Smith.*..... 36

Buckingham Smith was born in Georgia in 1810. He published a number of works, most of which were translations from the Spanish. "Few American scholars have been so conversant with the materials of early American history as Mr. Smith." He died in 1871.

Drake's Voyage Around the World. From "The History of Oregon and California." *Robert Greenhow.*..... 37
(See note, page 198.)

Marquette on the Mississippi. From "The Discovery and Exploration of the Mississippi River." *Shea.*..... 41

John D. Gilmary Shea, LL.D., was born in New York in 1824. He is the author of a number of works of great merit, but is best known for those on American history.

La Salle descends the Mississippi. From "The Discovery of the Great West." *Parkman.*..... 43

Settlement of Jamestown. From "The History of the Colony and Ancient Dominion of Virginia." *Campbell.*..... 53

Charles Campbell was born in Virginia in 1807. His principal publication is the history from which we make the extract. It is a narrative of the events from the discovery and settlement of this country to the surrender of Cornwallis in 1781. It is a work of faithful accuracy.

The Gold Excitement. From "The Life of Captain John Smith." *Hillard*..... 55

George S. Hillard, "lawyer, orator, and man of letters," was born in Maine in 1808; he died in 1879. He was the author of "Six Months in Italy," a book of great interest, and the "Life and Campaigns of George B. McClellan," as well as other works. By educators he was known through his series of School Readers. "He was one of the most polished writers of New England."

Marriage of Pocahontas. From "The History of the United States." *Bancroft*..... 56

George Bancroft, one of the most eminent of American historians, was born in Massachusetts in 1800. He early manifested remarkable talent, graduating at Harvard College with the highest honors at the age of seventeen. The publication of his great work, "The History of the United States," was commenced in 1834, and is still unfinished. "Parts of it may be reckoned among the most splendid in all historical literature." Mr. Bancroft has filled several important political offices, having been Secretary of the Navy under President Polk, and having, as Minister-Plenipotentiary to Great Britain, represented the United States from 1846 to 1849.

The Pilgrims in England. From "The Life of John of Barneveld." *Motley*..... 61

John Lethrop Motley, the eminent historian, was born in Massachusetts in 1814. His "Rise of the Dutch Republic," "The History of the United Netherlands," and "Life of John of Barneveld" are among the ablest contributions to American literature. "His histories are, in some degree, epics. The same high, chivalrous tone which rings through them has been heard in every crisis of his public career." He was Minister to Russia, and afterward to England. At the time of his death (1877) he was engaged in writing a history of the "Thirty Years' War."

Embarkation of the Pilgrims. From "The New England History." *Elliott*..... 63

Charles W. Elliott, descended from the pious and learned John Eliot, "the Apostle to the Indians," was born in Connecticut in 1817. One of his best books is "St. Domingo: its Revolution and its Hero, Toussaint L'Ouverture."

Settlement of Plymouth. From "The History of New England."
Palfrey..... 64

John Gorham Palfrey was born in Boston in 1796, and educated in Harvard University, in which institution he was afterward appointed Professor of Sacred Literature. His lectures on the "Evidences of Christianity" and on the "Hebrew Scriptures," as well as his numerous literary, historical, and political discourses, have been highly commended. His great work, the "History of New England," the first volume of which was published in 1858, has been universally approved and admired for its thorough appreciation of the Puritan character, its accuracy of statement, and the purity and dignity of its style.

The Great Aim of the Pilgrims. From an Oration. *Webster*..... 67

Daniel Webster, the celebrated American statesman and orator, was born in New Hampshire in 1782. After graduating from Dartmouth College, he studied law, and was admitted to the bar in 1805. In 1818 he became a representative in Congress, and from that time until his death, in 1852, was almost uninterruptedly in the public service, as a member of Congress or a cabinet officer. In 1842, while Secretary of State, under President Tyler, he negotiated the treaty with England, by which the north-eastern boundary question was settled. His great orations may, it has been thought, claim a favorable comparison with even the most brilliant of ancient times.

Hooker's Emigration. From "The History of Connecticut." *Hollister*..... 69

G. H. Hollister.—Besides the above and other valuable works, he was the author of "Mount Hope; or, Philip, King of the Wampanoags," an historical romance of very great merit.

A Sabbath in New Haven. From "Historical Discourses." *Bacon*.. 70

Leonard Bacon, D.D., a "distinguished champion of New England Congregationalism," was born in Michigan in 1802. He has written several books and contributed largely to periodicals. Since 1825 he has been the pastor of a church in New Haven, Ct.

Williams's Flight to Rhode Island. From "The History of Rhode Island." *Arnold*..... 72

Samuel Greene Arnold was born in Rhode Island in 1821. Besides the above valuable work, he has written numerous magazine articles, delivered many addresses of great merit, and held several eminent civil positions. His death occurred in 1880.

Union of New England Colonies. From "The History of Connecticut."
Trumbull..... 74

Benjamin Trumbull, D.D., was born in Connecticut in 1785. He served in the Revolutionary war both as a chaplain and a soldier. Died in 1820.

Persecution of the Quakers. From "True Stories." *Hawthorne*... 75

Nathaniel Hawthorne, "for years one of the greatest modern masters of English prose," was born at Salem, Massachusetts, in 1804. His numerous writings show fine culture and great originality of genius. "The Scarlet Letter," as a highly-wrought fiction, composed with the most artistic finish, has no superior in the language. The most noted of his other works are "Mosses from an Old Manse," the "House of the Seven Gables," "Twice-told Tales," and the "Marble Faun," all of which are compositions of distinguished merit. He also wrote many educational works, in which he displayed a happy facility in adapting the style and treatment to the capacity of young minds. His death occurred in 1864.

Storming of the Narragansett Fort. From "The History of New England." *Palfrey*..... 77

Death of Phillip. From "The Sketch Book." *Irving*..... 77

Witchcraft in Europe. From "Anecdotes of Early Social History." *Everett*..... 79

Edward Everett, the celebrated orator and statesman, was born in Massachusetts in 1794, and died in 1864. His speeches were remarkable for their elaborate finish, peculiar elegance of style, and justness of sentiment; while his delivery was exceedingly dignified and graceful. Mr. Everett was for ten years a member of Congress, and for four successive years Governor of Massachusetts. He was also Secretary of State, and Minister to the Court of Great Britain.

The Half-Moon ascending the Hudson. From "The History of New York." *Brodhead*..... 80

John B. Brodhead was born in Pennsylvania in 1814; was Secretary of Legation at the Hague in 1839, and subsequently agent of the State of New York to procure historical documents in Europe. In 1846 he was appointed Secretary of Legation, under George Bancroft, at the Court of England. His principal literary work is "The History of the State of New York"—a performance of great merit and research. He died in 1873.

Commencement of Maryland Colonization. From "The History of the United States." *Bancroft*..... 88

The Swedes in Delaware. From "Aerelius's History of New Sweden," translated from the Swedish by *W. M. Reynolds*. 92

Penn's Great Treaty. From "The Life of William Penn." *Janney.* 94
Samuel M. Janney, a philanthropist and Friend (Quaker), was born in Virginia in 1801. He is the author of "The Country School House" (poem), "Conversations on Religious Subjects," "Life of Penn," "Life of Fox," "History of the Friends," and other works. "His style is easy, flowing, and yet sententious."

The Huguenots in Carolina. From "The Pioneers of France in the New World." *Parkman.*..... 96

The Iroquois or, Five Nations. From "The Jesuits in North America." *Parkman.*.....102

Washington's Return from the French Forts. From "The Life of Washington." *Irving.*..... 104

Expulsion of the Acadians. From "True Stories." *Hawthorne.*...105

Capture of Quebec. From "The Life of Washington." *Lossing.*...108

Benson J. Lossing, writer and artist, chiefly distinguished for his efforts to illustrate and popularize the history of the United States. For this purpose his "Field-Book of the Revolution" and his "Field-Book of the War of 1812" are most admirable and valuable works. Mr. Lossing is the author of many other works in American history of no inconsiderable merit.

Paul Revere's Ride. From an oration delivered at Concord, April 19, 1875. *Curtis.*.....132

George William Curtis, "author and orator," was born in Rhode Island in 1824. His principal works are "Nile Notes of a Howadji," "The Howadji in Syria," "Lotos Eating," and "The Potiphar Papers," "opening," in this last work, "a new vein of satiric fiction." The "great extent of his popularity is due to his papers in *Harper's Magazine*." His style is clear and terse.

Lexington and Concord. From "The History of the United States." *Bancroft.*.....133

Battle of Bunker Hill. From "History of the Siege of Boston." *Frothingham.*.....135

Richard Frothingham, Jr., historian and journalist, was born in Massachusetts in 1812. His principal works are the "History of Charlestown," "Life of Joseph Warren," "Rise of the Republic," and the "Siege of Boston." Of the "Siege" Bancroft says: "It is the best of our monographs that I have seen." He died in 1880.

The Necessity of the War. From a Speech in the Virginia Convention, 1775. *Patrick Henry*.....139

Washington chosen Commander-in-Chief. From "The Life of Washington." *Sparks*.....139

Jared Sparks, LL.D., was born in Connecticut in 1789. His father was a farmer. He was apprenticed to a carpenter, but his love of books overcame all obstacles, and through the assistance of friends he was enabled to prepare for admission into Harvard College, from which he graduated in 1815. He subsequently became a Unitarian clergyman, and wrote several works on theological subjects. His fame, however, depends upon his publications in relation to Washington and the history of the Revolution, for which he will ever receive the gratitude of posterity. His "American Biography" includes the life of sixty eminent personages, eight of which were written by the editor himself. Mr. Sparks died at Cambridge in 1866.

Death of Montgomery. From "The Life of Aaron Burr." *Parton*.141

James Parton was born in England in 1822, but has resided in the United States since 1826. "The various biographies written by him—namely, the lives of Greeley, Burr, Jackson, Franklin, and Jefferson—have the great merit of being entertaining, while they rest on a solid basis of facts which the writer has diligently explored. His love of paradox, though a fault, certainly gives piquancy to his lucid narrative."

Expedition against Charleston. From "Life and Times of Francis Marion." *Simms*.....142

Wm. Gilmore Simms, LL.D., "the most prolific of American historical novelists," was born in South Carolina in 1806. His productions in poetry, romance, history, biography, and criticism are numerous. The best of his works of fiction are published in seventeen volumes, under the title of "Revolutionary and Border Romances of the South." His "descriptions are bold and graphic." His death occurred in 1870.

The Fathers of the Declaration. From an oration, July 4, 1876. *Storrs*.....145

Richard Salter Storrs, D.D., was born in Massachusetts in 1821, descended from a long line of ministers. He has contributed much to current literature, and his published sermons, orations, and addresses are marked by great vigor and scholarship. He has been president of "The Long Island Historical Society" a number of years.

Execution of Nathan Hale. From "The Life of Captain Nathan Hale." *J. W. Stuart*.....149

Lafayette Joins the Americans. *Sprague*.....152

Charles Sprague was born in Massachusetts in 1791; died in 1875. His writings were mostly poetical; Whipple says: "His prologues are the best which have been written since the time of Pope." He has been styled "the American Pope, because of his terseness, his finished elegance, his regularity of metre, and his nervous point."

The Army at Valley Forge. From "Historic Americans." *Parker*..155

Theodore Parker was born in Massachusetts in 1810, graduated at the theological school in Cambridge, and settled in Roxbury, as minister of a Unitarian church. He subsequently became distinguished for the fluency and eloquence of his public lectures and addresses, in which he displayed a remarkable pungency of satire, and an intense humanitarian spirit. His anti-slavery efforts were particularly vigorous and persistent. The boldness with which he advanced his peculiar views in religion gave great offense to many, and his theological writings have drawn upon him considerable bitter animadversion and censure. He was undoubtedly a man of great intellectual power, and a most kindly and philanthropic spirit. His death occurred at Florence, Italy, in 1860.

The Dark Hour at Valley Forge. From "Life of General Greene." *Greene*.....155

George Washington Greene, born in Rhode Island in 1811, a grandson of General Nathaniel Greene of Revolutionary celebrity, is the author of a "Life of General Greene," first published as a portion of "Sparks's American Biography," subsequently much enlarged. He has also published several historical and geographical works, as well as an edition of Addison's works, and contributed many papers on historical and critical subjects to the *North American Review*, *Knickerbocker Magazine*, etc.

Arnold's Stratagem to relieve Fort Schuyler. From "The Life of Washington." *Irving*.....157

Franklin at the French Court. From "The History of the United States." *Bancroft*.....160

Massacre of Wyoming. From "The History of Wyoming." *Stone*..163

William L. Stone, a journalist and author of high rank. He was born in New York, in 1798, commenced life as a printer, and subsequently edited journals in Hudson, Albany, and Hartford. In 1821 he became editor of the *Commercial Advertiser*, of New York City, and thus continued till his death in 1844. His published works are quite numerous, and are highly valued for their historical accuracy and research, as well as for the elegance of their style. Among them may be particu-

larly mentioned "Life of Joseph Brant, including the Border Wars of the American Revolution," "Life and Times of Red Jacket," "Letters on Freemasonry," and "Tales and Sketches." In personal character he was genial and benevolent, kind and considerate to all, giving his warm and earnest support to every religious and philanthropic object.

Marion, Sumter, and Pickens. From "Memoirs, etc." *Lee*.....163

Henry Lee was born in Virginia in 1756. He was known in the Revolutionary war as "Lighthorse Harry," and the partisan corps of which he was commander was known as "Lee's Legion." In his celebrated eulogy of Washington, prepared by direction of Congress, occurred the words, "First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen." His "Memoirs of the War in the Southern Department" were written in 1809, while he was in confinement for debt. He died in 1818.

Arrest of Andre. From "The Life of Washington." *Irving*... ..170

Surrender of Cornwallis. From "Military Journal of the Revolution."

Thacher.....175

James Thacher, M.D., was born in Massachusetts in 1754. He served as surgeon in the Revolutionary war, and was present at many of the principal battles. He was the author of several medical works of great merit.

Washington's Farewell Address to his Officers. *Marshall*... ..177

The Federalist. From the Life and Times of Madison. *Rives*.....179

William C. Rives was born in Virginia in 1793; died in 1868. He was a United States Senator, Minister to France, and filled other important civil positions. He was the author of "Life of John Hampden," "Discourses on the Uses and Importance of History," and other works.

The First Political Parties. From "History of the Hartford Convention." *Dwight*.....179

Theodore Dwight, an able journalist and brilliant political writer, was born in Massachusetts in 1764. He was a leader of the Federal party, and the secretary of the Hartford Convention. He wrote "The Life and Character of Thomas Jefferson."

Inauguration of Washington. From "The History of the United States."

Hildreth.....183

Richard Hildreth, a distinguished writer and journalist. His chief work is a "History of the United States," which is especially valuable for its accuracy and directness of statement, its dignified but unpretending style, and the fullness of its information in regard to the

political history of the country. "As a book of reference it still remains as the best in our catalogue of works on American history." Born in Massachusetts in 1807; died in Florence, Italy, in 1865.

John Jay. From "The First Century of the Republic." *Whipple*...186

Edwin P. Whipple, "one of our most brilliant writers," was born in Massachusetts in 1819. He is the author of "Essays and Reviews," "The Literature of the Age of Elizabeth," and other works.

Invention of the Cotton-gin. From "The American Conflict." *Greeley*.....187

Horace Greeley, one of the most distinguished journalists of this country, was born in New Hampshire, in 1811, and commenced life as a printer. The *New York Tribune* was commenced by him in 1841. Mr. Greeley's style is vigorous and pungent, and his writings abound in useful information, addressed to the practical common-sense of the reader. His most extensive work is the "American Conflict," in which he gives, with considerable fullness, the events of that great struggle between the two sections of the country, together with the political and social causes that led to it. He died in 1872. (See p. 299.)

Migration to the West. *Audubon*.....188

John James Audubon, "the ornithologist," of whom Professor Wilson said: "He is the greatest artist in his own walk that ever lived." "Audubon's works," says Cuvier, "are the most splendid monuments which art has erected in honor of ornithology." The price of his great work, "The Birds of America," was \$1000. Every object in it is of the size of life. "Audubon has indisputable claims to a respectable rank as a man of letters. Some of his written pictures of birds, so graceful, clearly defined, and brilliantly colored, are scarcely inferior to the productions of his pencil." He was born in Louisiana. His death occurred in 1851.

Washington's Farewell Address. *Washington*.....190

Death of Washington. From "The Life of Washington." *Marshall*. (Chief-Justice of the United States).....192

Character of Washington. From "Orations and Speeches of Edward Everett." *Everett*.....193

Fulton's First Steamboat. From a discourse delivered in 1829. *Story*.....201

Joseph Story, LL.D., an eminent jurist, was born in Massachusetts in 1779. He was admitted to the bar in 1801, served several years as a member of the legislature of his native State, and in 1811 was appointed by President Madison associate justice of the Supreme Court, which

office he continued to fill till his death, in 1845. His legal treatises have had a very high reputation both in this country and England. Lord Brougham pronounced him "the first jurist living." His miscellaneous writings are numerous.

Purchase of Louisiana. From an address. *Everett*.....196

How the Clermont was regarded. From "The Life of Robert Fulton."
C. D. Colden.....208

Perry's Victory. From "The Second War between England and the United States." *Headley*.....209

Joel Tyler Headley, one of the most popular writers of the time, was born in Delaware County, New York, in 1814. His principal historical works are "Napoleon and his Marshals," "Washington and his Generals," "Life of Oliver Cromwell," and "History of the Second War between England and the United States." These works are chiefly distinguished for their melodramatic descriptions and brilliancy of style, but in respect to accuracy of statement have been sharply criticised. Mr. Headley has also published many other works of considerable literary excellence.

The Hartford Convention. From "Sketches of American Policy."
Webster.....215

Noah Webster, LL.D., the author of the "American Dictionary," was born in Connecticut in 1758, and graduated with considerable honor at Yale College, in 1778. He was at first a school-teacher at Goshen, in New York, and while thus engaged, compiled his "Spelling Book," which he published at Hartford in 1783. He soon afterward published an "English Grammar." The spelling book has probably been the most widely circulated book ever published in this country. In 1784 he published "Sketches of American Policy," a political work of considerable interest and merit. In 1793 he started a daily paper in New York, which still continues to be published as the *Commercial Advertiser*. He commenced the Dictionary in 1807, and spent twenty years in its compilation. He died in 1843.

How the News of Peace was received. *Goodrich*.....216

Samuel Griswold Goodrich, world-wide known under the assumed name of Peter Parley, was born in Connecticut in 1793. His juvenile books, more than one hundred in number, comprise geographies, histories, travels, stories, and illustrations of the arts and sciences. "For more than twenty years his delightful compositions have instructed and edified children in both hemispheres." He died in 1860.

War with Algiers. From "The History of the United States." <i>Hildreth</i>	216
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

Treaty with Algiers. From "History of the Navy of the United States." <i>Cooper</i>	217
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

James Fennimore Cooper, the distinguished American novelist, was born in 1789. At the age of sixteen he entered the navy as a midshipman, and followed the life of a sailor for six years. His writings are very numerous, including the "Leather Stocking Tales" and other novels, and the "History of the Navy of the United States." In his description of the sea and the various incidents of a sailor's life, as well as of the Indians and their savage manners, no author can claim any comparison with Cooper. His death occurred in 1851.

Death of Adams and Jefferson. From "Life and Public Services of John Quincy Adams." <i>Seward</i>	223
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

William H. Seward, an eminent statesman, was born in New York in 1801. His writings, and many of his public orations, fill several volumes. While holding the office of Secretary of State in Lincoln's cabinet, he was attacked and seriously injured, on the night of the assassination of Lincoln, by one of the conspirators. He died in 1872.

The Magnetic Telegraph. From "Public Men and Events." <i>Sargent</i>	236
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

Nathan Sargent, a political writer known under the *nom de plume* of **Oliver Oldschool**. Born in Vermont in 1794; died in 1875.

American Conquest of Mexico. From "History of the Mexican War." <i>Mansfield</i>	241
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

Edward D. Mansfield was born in 1801, and graduated at the United States Military Academy, at West Point, in 1819. He was the author of several works, chief among which are the "Life of General Scott" and the "History of the Mexican War."

Mining Life in California. From "History of California." <i>Franklin Tuthill, M.D.</i>	246
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

The Mormons. From "History of the United States." <i>J. H. Patton</i>	248
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

Treaty with Japan. <i>J. H. Patton</i>	250
-----------------------------------------------------	-----

Battle of the Iron Ships. From "The Lost Cause." <i>Pollard</i>	269
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

Edward A. Pollard was formerly editor of the *Richmond Examiner*. He published various works in relation to the Civil War, written from a Southern standpoint. In 1866 appeared "The Lost Cause: a New Southern History of the War of the Confederates;" and subsequently

other works on topics connected with the same general subject. Mr. Pollard's style is copious and vigorous; and the earnestness with which he writes makes his works interesting to all classes of readers.

Confederate Money. From "A Rebel's Recollections." *George Cary Eggleston*.....274

Misapplication of Means. From "A Narrative of Military Operations." *Johnston*.....276

Joseph E. Johnston was born in Virginia in 1807. He graduated at West Point, served in the Seminole War and in the Mexican War, and was a Confederate general in the great Civil War. (See p. 307.)

Obligation to the Patriot Dead. *Abraham Lincoln*.....278

Organizations of Mercy. From "History of the American Civil War." *Draper*.....279

John W. Draper, M.D., LL.D., was born in England in 1811; came to the United States in 1833. Besides the above and many valuable treatises on chemistry, physiology, and mixed mathematics, he is the author of a "History of the Intellectual Development of Europe," pronounced by Whipple "comprehensive in scope, brilliant in style, and bold in speculation."

Evacuation of Richmond. From "A Southern History of the War." *Pollard*.....291

Miracles of the War. From "History of the American Civil War." *Draper*.....295

CONTENTS.

SECTION I. DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.

First Discovery of America ; The Northmen's discoveries (15) ; Columbus (18) ; India—the route to it ; Idea and plan of Columbus (19) ; Landing of Columbus in the New World (21) ; Other Discoveries of Columbus (22) ; Return of Columbus to Spain (23) ; The Indians (25) ; The Mound-builders (27) ; Were the Indians the Mound-builders ? English Discoveries (29) ; Origin of the name America ; The new lands not India (30) ; The first voyage around the earth (31) ; Discovery of Florida (32) ; De Soto's Expedition (34) ; Discovery of the Mississippi (35) ; Burial of De Soto (36) ; Drake's Voyage around the world (37) ; Other expeditions by the English (40) ; Explorations by the French ; Marquette on the Mississippi (41) ; La Salle descends the Mississippi (43) ; How the lands were disposed of (47) . Summary ; Claims (48) ; Topical Review (49) ; Model for a written exercise (50) .

SECTION II. THE COLONIAL PERIOD.

Virginia.—Settlement of Jamestown (52) ; Character of the Colonists (54) ; The gold excitement ; The starving time (55) ; Lord Delaware's administration ; Marriage of Pocahontas (56) ; Tobacco (57) ; Importation of wives (58) ; Bacon's Rebellion (59) .

New England.—Early explorations (59) ; First English settlement in Maine (60) ; The Great Patent ; Puritans and Pilgrims ; The Pilgrims in England (61) ; The Pilgrims in Holland (62) The Embarkation (63) ; Settlement of Plymouth (64) ; The first winter at Plymouth (66) ; Great aim of the Pilgrims ; Settlement of New Hampshire (67) ; Massachusetts Bay Colony ; Settlement of Boston (68) ; Settlement of Connecticut ; Hooker's emigration (69) ; Pequot War ; New Haven Colony ; A Sabbath in New Haven (70) ; The founder of Rhode Island ; His flight to Rhode Island (72) ; Early history of Rhode Island (73) ; Union of New England Colonies (74) ; Persecution of the Quakers (75) ; King Philip's War (76) ; Storming of the Narragansett Fort ; Death of Philip (77) ; Salem Witchcraft (78) ; Witchcraft in Europe (79) .

New York and New Jersey.—Discovery of the Hudson river ; The Half-Moon ascends the Hudson (80) ; The first settlement (82) ; Growth of the colony (83) ; The English take New Netherlands (85) ; New Jersey (86) .

Maryland.—Lord Baltimore (87) ; Commencement of colonization (88) ; Clayborne's Claims ; Civil war (90) .

Pennsylvania and Delaware.—William Penn (91); The Swedes in Delaware (92); Dutch Claim—Conquest by Stuyvesant (93); Delaware united to Pennsylvania (94); Penn's great treaty (94).

North and South Carolina.—The Huguenots in Carolina (96); Albemarle and Clarendon colonies; The Grand Model; Division of the province (98).

Georgia.—Motives for the settlement; Settlement of Savannah (99); Wesley and Whitefield (100).

European Wars that affected the Colonies.—King William's, Queen Anne's, and King George's (101); The Iroquois (102).

The French and Indian War.—The French Claim (102); The English Claim; Washington's Mission (103), his expedition (105); Expulsion of the Acadians; Braddock's Defeat (106); Capture of Quebec (106).

Condition of the Colonies.—Population (112); Government; Industry (113); Fisheries; Printing (115); Education and Schools (116); Manners and Customs (117); Money (119). Summary by Colonies (120); General Summary (123); Topical Review (124).

SECTION III. THE REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD.

Causes of the war (125); The Stamp Act (126); Boston Massacre (127); Boston Tea Party (128); First Continental Congress (130); Paul Revere's Ride (132); Lexington and Concord (133); Capture of Ticonderoga; Battle of Bunker Hill (135); Necessity of the War; Washington-chosen Commander-in-Chief (139); Expedition against Canada (140); Death of Montgomery (141); The British evacuate Boston; Expedition against Charleston (142); Birth of the Nation (144); The fathers of the Declaration (145); Battle of Long Island; Retreat of Washington (148); Execution of Hale (149); Battle of Trenton (150); Battle of Princeton; Lafayette joins the Americans (152); Expedition against Philadelphia (153); Battle of Germantown (154); The Army at Valley Forge; The Dark Hour at Valley Forge (155); Burgoyne's invasion (156); Arnold relieves Fort Schuyler (157); Battle of Bennington; Foes of the patriots (158); Surrender of Burgoyne (159); Franklin at the French Court (160); Evacuation of Philadelphia (161); Battle of Monmouth (162); Massacre of Wyoming (163); Events in the South (164); Storming of Stony Point; Paul Jones's victory (165); Loss of Charleston (166); Marion, Sumter, and Pickens; Battle of Camden (167); Treason of Arnold (169); Arrest of Andre (170); Fate of Andre (171); Battle of the Cowpens (172); Cornwallis pursues Morgan; Battles of Guilford Court House and Eutaw Springs (173); Arnold's expedition against Virginia; Siege of Yorktown (174); Surrender of Cornwallis (175); Condition of the country (176); Washington's farewell to his officers; Resigns his command (177); Adoption of the Constitution (178); The

Federalist; First political parties (179); Summary (180); Topical Review (181).

SECTION IV. THE CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD.

Washington's Administration.—His inauguration (183); First Measures; Admission of Vermont (184); Indian war; Foreign affairs (185); John Jay (186); Invention of the cotton-gin (187); Migration to the West (188); Admission of Kentucky and Tennessee; Washington's Farewell Address (190).

John Adams's Administration.—His inauguration (191); Hostilities of France; Death of Washington (192); Character of Washington (193).

Jefferson's Administration.—His inauguration; Admission of Ohio (195); Purchase of Louisiana (196); War with the Barbary States (198); Exploit of Decatur (199); Death of Hamilton (200); Trial of Burr; Fulton's first steamboat (201); How the Clermont was regarded; British aggressions (203); The embargo (205).

Madison's Administration.—War declared against Great Britain; Hull's invasion of Canada; Victories on the ocean (206); Capture of the *Guerriere* (207); "Don't give up the ship!" (208); Perry's victory (209); Harrison's victory (211); Brown's invasion of Canada (212); Plattsburg and Lake Champlain (213); Attack on Baltimore (213); New Orleans saved (214); Hartford Convention (215); End of the war; How the news was received; War with Algiers (216); Admission of Louisiana and Indiana (218).

Monroe's Administration.—The Seminole war and Florida (219); Admission of Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, and Maine; The Missouri Compromise (220); Lafayette's visit (221).

John Quincy Adams's Administration.—The 10th national election (222); Death of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson (223); The tariff (224); Internal improvements (225); Canals (226).

Jackson's Administration.—The 11th national election (226); Rotation in office; Bank of the United States (227); Nullification (228); Admission of Arkansas and Michigan (229).

Van Buren's Administration.—The 13th national election (230); Panic of 1837; Slavery agitation (231); Railroads; Steam navigation (233).

Harrison and Tyler's Administrations.—The 14th national election (233); Death of Harrison (235); Annexation of Texas; The magnetic telegraph (236).

Polk's Administration.—The 15th national election (237); War with Mexico; Taylor's campaign (238); Conquest of New Mexico and California (239); Scott's campaign (240); American conquest of Mexico (241); Treaty of peace (242); Discovery of gold in California (243); Admission of Florida, Texas, Iowa, and Wisconsin (244).

Taylor's Administration.—The 16th national election (244); Mining life in California (246); Slavery agitation revived (247).

Fillmore's Administration.—The Compromise of 1850 (247); The Mormons (248).

Pierce's Administration.—Repeal of the Missouri Compromise (249); Civil war in Kansas; Treaty with Japan (250). Summary (251); Topical review (252).

Buchanan's Administration.—The 18th National Election; John Brown's raid (253); Condition of the country in 1860 (254); Secession (255); Occupation of Fort Sumter; the Southern Confederacy (256); Admission of Minnesota, Oregon, and Kansas (257.)

Lincoln's Administration.—His inauguration; Fall of Fort Sumter (258); Battle of Bull Run (261); The war in Missouri (262); Naval operations (263); Confederate privateers; The Trent affair (264); Union successes (265); Battle of Shiloh; Taking of New Orleans (266); Attack of the Virginia (268); Battle of the iron ships (269); Peninsula campaign (270); Lee's first invasion of the North (272); Burnside's campaign; Confederate money (274); Misapplication of means; Emancipation; Hooker's campaign (276); Lee's second invasion; Battle of Gettysburg (277); Obligation to the patriot dead (278); Organizations of mercy (279); The Mississippi opened (280); Draft riot in New York (281); The war in Tennessee and Georgia (282); West Virginia and Nevada (283); Red river expedition (284); Sherman's campaign (285); Battle of Nashville; Sherman's march to the sea (286); Grant's campaign in Virginia (287); The Shenandoah valley (288); Achievements of the navy (289); Sherman's campaign of 1865 (290); Evacuation of Richmond (291); Surrender of Lee and Johnston; Assassination of Lincoln (293); Cost of the war (294); Miracles of the war (295).

Johnson's Administration.—Lincoln's funeral (295); Reconstruction (296); Johnson's impeachment (296); Nebraska and Alaska (297).

Grant's Administration.—The Alabama Claims (298); The nation's centennial; Admission of Colorado; The century of progress (300). Summary (305); Topical review (306).

Hayes's Administration.—His inauguration; Important events (306).

Acquisition of Territory.....	310
The States, origin of their names and their pet names.....	311
Table of the Presidents and Settlement of the States.....	319

APPENDIX.

Declaration of Independence.....	1
Constitution of the United States.....	5

JOHN S. PRELL
Civil & Mechanical Engineer.
SAN FRANCISCO, CAL.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

SECTION I.

DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.

1. Who first discovered America? This question has been discussed by many able writers, but no one thus far has so answered it as to carry conviction to the minds of all persons. It has been claimed by some of these writers that hundreds of years before the time of Columbus, ^{First Discovery of America.} navigators from countries on the east and north of the Mediterranean sea sailed to the Atlantic ocean, and then were driven by tempests across the ocean to the continent beyond. Other writers have contended that the honor of the discovery belongs to Wales. Again, we have the tradition of Irishmen having found a beautiful country far to the west of their island, in which they lived for a long time. These are not the only claims that have been put forth; but, among them all, that which has the best evidence to sustain it is in behalf of the people called Scan-di-na'-vi-ans, who occupied the region comprising the countries of Norway, Sweden, and Denmark. They were also called Northmen or Norsemen.

2. "The restless activity and adventurous spirit of the Scandinavians were not confined to the Baltic sea. They boldly roamed over the great northern and western oceans, without chart or compass, in quest of adventures and plunder, or to find out new lands where they might form settlements more or less permanent. Their ^{The Northmen's Discoveries.} navigators discovered many islands north of Scotland. At a very early period, a Norwegian sea-rover was driven by a storm quite to the Arctic Circle, until he descried a large

country which, from its aspect, he called Snœ'-land, or the land of snow, but which has been since more appropriately named Iceland (861).

3. About a century after, Torwald, a jarl (petty king) of Norway, who had been exiled from his native land for having slain his enemy, retired to that island with his son Er'-ik, surnamed Randi, or the Red. After the death of his father, Erik was compelled to leave Iceland for the same reason which had banished Torwald from Norway. Seeking a new asylum, he took ship, and directed his course towards the south-west. He found a small island in a strait, and passed the winter there. In the spring he explored the main-land, and, finding it covered with a delightful verdure, he called it Greenland.

4. There was formerly, say the ancient sagas, a man of Norway who navigated from one country to another with his son Bjarne (*byär'-ne*), and generally spent the winters in Norway. It happened, once on a time, that they were separated from each other, and Bjarne sought his father in Norway, but not finding him there he learnt that he was gone to the newly-discovered country of Greenland. Bjarne resolved to seek and find out his father wherever he might be, and for this purpose set sail for Greenland, directing himself by the observation of the stars and by what others had told him of the situation of the land.

5. The three first days he was carried to the west, but afterwards the wind, changing, blew with violence from the north, and drove him southwardly for several days. He at last descried a flat country covered with wood, the appearance of which was so different from that of Greenland, as it had been described to him, that he would not go on shore, but made sail to the north-west. In this course he saw an island at a distance, but continued his voyage, and arrived safely in Greenland, where he found his father (1001).

6. In the following summer, Bjarne made another voyage to Norway, where he was hospitably received by Erik, a dis-

tinguished jarl of that country. The jarl, to whom he related his adventures, reproached him for not having explored the new land towards which he had been accidentally driven. Bjarne having returned to his father in Greenland, there was much talk among the settlers of pursuing his discovery. The restless, adventurous spirit of Leif (*life*), son of Erik the Red, was excited to emulate the fame his father had acquired by the discovery of Greenland. He purchased Bjarne's ship, and manned it with thirty-five men. Leif then requested his father to become the commander of the enterprise. Erik at first declined, on account of the increasing infirmities of his old age. He was, however, at last persuaded by his son to embark; but as he was going down to the vessel on horseback his horse stumbled, which Erik received as an evil omen for his undertaking. 'I do not believe,' said he, 'that it is given to me to discover any more lands, and here will I abide.' Erik returned to his house, and Leif set sail with his thirty-five companions, among whom was one of his father's servants, a native of the south-countries, named Tyrker (*tur'-ker*), probably a German.

7. They first discovered what they supposed to be one of the countries seen by Bjarne, the coast of which was a flat, stony land, and the background crowned with lofty mountains covered with ice and snow. Pursuing their voyage further south, they now came to another coast, also flat, covered with thick wood, and the shores of white sand gradually sloping toward the sea. Here they cast anchor and made a landing. Pursuing their voyage with a north-east wind for two days and nights, they discovered a third land, the northern coast of which was sheltered by an island. Here they again landed, and found a country, not mountainous, but undulating and woody, and abounding with fruits and berries delicious to the taste.

8. From thence they re-embarked and made sail to the west to seek a harbor, which they at last found at the mouth of a river, where they were swept by the tide into the lake

from which the river issued. They cast anchor, and pitched their tents at this spot, and found the river and lake full of the largest salmon they had ever seen. Finding the climate very temperate and the soil fruitful in pasturage, they determined to build huts and pass the winter here."

9. The spot selected, it is supposed, was in the latitude of Boston. "It happened one day, soon after their arrival, that Tyrker, the German, was missing, and as Leif set a great value upon the youth on account of his skill in various arts, he sent his followers in search of him in every direction. When they at last found him he began to speak to them in the German language, with many extravagant signs of joy. They at last made out to understand that he had found vines bearing wild grapes. He led them to the spot, and they brought to their chief a quantity of the grapes which they had gathered. Leif, thereupon, named the country Vinland."

10. The Northmen made settlements in Greenland, as they had previously done in Iceland; but these, after a period of more than a hundred years, perished; and when Columbus set

Christopher Columbus. sail on his eventful voyage in 1492, they were entirely forgotten. It is safe to say that Columbus had no knowledge then, or afterward, of a second continent, nor is there any evidence that he even supposed there was a second. His object was to find a short way to the rich country in the south-eastern part of Asia, and the islands near to it, called India, or the Indies.



CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

11. A Venetian traveler, named Marco Polo,¹ as well as other

¹ The first and most extensive traveller among the Eastern nations was Marco Polo, who passed seventeen years in the service of the Khan of Tartary, during which he visited the chief countries and cities of Eastern

travelers, had been to India, and brought back to Europe exciting accounts of the riches to be found there. A considerable commerce was consequently carried on by Venice and other cities of Italy with that coun- ^{India—} the route to it. try ; but the journey was long and dangerous. Vessels sailed through the Mediterranean to the north-east part of Africa, where they were unladen, and the goods were carried on the backs of camels across the isthmus of Suez, and thence again by ship down the Red sea and through the Indian ocean to India. Sometimes the goods were carried overland through Asia. Desiring to share in this profitable trade, the people of Portugal, encouraged and aided by their king, endeavored to find a passage to India—one entirely by water—by sailing along the west coast of Africa, and around its southern point.¹

12. The plan formed by Columbus was very different. Believing the earth to be round, he concluded that the shortest way to India was across the Atlantic ocean. It is plain that while he had a correct idea as to the shape ^{Idea and} of the earth, he was mistaken as to its size. ^{plan of Columbus} Various discouragements, too, beset him, but nothing could shake his determination. Being too poor to fit out an expedition at his own expense he applied for aid, it is asserted, to his native country, Genoa (*jen'-o-ah*) ; then to Portugal. In both cases he was unsuccessful. He then turned to Spain,

Asia, among them Japan, the existence of which was not previously known. He returned to Venice in 1295 ; and subsequently a very interesting account of his travels was published, which had a wonderful effect in encouraging geographical research.

¹“ The crown of Portugal was constant in its efforts, through the fifteenth century, to find a passage round the southern point of Africa into the Indian Ocean, though so timid was the navigation that every fresh headland became a formidable barrier ; and it was not till the latter part of the century that the adventurous Diaz passed quite round the Stormy cape, as he termed it, but which John the Second (King of Portugal), with happier augury, called the cape of Good Hope. But before Vasco de Gama had availed himself of this discovery to spread his sails in the Indian seas (1497), Spain entered on her glorious career, and sent Columbus across the western waters.”—*Prescott's Conquest of Peru*.

and during seven years, while his theory and offer were before the Spanish court, he implored and waited, until at last, when, in despair, he was in the act of leaving that country for France, he was recalled.



SPANISH CARAVEL IN WHICH COLUMBUS DISCOVERED AMERICA.

(From a drawing attributed to Columbus, and placed in a volume of his letters published in 1494.)

13. Queen Isabella had become deeply interested in his plan, and, "with an enthusiasm worthy of herself," had offered to "pledge" her "jewels to raise the necessary funds,"

There was, however, no need of the sacrifice. Money was advanced from the public treasury, three small vessels were fitted out, and with this miniature fleet Columbus set sail from Spain, on Friday morning, August the 3d, 1492, and, after a voyage of ten weeks—the most famous that ever was made—discovered one of the Bahama islands.¹

14. "It was on Friday morning, the 12th of October, that Columbus beheld the New World. As the day dawned, he saw before him a level island, several leagues in extent, and covered with trees like a continued orchard. Though apparently uncultivated, it was populous, for the inhabitants were seen issuing from all parts of the woods, and running to the shore. They were perfectly naked, and, as they stood gazing at the ships, appeared by their attitudes and gestures to be lost in astonishment.

**Landing
of Columbus
in the
New World.**

15. Columbus made signal for the ships to cast anchor, and the boats to be manned and armed. He entered his own boat, richly attired in scarlet, and holding the royal standard; whilst the commanders of the other vessels put off in company in their boats, each with a banner of the enterprise emblazoned with a green cross, having on either side the letters F. and Y., the initials of the Castilian² monarchs, Fernando (Ferdinand) and Ysabel (Isabella), surmounted by crowns. As he approached the shore, Columbus, who was disposed for all kinds of agreeable impressions, was delighted with the purity and suavity of the atmosphere, the crystal transparency of the sea, and the extraordinary beauty of the vegetation. He beheld, also, fruits of unknown kinds upon the trees which overhung the shores.

¹ "The island where Columbus had thus set his foot was called by the natives Guanahani (*gwah-nah-hah'-ne*). It still retains the name of San Salvador, which he gave to it, though called by the English Cat island."—*Iroing*.

² Castile (*kas-teel*) was an ancient kingdom or state of Spain. "When the various states were consolidated into one monarchy (1479), the capital of Castile became the capital of the new empire, and her language the language of the court and of literature."—*Prescott*,

16. On landing, he threw himself on his knees, kissed the earth, and returned thanks to God with tears of joy. His example was followed by the rest, whose hearts, indeed, overflowed with the same feelings of gratitude. Columbus then rising, drew his sword, displayed the royal standard, and assembling round him all who had landed, took solemn possession in the name of the Castilian sovereigns, giving the island the name of San Salvador. Having complied with the requisite forms and ceremonies, he called upon all present to take the oath of obedience to him as admiral and viceroy, representing the persons of the sovereigns.

17. The feelings of the crew now burst forth in the most extravagant transports. They had recently considered themselves devoted men hurrying forward to destruction; they now looked upon themselves as favorites of fortune, and gave themselves up to the most unbounded joy. They thronged around the admiral with overflowing zeal, some embracing him, others kissing his hands. Those who had been most mutinous and turbulent during the voyage were now most devoted and enthusiastic. Some begged favors of him as if he had already wealth and honors in his gift. Many abject spirits, who had outraged him by their insolence, now crouched at his feet, begging pardon for all the trouble they had caused him, and promising the blindest obedience for the future."

18. Leaving San Salvador, Columbus soon discovered other islands, the largest being Cuba and His-pan-i-o-la (*Little Spain*).¹ As he supposed that all these were out-lying islands of India, he called the natives Indians. "The islanders were friendly and gentle," says Irving, "and treated the Spaniards with kindness."

19. Leaving a small colony at Hispaniola, "in the month of January, 1493, Columbus embarked for Spain. One of his vessels had previously foundered, and another had deserted

¹ Hispaniola was afterwards called San Domingo. The name Hayti (*hay'-te*) was given to it after the French were expelled, in 1803.

him ; so that he was left alone to retrace his steps across the Atlantic. After a most tempestuous voyage, he was compelled to take shelter in the Tagus, sorely against his inclination. He experienced, however, the most of ^{Return of Columbus to Spain.} honorable reception from the Portuguese monarch, John the Second, who did ample justice to the great qualities of Columbus, although he had failed to profit by them. After a brief delay the admiral (Columbus) resumed his voyage, and about noon on the 15th of March entered the harbor of Palos (*pah'-los*), being exactly seven months and eleven days since his departure from that port.

20. Great was the agitation in the little community of Palos as they beheld the well-known vessel of the admiral re-entering the harbor. Their desponding imaginations had long since consigned him to a watery grave. Most of them had relatives or friends on board. They thronged immediately to the shore to assure themselves with their own eyes of the truth of their return. When they beheld their faces once more, and saw them accompanied by the numerous evidences which they brought back of the success of the expedition, they burst forth in acclamations of joy and gratulation. They awaited the landing of Columbus, when the whole population of the place accompanied him and his crew to the principal church, where solemn thanksgivings were offered up for their return ; while every bell in the village sent forth a joyous peal in honor of the glorious event.

21. The admiral was too desirous of presenting himself before the sovereigns to protract his stay long at Palos. He took with him on his journey specimens of the products of the newly-discovered regions. He was accompanied by several of the native islanders, arrayed in their simple barbaric costume, and decorated, as he passed through the principal cities, with collars, bracelets, and other ornaments of gold, rudely fashioned. He exhibited also considerable quantities of the same metal in dust or in crude masses, numerous vegetable exotics possessed of aromatic virtue, and several

kinds of quadrupeds unknown in Europe, and birds whose various gaudy plumage gave a brilliant effect to the pageant. The admiral's progress through the country was everywhere impeded by the multitudes thronging forth to gaze at the extraordinary spectacle, and the more extraordinary man, who, in the emphatic language of that time, which has now lost its force from its familiarity, first revealed the existence of a 'New World.' As he passed through the busy, populous city of Seville (*sev'-il*), every window, balcony, and house-top which could afford a glimpse of him is described to have been crowded with spectators.

22. It was the middle of April before Columbus reached Bar-ce-lo'-na. The nobility and cavaliers in attendance on the court, together with the authorities of the city, came to the gates to receive him and escort him to the royal presence. Ferdinand and Isabella were seated, with their son, Prince John, under a superb canopy of state awaiting his arrival. On his approach they rose from their seats, and, extending their hands to him to salute, caused him to be seated before them. These were unprecedented marks of condescension to a person of Columbus's rank in the haughty and ceremonious court of Castile.

23. It was indeed the proudest moment in the life of Columbus. He had fully established the truth of his long-contested theory, in the face of argument, sophistry, sneer, skepticism, and contempt. He had achieved this, not by chance, but by calculation, supported through the most adverse circumstances by consummate conduct. The honors paid him, which had hitherto been reserved only for rank, or fortune, or military success, purchased by the blood and tears of thousands, were in his case a homage to intellectual power successfully exerted in behalf of the noblest interests of humanity."¹

¹ Columbus made three other voyages to the new world, in the first of which, as well as in the one described above, his discoveries were confined to the islands between North and South America. In his third voyage, made in 1498, he discovered the mainland at the mouth of the

24. "The continent of North America was then one continued forest. There were no horses, cattle, sheep, hogs, or tame beasts of any kind ; but a plenty of deer, moose, bears, elks, buffaloes, and a variety of other wild animals. There was no domestic poultry ; but the *The Indians.* woods were full of turkeys, partridges, pigeons, and other birds. Wild-geese, ducks, teal, and other water-fowl abounded in the bays, creeks, rivers, and ponds. There were no gardens, orchards, public roads, meadows, or cultivated fields ; but the Indians so often burned the woods that they could advantageously plant their patches of corn. They were clothed with the skins of wild beasts. Their houses were generally made of small young trees bent and twisted together, and so curiously covered with mats or bark as to be tolerably dry and warm.

25. The Indians made their fire in the centre of the house, which had an opening at the top for the escape of the smoke. Their food was coarse and simple, without any kind of seasoning. They had neither spice, salt, bread, butter, cheese, nor milk. Their drink was water. They fed on the flesh and entrails of moose, deer, bears, beasts, and birds of all kinds ; on fish, eels, and creeping things. Nothing came amiss. In the hunting and fishing seasons they had venison, moose, fat bears, raccoons, geese, turkeys, ducks, and fish of all kinds. In the summer they had green corn, beans, squashes, and the various fruits which the country naturally produced. In the winter they subsisted on corn, beans, fish, nuts, ground-nuts, and acorns.

26. They had not set meals, but ate when they were hungry and could find anything to satisfy the cravings of nature. Sometimes, from necessity, they lived without food for several

river O-ri-no'-co, in South America. He died in Spain, in 1506, at about the age of seventy, and his body was deposited in a convent at Valladolid, Spain, but was afterward removed to Seville. Twenty-three years after, it was taken across the Atlantic to Hispaniola, and, finally, two hundred and sixty years later, was carried with great ceremony to the cathedral of Havana, Cuba, its present resting-place.

days ; but when well supplied they gourmandized. Very little of their food was derived from the earth, except what it spontaneously produced. Indian corn, beans, and squashes were the chief articles for which they labored. The ground was both their seat and table. Trenchers, knives, forks, and napkins were unknown. Their best bed was a mat or a skin. They had neither chair nor a stool ; but they sat upon the ground, commonly with their elbows on their knees. A few wooden and stone vessels and instruments served all the purposes of domestic life.

27. They had neither steel, iron, nor any metallic instrument. Their knife was a sharp stone, shell, or reed, which they sharpened in such a manner as to cut their hair and make their bows and arrows. They made their axes of stones. These they sharpened somewhat like common iron axes, with this difference that they were made with a neck instead of an eye, and fastened with a withe, like a blacksmith's chisel. They had mortars, stone pestles, and chisels. They dressed their corn with a clam-shell, or with a stick made flat and sharp at one end.

28. Their only weapons were bows and arrows, the tomahawk, and the wooden sword or spear. Their bow-strings were made of the sinews of deer or of Indian hemp. Their arrows were constructed of young elder or of other straight sticks and reeds. These were headed with a sharp flinty stone or with bones. The arrow was cleft at one end, and the stone or bone was put in and fastened with a small cord. The tomahawk was a stick of two or three feet in length with a knob at the end. Sometimes it was a stone hatchet, or a stick with a piece of deer's horn at one end. Their spear was a straight piece of wood sharpened and hardened in the fire or headed with bone or stone.

29. They had made no improvement in navigation beyond the construction and management of the hollow trough or canoe. They made their canoes of the chestnut, white-wood, and pine trees. As these grew straight to a great length, and

were exceedingly large as well as tall, they scooped out some which would carry fifty or sixty men. The construction of these with such miserable tools as the Indians possessed was a great curiosity. When they had found a suitable tree they made a fire at the root and continued burning it and cutting it with their stone axes till it fell. They then kindled a fire at such distance from the butt as they chose, and burned it off again. By burning and working with their axes, and scraping with sharp stones and shells, they made it hollow and smooth. In the same manner they shaped the ends, and finished it so that it could cut its way with ease through the water."

30. The Indians had no kind of coin, but they had a sort of money which they called wampum. It consisted of small beads most curiously wrought out of shells, and perforated in the centre so that they might be strung on belts in chains and bracelets. "With respect to religion, the Indians believed that there was a Great Spirit or God, but they worshipped a variety of gods. They paid homage to the fire and water, thunder and lightning, and to whatever they imagined to be superior to themselves or capable of doing them an injury. They paid their principal homage to an Evil Spirit, and from fear worshipped him to keep him in good humor."

31. "Behind these Indians, who were in possession of the country when it was discovered by the Europeans, is dimly seen the shadowy form of another people who have left many remarkable evidences of their habits and customs, ^{The mound-builders.} and of a singular degree of civilization, but who, many centuries ago, disappeared, either exterminated by pestilence or by some powerful and pitiless enemy, or driven from the country to seek new homes south and west of the gulf of Mexico.

32. The evidences of the presence of this ancient people are found almost everywhere upon the North American continent, except perhaps upon the Atlantic coast. They consist of mounds, sometimes of imposing size, and other earthworks,

so numerous that in Ohio alone there are, or were till quite recently, estimated to be not less than ten thousand of the mounds, and fifteen hundred inclosures of earth and stone, all evidently the work of the same people. In other parts of the country they were found in such numbers that no attempt has been made to count them all.



MOUND NEAR WHEELING, WEST VIRGINIA.¹

33. There are no data by which the exact age of these singular relics of a once numerous and industrious people, living a long-sustained agricultural life, can be fixed ; but it is evident from certain established facts that this must date from a very remote period. The chief seat of their power and population seems to have been in the Mississippi valley. The signs of their occupation are many along the banks of its rivers. It is very seldom that the human bones found in these mounds, except those of later and evidently intrusive

¹ This, known as the Grave Creek Mound, is one of the most notable in the Ohio valley. It is seventy feet high and nine hundred in circumference. In it were found two vaults containing human skeletons. One of these skeletons was surrounded by about seven hundred shell beads. Another skeleton, besides a profusion of shell beads, had copper rings, and more than two hundred and fifty plates of mica. "These facts," says Foster, "show that the principal occupant of this mound was a royal personage."

burial, are in a condition to admit of their removal, as they crumble into dust on exposure to the air. These works are often also covered by the primeval forests, which are known to have grown undisturbed since the country was first occupied by the whites, and the annular growth of these trees has been ascertained to be sometimes from five to eight centuries."

34. "A broad chasm is to be spanned before we can link the mound-builders to the North American Indians. They were essentially different in their form of government, their habits, and their daily pursuits. The Indian, since known to the white man, has spurned the re- Were the Indians the mound-builders? straints of a sedentary life which belongs to agriculture, and whose requirements, in his view, are ignoble. He was never known to erect structures which should survive the lapse of a generation. His lodges consist of a few poles, one end planted in the ground and the other secured with withes at the top, and over which are stretched plaits of matting or of birch bark, or the skins of the buffalo. This frail structure is his shelter from the elements.

35. The domestic economy of the Indians, as contrasted with that of the mound-builders, exhibits two widely different conditions of society. In the one case the people had fixed habitations and methodical pursuits, and the day's labor was crowned with definite and accumulative results. In the other case the people led a nomadic life—a feast followed a famine; and, with their shifting habitations the accumulation of personal property would prove an encumbrance rather than a convenience."

36. The tidings of Columbus's discoveries produced astonishment and excitement not only in Spain, but in English Discoveries. Portugal, England, France, and other countries of Europe; and at once preparations were made for discovery and exploration in the new lands.¹

¹ "The discovery of a strait into the Indian ocean is the true key to the maritime movements of the fifteenth and the first half of the sixteenth century."—Prescott.

In 1497, John Cabot (*kab'-bot*), accompanied by his son Sebastian, sailing under a commission from Henry VII. of England, reached the coast of Labrador, and thus was the first to discover the continent of America. In a second voyage, made by Sebastian Cabot the next year, a large extent of the eastern coast of North America was explored.¹

37. Columbus, it is certain, never realized how grand was the discovery he had made. It never dawned upon his mind that he had opened the way to another continent. His

**Origin
of the name
America.**

name, we all believe, should have been given to the new world, but that honor was reserved for Amerigo Vespucci (*ah-mā-re'-go ves-poot'-che*), an Italian navigator. Seven years after Columbus had made his discovery Vespucci visited the coast of South America (in 1499), and two years later made a second visit to the same regions. He prepared accounts of the two voyages, one of which being published, moved a German geographer, under an assumed name, in a Latin work printed the next year after the death of Columbus, to suggest the name America for the newly-discovered lands. In alluding to this person, Humboldt says: "I have been so happy as to discover the name and the literary relations of the mysterious personage who, in 1507, was the first to propose the name of America to designate the new continent."

38. The opinion that the lands discovered by Columbus were islands of India was entertained several years after his death. It was finally dispelled (in 1513) by a Spaniard named Bal-bo'a, governor of a settlement at Darien.

**The new lands
not India.** "Floating rumors had reached the Spaniards from time to time of countries in the far west teeming with the metal they so much coveted; but the first distinct notice of Peru was about the year 1511, when Balboa was weighing some gold

¹ It is not known with certainty when and where the Cabots were born, nor at what time and place they died, though it is supposed they were natives of Italy. Bancroft says of Sebastian Cabot that "he gave England a continent and no one knows his burial-place."

which he had collected from the natives. A young barbarian chieftain who was present struck the scales with his fist, and, scattering the glittering metal around the apartment, exclaimed : ' If this is what you prize so much that you are willing to leave your distant homes and risk even life itself for it, I can tell you of a land where they eat and drink out of golden vessels, and gold is as cheap as iron is with you.'

39. It was not long after this startling intelligence that Balboa achieved the formidable adventure of scaling the mountain rampart of the isthmus which divides the two mighty oceans from each other ; when, armed with sword and buckler, he rushed into the waters of the Pacific and cried out, in the true chivalrous vein, that ' he claimed this unknown sea, with all that it contained, for the king of Castile, and that he would make good the claim against all, Christian or infidel, who dared to gainsay it.' All the broad continent and sunny isles washed by the waters of the Southern ocean ! Little did the bold cavalier comprehend the full import of his magnificent vaunt."¹

40. No other evidence was needed to prove that the lands discovered by Columbus, the Cabots, and others were no parts of India, yet additional proof was given in the voyage made by a Portuguese navigator named Magellan (*ma-jel'-lan*), commanding a Spanish fleet. ^{The first voyage around the earth.} Sailing from Spain across the Atlantic, he discovered the strait which bears his name. Passing through this strait he reached the ocean which Balboa had seven years previously discovered. 'This ocean he called the Pacific, because of the mild weather he experienced on entering it and for several days after. Steering boldly for India, he reached a number of islands, but at one of the Philippine group was slain in a battle with the natives. His ship, however, pro-

¹ About twenty years after Balboa's discovery of the Pacific, Pizarro, a Spanish adventurer, crossed the Isthmus of Panama, and, with a small force, of whom four men were his brothers, and one was De Soto (see p. 34), proceeded against and conquered Peru,

ceeded on the voyage westward, passed the cape of Good Hope, and in this way reached Spain, thus completing the first voyage ever made around the earth.¹

41. Among those who accompanied Columbus on his second expedition to the new world was a Spaniard named Ponce de Leon (*pōn'-tha dā lā-oan'*), of whom it has been said: "He was a lion by name and still more by nature."

Discovery of Florida. A visit to the beautiful island of Porto Rico, which he made after the expedition alluded to, inspired him with the desire of being its governor, and the king of Spain gave him the appointment. "But his commission as governor conflicted with the claims of the family of Columbus; and policy as well as justice required his removal." He had, without good cause, fought the natives of the island, had killed many of them in battle, and those that still lived and had not escaped to the small islands in the vicinity, were slaves. He had been deprived of his office, but he was still living on the island on the riches that he had accumulated, when one day he was told by one of the natives that on an island far to the north-west plenty of gold could be found, and at the same place there was a wonderful fountain.

42. The Indian, in describing the fountain, said that if any old person should go into it and wash himself with its waters he would immediately become young again. The Indian further stated that a party of Indians had gone to the fountain many years before, and as they had never returned, they were without doubt living in that happy land—all of them young and all happy. This story was afterwards told to Ponce by other Indians, for they all believed it to be true; and it was told so often, and with so much sincerity, that he, too, finally believed it. In fact, he was not the only European who did believe it. The story found believers not only in

¹ Magellan's fleet originally consisted of five vessels, but, owing to desertion and loss, was reduced to one. Before the Pacific ocean came to be so called generally, it was often called the *South Sea* or the *Southern Sea*,

Porto Rico, but in Spain itself. Peter Martyn, an Italian historian of the time, in one of his letters written in Spain, says : " This rumor of the fountain for a truth has been so spread that not only the people, but also many of them whom wisdom or fortune had divided from the common sort think it to be true."

43. Ponce, evidently, gave willing credence to the story, for he was growing old, and eagerly desired to be young once more ; besides, he thought of the glory it would give him to make known to the world the magic pool. At last, with the determination of finding the land of gold, and the " wonderful fountain of youth," he fitted out three ships and sailed from Porto Rico. This took place about twenty years after Columbus had discovered that island. Exactly how many and what islands Ponce visited is not known. We do know, however, that he landed on the island of San Salvador, the one that Columbus first discovered. He also touched at other islands, and at every one inquired for the fountain. We can believe that he tasted of the water of many springs, and bathed in the waters of many ; still, so long as he did not get to be a young man again, he kept going from island to island.

44. In this way he continued his efforts, till one Sunday—it was Easter Sunday—he came to a large country which he thought was a great island (1513). Its trees were full of blossoms, and millions of flowers covered the ground. The occasion was one to make him and his men very happy. The day was clear, the air balmy, and, as the fragrance of the blossoms was wafted to the happy Spaniards, they no doubt believed they had at last come to the fairy land. To the new-found region Ponce gave the name of Florida, because the discovery was made " on Easter Sunday, which the Spaniards call Pascua Florida" (*pah'-scoo-ah flo-re'-dah*) ; and as the word *florida* means flowery, it may be said there were two reasons for calling the country by that beautiful name.

45. Ponce landed, but found not the fountain. He sailed

along the coast, going around the southern point of Florida ; but at last, weary of the search, returned to Porto Rico. Several years after, he went again to Florida, his object being to make a settlement, he having been appointed governor of the country on the condition that he would colonize it. His company was attacked by the natives and driven back to the ships ; and he, " mortally wounded by an arrow, returned to Cuba to die. So ended the adventurer who had coveted immeasurable wealth and perpetual youth. The discoverer of Florida desired immortality on earth, and gained its shadow."¹

46. "Hernando de Soto was the companion of Pizarro in The conquest of Peru. He had come to America a needy adventurer, with no other fortune than his

De Soto's expedition.

sword and target. But his exploits had given him fame and fortune, and he appeared at the Spanish court with the retinue of a nobleman. Still his active energies could not endure repose, and his avarice and ambition goaded him to fresh enterprises. He asked and obtained permission to conquer Florida.²



DE SOTO.

His plans were embraced with enthusiasm. Nobles and gentlemen contended for the privilege of joining his standard ; and, setting sail with an ample armament, he landed at

¹ Two expeditions were made to Carolina by De Ayllon (*Ile-yone*'), one (in 1520) for slaves to work on the plantations and in the mines of St. Domingo, the other (in 1525) for conquest ; but both were unsuccessful. In 1521, Cortez conquered the Mexicans and that country became a province of Spain. In 1528, Narvaez (*Nar-rah'-eth*) made a disastrous attempt to conquer Florida, only four of his men returning, after years of wandering. These three commanders were Spaniards.

² "It must be recollected that the name of Florida then (1538) designated a vast extent of country, stretching from the gulf of Mexico, north-westwardly, towards unknown regions."—*Fairbanks's History of Florida*.

the bay of Es-pi-ri'-tu Santo, now Tampa bay, in Florida, with six hundred and twenty chosen men, a band as gallant and well appointed, as eager in purpose and audacious in hope as ever trod the shores of the new world. The clangor of trumpets, the neighing of horses, the fluttering of pennons, the glittering of helmet and lance startled the ancient forest with unwonted greeting.

47. Amid this pomp of chivalry religion was not forgotten. The sacred vessels and vestments, with bread and wine for the Eucharist were carefully provided ; and De Soto himself declared that the enterprise was undertaken for God alone, and seemed to be the object of his special care. The adventurers began their march (1539). Their story has been often told. For month after month and year after year the procession of priests and cavaliers, cross-bowmen, soldiers with hand guns, and Indian captives laden with the baggage, still wandered on through wild and boundless wastes, lured hither and thither by the *ignis-fatuus* of their hopes. They traversed great portions of Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, everywhere inflicting and enduring misery, but never approaching their phantom El Dorado."

48. "At length, in the third year of their journeying, they reached an uninhabited country full of forests and swamps, where they had sometimes to swim their horses. For seven days they traversed this country, coming at last in sight of a village (1541). It was seated near a wide and rapid river, which, being the largest they had discovered, they called the Rio Grande. This was the 'Father of Waters,' the mighty Mississippi. De Soto was the first European who looked out upon the turbid waters of this magnificent river, and that event has more surely enrolled his name among those who will ever live in American history, than if he had discovered mines of gold and silver."

Discovery
of the Missis-
sippi River.

49. As the canoes of the Indians were not large enough nor strong enough to convey horses across the river, the

Spaniards built suitable boats, and in these they were borne to the western bank of the stream. The search for the land of gold was then resumed; and a region west of the Mississippi, to the distance of more than two hundred miles, was explored. But De Soto, discouraged and sick, turned his wanderings eastward, and finally made his way back to the river, where he died of a fever (1542).

50. "So soon as the death had taken place, Mos-co'-so, whom De Soto had named to be his successor, directed the body to be put secretly into a house, where it remained three days; and thence it was taken at night, by his order, and buried. The Indians, who had seen De Soto ill, finding him no longer, suspected the reason; and passing by where he lay, they observed the ground loose, and, looking about, talked among themselves. This coming to the knowledge of Moscoso, he ordered the corpse to be taken up at night, and among the shawls that enshrouded it having cast abundance of sand to increase its weight, it was taken out in a canoe and committed to the middle of the stream.

51. An Indian chief asked for De Soto, saying: 'What has been done with my brother and lord, the governor?' Moscoso told him he had ascended into the skies as he had done on many other occasions; but as he would have to be detained there some time, he had left him in his stead. The chief, thinking within himself that he was dead, ordered two well-proportioned young men to be brought, saying that it was the usage of the country when any lord died to kill some persons who should accompany and serve him on the way, on which account they were brought; and he told him to command their heads to be cut off that they might go accordingly to attend his friend and master.

52. Moscoso replied to him that the governor was not dead but only gone into the heavens, having taken with him of his soldiers sufficient number for his need; and he besought

him to let those Indians go, and from that time forward not to follow so evil a practice. The two men were presently ordered to be let loose that they might return to their homes ; but one of them refused to leave, alleging that he did not wish to remain in the power of one who, without cause, condemned him to die, and that he who had saved his life he desired to serve so long as he should live. De Soto's property was ordered by Moscoso to be sold at public outcry. It consisted of two male and three female slaves, three horses, and seven hundred swine."¹

53. While the eastern and southern parts of North America were being explored, the western part was not neglected. Expeditions sent by Cortez, the conqueror of Mexico, examined the California peninsula ; and Coronado Other explorations. (*ko-ro-nah'-do*) "with an army of three hundred Spaniards, most of them mounted," sent by the governor of Mexico, wandered for three years, extending his excursion as far as the western part of Kansas (1540-1543). His courage and skill should have secured for him the approbation of King Charles : instead, "his failure to find a northern Peru threw him out of favor."² The most memorable enterprise, however, in connection with the early Western explorations was that commanded by the English navigator, Francis Drake, during his "career of splendid piracy."

54. On the 13th of December, 1577, Drake sailed from Plymouth, England, with five small vessels which had been procured and armed by himself and others, Drake's voyage around the world. ostensibly for a voyage to Egypt, but really for a

¹ The remnant of De Soto's followers, having in vain tried to reach Mexico through the forests, built seven frail barks, and sailed down the Mississippi and along the coasts of Mexico, till they reached a Spanish settlement.

² Alarcón (*ah-lar'-son*), sent up the coast with two ships, to aid Coronado, discovered the Colorado of the west, and sailed up it nearly a hundred miles above the present boundary of the United States. In 1542, Cabrillo (*kab-reel'-yo*), sailing from Mexico, explored the coast as far as San Francisco bay, but, dying, his pilot, Fer-re'-lo, continued the explorations as far north, probably, as the latitude of the forty-third degree.

cruise against the dominions and subjects of Spain. The governments of England and Spain were then indeed at peace with each other ; but mutual hatred prevailed between the two nations, and the principles of general law or morals were not at that period so refined as to prevent Queen Elizabeth from favoring Drake's enterprise.

55. " For some months after leaving England, Drake roved about the Atlantic without making any prize of value. He then refitted his vessels at a port on the eastern coast of Patagonia, and succeeded in conducting three of them safely through the dreaded strait of Magellan into the Pacific. Scarcely, however, was this accomplished ere the little squadron was dispersed by a storm ; and the chief of the expedition was left with only a schooner of a hundred tons' burden and about sixty men to prosecute his enterprise against the power and wealth of the Spaniards on the western side of America.

56. Notwithstanding these disheartening occurrences, Drake did not hesitate to proceed to the parts of the coast occupied by the Spaniards, whom he found unprepared to resist him either on land or on sea. He accordingly plundered their towns and ships with but little difficulty ; and so deep and lasting was the impression produced by his achievements that, for more than a century afterward, his name was never mentioned in those countries without exciting feelings of horror and detestation.

57. At length, in the spring of 1579, Drake, having completed his visitation of the Spanish American coasts by the plunder of a town on the south side of Mexico, and filled his vessel with precious spoils, became anxious to return to England ; but having reason to expect that the Spaniards would intercept him if he should attempt to repass Magellan's strait, he resolved to seek a northern route to the Atlantic. Accordingly, on quitting the coast he steered west and north-west ; and, having sailed in those directions about fourteen hundred leagues, he had, in the beginning of June, advanced beyond the forty-second degree of north latitude, where his

men, being thus 'speedily come out of the extreme heat, found the air so cold that, being pinched with the same, they complained of the extremity thereof.'

58. Thinking it best to seek the land, he soon made the American coast, and endeavored to approach it so as to anchor ; but finding no proper harbor there he sailed along the shore southward until the seventeenth of the month when 'it pleased God to send him into a fair and good bay, within thirty-eight degrees towards the line.' In this bay (San Francisco, or Bo-de'-ga), the English remained five weeks, employed in refitting their vessel, and obtaining such supplies for their voyage as the country offered.

59. The natives, 'having their houses close by the water's side,' at first exhibited signs of hostility ; but they were soon conciliated by the kind and forbearing conduct of the strangers ; and their respect for Drake so increased that, when they saw him about to depart, they earnestly implored him to continue among them as their king. The naval hero, though not disposed to undertake, in person, the duties of sovereignty over a tribe of naked or skin-clad savages, nevertheless 'thought not meet to reject the crown because he knew not what honor or profit it might bring to his own country ; whereupon, in the name and to the use of her majesty, Queen Elizabeth, he accepted the crown, sceptre, and dignity of the country, wishing that the riches and treasure thereof might be so conveniently transported for the enriching of her kingdom at home.' The coronation accordingly took place with most ludicrous solemnity, and Drake bestowed on his dominions the name of *New Albion*.

60. The vessel having been refitted, Drake erected on the shore a pillar bearing an inscription commemorating the fact of this cession of sovereignty ; and on the 22d of July he took leave of his worthy subjects to their great regret. Having, however, by this time abandoned all idea of seeking a northern passage to the Atlantic, he sailed directly across the Pacific, and thence through the Indian seas, and around the

Cape of Good Hope, to England, where he arrived on the 26th of September, 1580."¹

61. Four years later the celebrated courtier, Walter Raleigh, having obtained from Elizabeth a grant of land on the eastern

Other expeditions by the English.

part of North America, sent out two vessels (1584). These sailed to

the coast of Carolina, and the voyagers landed on the island of Roanoke, "but made no extensive examination of the coast." They found the region delightful; and so glowing an account did they give of it on

their return to England that Elizabeth declared the event to be the most glorious in her reign. As a memorial of her unmarried state she named the country Virginia. Upon Raleigh she conferred the honor of knighthood.²



RALEIGH.

¹ Elizabeth received Drake with the most distinguished honor. His vessel was brought to the Thames, and a banquet was held on board, at which Elizabeth was present, and the occasion was used to give Drake the honor of knighthood.

² Attempts, by direction of Raleigh, were afterward made to plant permanent settlements on Roanoke island, but they proved unsuccessful.

The tobacco plant was first carried to England by some of Raleigh's returning colonists, and he introduced the habit of smoking it. "It is related that when his servant entered his room with a tankard of ale, and for the first time saw the smoke issuing from his master's mouth and nostrils, he cast the liquor in his face. Terribly frightened, he alarmed the household with the intelligence that Sir Walter was on fire."

The death of Elizabeth (1603) proved fatal to Raleigh's fortunes. He was tried on a false charge of treason, convicted, and imprisoned. During his imprisonment he wrote a History of England. Being released, in order that he might point out a gold mine which he said existed in the northern part of South America, and having failed in the expedition, he was, on his return, beheaded, under the sentence which had been almost forgotten (1618). "He met death with the most heroic indifference. Before he laid his head upon the block he felt the edge of the axe, and said, with a smile upon his face, that it was a sharp medicine, but would cure the worst disease. When he was bent down, ready for death, he said to the executioner, finding that he hesitated, 'What dost thou fear? Strike, man!' So the axe came down and struck his head off, in the sixty-sixth year of his age."

62. "The French competed without delay for the New World." Cartier (*car-te-ā'*) made two voyages, discovered the St. Lawrence river, and, in the name of his king, took possession of all the country he saw. Later, Port Royal, now Annapolis, in Nova Scotia, was settled; and, later still, Champlain (*sham-plain'*) founded ^{Explorations by the French.} the city of Quebec, and explored the lake which bears his name (1608). To the region now included in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick the French gave the name A-ca'-di-a. They extended their efforts at settlement to Carolina and Florida, but without permanent success. No expeditions, however, were marked with more heroism and self-sacrifice than those conducted by the French Catholics in their efforts to explore the country in the region of the great lakes and along the Mississippi river, and to convert the Indians to their faith.

63. Prominent among these heroic men was Marquette (*mar-ke'*). "In the spring of 1673, he, with Joliet (*zhuh-lyā*) for his chieftain, and five other Frenchmen, embarked at Mackinaw in two frail bark canoes. With paddle in hand, and full of hope, they soon glided merrily over the crystal waters of Lake Michigan. Before entering the Wisconsin, they looked back a last adieu to the waters which, great as the distance was, connected them with Quebec and their countrymen. They knelt on the shore to offer, by a new devotion, their lives, their honor, and their undertaking to their beloved mother, the Virgin Mary Immaculate. Then, launching their boats on the broad river, they sailed slowly down its current amid its vine-clad isles, and its countless sand-bars. No sound broke the stillness, no human form appeared, and at last, after sailing seven days, they happily glided into the great river—the Mississippi. ^{Marquette on the Mississippi.}

64. Joy that could find no utterance in words filled the grateful heart of Marquette. The broad river of the Conception, as he named it, now lay before them, stretching away

hundreds of miles to an unknown sea. Soon all was new. Mountain and forest had glided away ; the islands, with their groves of cotton-wood, became more frequent ; and moose



MARQUETTE ON THE MISSISSIPPI.

and deer browsed on the plains ; strange animals were seen traversing the river, and monstrous fish appeared in its waters. But they proceeded on their way amid this solitude,

frightful by its utter absence of man. Descending still further, they came to the land of the bison, which, with the turkey, became sole tenants of the wilderness : all other game had disappeared.

65. At last, on the 25th of June, they descried footprints on the shore. They now took heart, and Joliet and the missionary (Marquette), leaving their five men in the canoes, followed a little beaten path to discover who the tribe might be. They traveled on in silence almost to the cabin doors, when they halted, and, with a loud halloo, proclaimed their coming. Three villages lay before them. The first, roused by the cry, poured forth its motley group, which halted at the sight of the new-comers and the well-known dress of the missionary. Old men came slowly on, step by measured step, bearing aloft the all-mysterious calumet. All was silence : they stood at last before the two Europeans, and Marquette asked, 'Who are you?' 'We are Illinois,' was the answer, which dispelled all anxiety from the explorers, and sent a thrill to the heart of Marquette. The Illinois missionary was at last amid the children of that tribe which he had so long, so tenderly yearned to see (1673)."¹

66. "We now turn from the humble Marquette, and by our side stands the masculine form of Cavelier de la Salle (*sad*)."
La Salle was no missionary. His object was fame and fortune. "Three thoughts were mastering him. First, he would achieve that which Champlain had vainly attempted, and of which our own generation has but now seen the accomplishment—the opening of a passage to India and China across the American Continent. Next, he would occupy the great West, develop its commercial resources, and anticipate the Spaniards and the English in the possession of it. Thirdly, he would establish a forti-

*La Salle
descends the
Mississippi.*

¹ Marquette descended the Mississippi a distance of seven hundred miles. His death occurred two years after, near a small stream in Michigan, which bears his name.

fied post at the mouth of the Mississippi, thus securing to the French an outlet for the trade of the interior." These schemes, or at least the first two, after years of effort, attended with great sufferings and loss of life and property, ended in failure. How far the third was successful we will relate.

67. "The summer of 1681 was spent when La Salle reached Lake Huron, and December was nearly gone when he crossed to the little river Chicago. His party, composed of twenty-three Frenchmen, was increased by the addition of some new friends, savages, whose midnight yells had started the border hamlets of New England; who had danced around Puritan scalps, and whom Puritan imaginations painted as incarnate fiends. They insisted on taking their women with them to cook for them and do other camp work. Thus the expedition included fifty-four persons, of whom some were useless and others a burden. It was the dead of winter, and the streams were frozen. They made sledges, placed on them the canoes, the baggage, and a disabled Frenchman; crossed from the Chicago to the northern branch of the Illinois, and filed in a long procession down its frozen course. They reached the site of the great Illinois village, found it tenantless, and continued their journey, still dragging their canoes, till at length they reached open water below Lake Peoria.

68. La Salle had abandoned his original plan of building a vessel for the navigation of the Mississippi. Bitter experience had taught him the difficulty of the attempt, and he resolved to trust to his canoes alone. They embarked again, floating prosperously down between the leafless forests that flanked the tranquil river, till, on the sixth of February, they issued forth on the majestic bosom of the Mississippi. Here for a time their progress was stopped; for the river was full of floating ice. La Salle's Indians, too, had lagged behind; but within a week all had arrived, the navigation was once more free, and they resumed their course. Towards evening they saw on their right the mouth of a great river; and the clean current was invaded by the headlong torrent of

the Missouri, opaque with mud. They built their camp-fires in the neighboring forest ; and at daylight, embarking anew on the dark and mighty stream, drifted swiftly down towards unknown destinies.

69. With every stage of their adventurous progress the mystery of this vast New World was more and more unveiled. More and more they entered the realms of spring. The hazy sunlight, the warm and drowsy air, the tender foliage, the opening flowers, betokened the reviving life of Nature. For several days more they followed the writhings of the great river on its course through wastes of swamp and cane-brake, till they found themselves wrapped in a thick fog. Neither shore was visible ; but they heard on the right the booming of an Indian drum, and the shrill outcries of the war-dance. La Salle at once crossed to the opposite side, where, in less than an hour, his men threw up a rude fort of felled trees. Meanwhile the fog cleared, and from the farther bank the astonished Indians saw the strange visitors at their work. Some of the French advanced to the edge of the water, and beckoned them to come over. Several of them approached in a canoe to within the distance of a gun-shot. La Salle displayed the calumet, and sent a Frenchman to meet them. He was well received ; and the friendly mood of the Indians being now apparent, the whole party crossed the river.

70. On landing they found themselves at a town of the Kappa band of the Arkansas, a people dwelling near the mouth of the river which bears their name. The inhabitants flocked about them with eager signs of welcome, built huts for them, brought them firewood, gave them corn, beans, and dried fruits, and feasted them for three days. ' They are a lively, civil, generous people,' says one of the missionaries who accompanied the expedition, ' very different from the cold and taciturn Indians of the North.' They showed, indeed, some slight traces of a tendency towards civilization ; for domestic fowls and tame geese were wandering among their rude cabins of bark. La Salle and his lieutenant, at the head of their followers, marched to the open area in the midst of the

village. Here, to the admiration of the gazing crowd of warriors, women, and children, a cross was raised bearing the arms of France. The Frenchmen shouted *Vive le Roi* (*veeve leh' rouah*—long live the king); and La Salle, in the name of Louis XIV., took formal possession of the country.

71. After touching at several other towns of this people, the voyagers resumed their course, and now, on the sixth of April, they are near their journey's end. The river separated itself into three broad channels. One division of the party followed that of the west, another that of the east, while the third took the middle. As La Salle drifted down the turbid current between the low and marshy shores, the brackish water changed to brine, and the breeze grew fresh with the salt breath of the sea. Then the broad bosom of the great Gulf opened on his sight, tossing its restless billows, limitless, voiceless, lonely, as when born of chaos, without a sail, without a sign of life. La Salle, in a canoe, coasted the marshy borders of the sea; and then the reunited parties assembled on a spot of dry ground, a short distance above the mouth of the river.

72. Here a column was made ready, bearing the arms of France; and while the New England Indians and their squaws stood gazing in wondering silence, the Frenchmen chanted a song of the church. Then, amid volleys of musketry and shouts of *Vive le Roi*, La Salle planted the column in its place, and standing near it, proclaimed in a loud voice, in the name of his king, Louis XIV. of France, that he took 'possession of all this country of Louisiana, the seas, harbors, ports, bays, and all the nations, peoples, provinces, cities, towns, villages, mines, minerals, fisheries, streams, and rivers, within the extent of the said Louisiana.' Shouts of *Vive le Roi* and volleys of musketry responded to his words. Then a cross was planted beside the column. On that day the realm of France received on parchment a stupendous accession; and all by virtue of a feeble human voice, inaudible at half a mile. Louisiana was the name bestowed by La Salle

on the new domain of the French crown. The rule of the Bourbons in the West is a memory of the past, but the name of the Great King still survives in a narrow corner of their lost empire. The Louisiana of to-day is but a single State of the American Republic. The Louisiana of La Salle stretched from the Alleghanies to the Rocky mountains (1682)."¹

73. "The right of the Indian natives to the soil in their possession was founded in nature. Unfounded, therefore, as the claims of European sovereigns to America were, they severally proceeded to act upon them. By tacit consent, they decided that the countries which each explored should be the property of the explorer." In keeping with this law, Spain claimed all the southern ^{How the lands were disposed of.} part of North America from ocean to ocean.

The French claim extended from the Atlantic, in the latitude of Nova Scotia, westward to the region of the great lakes, and then southward through the entire valley of the Mississippi. England's claim embraced all the country from Labrador to Florida, westward to the Pacific, including a large tract to which the Dutch possessed a title by reason of exploration and settlement.² It would be impossible to make a single map showing these several claims, inasmuch, as it is seen, they lapped over one another. While, then, "the nations of Europe sported with the rights of the unoffending natives of America, they could not, it is evident, agree in their respective shares of the common spoils."

¹ La Salle never carried out his plan. He returned to Canada, and thence to France, where he was received with great honors. Four vessels were given to him, with soldiers and settlers, and he sailed in 1684 to establish a settlement on the Mississippi; but instead of landing at the mouth of the river, by mistake the voyagers passed it, and landed in Texas. A vain search by land was afterward made for the river, and, after much suffering and wandering, La Salle was treacherously shot by one of his men (1687).

² The Dutch claim was founded on the explorations of Henry Hudson, an Englishman, sailing in the service of the "Dutch East Indies Company," who (in 1609) discovered the Hudson river, and sailed up it more than a hundred miles (see p. 80).

SUMMARY.

DISCOVERIES, 1492-1609.

		EUROPEAN SOVEREIGNS.	
		<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>
1492.	<i>America was discovered by Columbus. Other discoveries followed in quick succession.</i>	Henry VII.	Charles VIII.
1497.	<i>The Cabots, for England, discovered North America.</i>	"	"
1513.	<i>De Leon, for Spain, discovered Florida.</i>	Henry VIII.	Louis XII.
1513.	<i>Balboa, for Spain, discovered the Pacific ocean.</i>	"	"
1541.	<i>De Soto, for Spain, discovered the Mississippi river.</i>	"	Francis I.
1609.	<i>Hudson, for the Dutch, discovered the Hudson river.</i>	James I.	Henry IV.

CLAIMS.

Spain.

By reason of the discoveries of Columbus, De Leon, and De Soto, and the explorations of Cortez, Coronado, and others, Spain claimed the southern part of North America, from the Atlantic to the Pacific. The northern limits were indefinite.

England.

By reason of the discoveries of the Cabots, and the explorations of Gosnold, Smith, and Drake, with those made by the expeditions sent by Raleigh, England claimed all the heart of North America—from the latitude of Labrador to that of Florida—from ocean to ocean.

France.

By reason of the discoveries of Cartier, Champlain, and others, in connection with the explorations of Marquette and La Salle, and the planting of military, missionary, and trading stations at different points, France claimed the valleys of the St. Lawrence, Ohio, and Mississippi, and the country, including the islands, in the region of the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

Holland.

By reason of the discoveries and explorations of Hudson, the Dutch claimed the valley of the Hudson, with all the country from the Connecticut river, and even further east, to Delaware bay on the south.

TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

BIOGRAPHICAL.—The numbers given refer to the pages of this book. If, in the estimation of the teacher, the information to be found on these pages is not sufficient, resort must be had to cyclopædias, biographies, and other works. The topics may be presented by the pupils as verbal narratives, or, at the will of the teacher, as written exercises—compositions. It is recommended that both methods be pursued in alternation.

Columbus.	(See Model following, p. 50. Irving's Life of Columbus is recommended to pupils for reference.)	18-24
The Cabots.	(See Hayward's Life of Sebastian Cabot, also Bidle's.)	30
De Leon.	(See Irving's Companions of Columbus.)	32-34
Cortez.	(He died in Spain, neglected and in solitude, in the sixty-third year of his age. See Prescott's Conquest of Mexico.)	Note 34, 37
De Soto.	(See Theodore Irving's Conquest of Florida.)	34-36
Raleigh.	(See Edwards's Life of Sir Walter Raleigh.)	40
Drake.	(See Knight's History of England, Vols. IX., X.)	37-40
Marquette.	(See Shea's Discovery of the Mississippi river. Also Sparks's Life of Marquette.)	41-43
La Salle.	(See Sparks's Life of La Salle.)	43-47

GEOGRAPHICAL.—1. Give the location of each place. 2. Give the events connected with each. 3. State other facts of interest.

Iceland.....	16	Mississippi river.....	35
Greenland.....	16	Mexico.....	37
San Salvador.....	22	California.....	37
Cuba.....	22	San Francisco bay.....	39
St. Domingo.....	22	Roanoke island.....	40
Labrador.....	30	Virginia.....	40
Isthmus of Darien.....	31	St. Lawrence river.....	41
Porto Rico.....	32	Nova Scotia.....	41
Florida.....	33	Hudson river.....	47

HISTORICAL.—1. State when the event occurred. 2. Give the circumstances leading to it. 3. State the facts connected with it. 4. Describe the effects or consequences of it. When the nature of the topic will not admit of this, narrate the facts, giving them, as far as possible, in chronological order; or, as in the case of *The Indians* or *The Mound Builders*, give a description.

The Northmen's Discoveries.....	15	Discovery of Florida.....	32
Columbus's Discovery of America.....	18-21	De Soto's Expedition.....	34
The Indians.....	25	The Second Voyage around the World.....	37
The Mound Builders.....	27	French Explorations.....	39
Discovery of the Pacific.....	30, 31	Marquette's Expedition.....	41
First Voyage around the World.....	31	La Salle's Expedition.....	43

MODEL FOR A WRITTEN EXERCISE.

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

**His
early life.**

While we know that Columbus was born in Italy, we are not quite certain as to the exact place of his birth. After his fame began to spread, several places in Italy claimed him as a native, but it is generally believed that to Genoa belongs the coveted honor. The year of his birth is also in doubt, nor has any writer been able to solve the uncertainty so as to leave no shadow upon the conclusion. Irving cautiously says he was born "about the year 1435." His father, who was a woolcomber, was poor, it is supposed, though the son was sent to good schools, and gained a knowledge of geometry, geography, astronomy, navigation, and the Latin language, besides the common branches. He soon began to love the sea, and at the early age of fourteen made his first voyage. This was followed by many others. Taking up his residence in Portugal, he there married the daughter of a man who had gained some reputation as a navigator and map-maker.

**His
great theory.**

India was a rich country even in those early days, but the merchants of Italy, who traded with it, had no way of reaching it except by the Red sea or overland through Asia. No other route was then known. Columbus believed there was a shorter way across the Atlantic Ocean. Of course, he had no idea that another continent was in the way and would therefore stop him, nor had he any idea that the earth was so large.

**His
efforts
for aid.**

He wanted to make an effort to reach India, according to his theory, by sailing westward from Europe, but he was too poor to build or buy the necessary vessels. So he applied for aid to Genoa; then, receiving no encouragement, to Portugal. Here, again, he was unsuccessful. Then he applied to Spain; and, after years of waiting, solicitation, anxiety, and poverty, the Spanish queen, Isabella, generously offered to sell her jewels in order to raise the money for the purchase of a fleet. This offer was the turning-point, for it shamed the public treasurer into advancing the needed funds.

**His
voyages
and
discoveries.**

Three small vessels were fitted out, and in the summer of 1492 they sailed from the little port of Palos in Spain. At the Canary islands a brief stop was made. Again the vessels put to sea. It was difficult for Columbus to pro-

ceed, for he had no such excellent instruments to aid him as are now in use among navigators. He did not know how to account for the variation in the needle, and his sailors became alarmed. But he kept on with heroic resolution, and, on a bright morning in October, was rewarded with a sight of land. The island first seen is a little one north of Cuba. He called it San Salvador. His landing was effected with great ceremony, while the friendly natives, perfectly naked, looked on, believing that their visitors were from heaven. Other islands were discovered, among them the large ones of Cuba and Hayti. Leaving some men, as the beginning of a colony, at Hayti, he returned to Spain, where he was received amid great rejoicings. Columbus made three more voyages, and discovered other islands and even the main land of South America, but he never for a moment suspected that these lands belonged to a New World. He thought they were the outlying islands of Asia.

We read of "Columbus in Irons" and wonder what it means. What had Columbus done that he should be so cruelly treated? Who put him in irons? It seems that while he was making his third visit to America his enemies were busy in Spain; for he, like many eminent men before his time and since, had incurred the envy of others. Even Washington, good and great as he was, had enemies. The enemies of Columbus made the king and queen of Spain believe that he was treating the Spaniards in America with great injustice and cruelty; and a person was consequently sent to inquire into the facts. This person was also clothed with certain authority, but, instead of doing as he was instructed, he made a prisoner of Columbus and sent him home in irons. When Columbus arrived in Spain and the people saw him—the great navigator who had opened the doors of wealth to them—saw him with iron chains fastened upon his arms, they were moved with sorrow and indignation. Queen Isabella ordered the chains to be removed, and she and the king gave Columbus a kind reception.

So, ignorant to the last that "he had given a new continent to the world," and when his best friend, Isabella, was no more, and he was suffering neglect and poverty, Columbus died. This event took place in a little town in Spain, when he was about seventy years of age. His body was at first deposited in a convent, where it was allowed to rest seven years, then it was taken to a monastery in another town. Twenty-three years later it was transported to one of the great islands he had discovered—that of Hayti; and here surely his remains would be permitted to rest forever! Not so. In 1796, nearly three hundred years after his death, they were conveyed, with imposing ceremonies, to the island of Cuba, and there, in the cathedral of Havana, they still repose.

**The
disgrace
put
upon him.**

**His
death and
burial.**

ENGLAND AND AMERICA.

In the fifteenth century came the revival of learning in Europe. This brought a rivalry in efforts to extend the knowledge of geography and increase the commerce of the world. The great problem of

Henry VII.
1485-1509.

the age was to reach India by sea. In the age just fading out those who sailed ships crept timidly along the coast, or, if they ventured out of sight of land, had only the sun by day and the stars by night to steer by. The period in which Columbus lived showed great improvements in navigation. In the new mariner's compass the magnetic needle was beginning to be depended upon, better sea-charts were prepared, and valuable additions were made to the instrument for reckoning latitude. It was now possible for the navigator losing sight of land to ascertain the position of his ship and tell the direction in which she should be steered. When Columbus made his great discovery, Henry had been on the throne of England seven years and had yet eighteen years of kingly life to live. Scotland was not yet a part of the British realm. It was still an independent power with James IV. at its head. None of the vast domain in France known as Normandy, except a small strip of land on which Calais stood, was any longer an English possession. It had passed to the control of France more than forty years before. It has been asserted that Columbus, long before Isabella of Spain consented to aid him, had sent one of his brothers to Henry VII. of England with an offer similar to the one made to Spain, but our information on this point is very meagre. We know, however, that Henry wrote to Columbus in 1488, inviting him to England and holding out promises of encouragement. The news of the great discovery made by Columbus produced among the English people a feeling of deep regret that the great navigator had not made his voyage under their flag. This feeling prevailing, it was not difficult for Henry to encourage navigation and discovery if such encouragement should be without expense to himself. John Cabot's petition therefore met with favor, and to him and his three sons the king issued a commission to sail at their own cost and charge with five ships, upon condition that the king should have one fifth part of their gains. John Cabot's discovery of the mainland of the New World precedes that of Columbus more than a year, and Amerigo Vespucci's more than two years (p. 30). The year 1498 stands out conspicuously in the annals of navigation: Da Gama, for Portugal, sailing around the southern point of Africa reached India by sea, thus solving the problem of the age; Columbus discovered South America; and one of John Cabot's sons explored a large part of the North American coast.

This king, the second but only surviving son of Henry VII., was a Catholic when he began to reign, and he so gained the approbation of the pope (Leo X.) by writing a book against the doctrines of Luther that he was awarded the title of "Defender of the Faith." He afterwards, however, quarrelled with the pope (Clement VII.) because the latter would not sanction his divorce from his wife Catharine. Henry then threw off his allegiance to the pope, and, by acts of Parliament, the English Church was established. Beyond an attempt to find a northwest passage from the Atlantic to the Pacific (in 1527), no westward expeditions were made by the English. Their foreign commerce was mostly confined to the Netherlands. Their first merchant ship reached India the same year in which Parliament for the first time favored the fisheries of Newfoundland, and the Spaniards under De Soto discovered the Mississippi (1541). *Eminent men.*—Cardinal

Henry VIII.
1509-1547.

Wolsey, Sir Thomas More, Henry Howard (Earl of Surrey), William Tyndall, and Sir Thomas Wyatt.

The son of Henry VIII. by his third wife, Jane Seymour, succeeded to the throne. During his reign the first attempt was made to find a north-east passage (that is, around the northern part of Europe and Asia) to China. The farthest point reached was Archangel, a port in Russia. Spitzbergen was discovered, but was then supposed to be a part of Greenland.

Mary was the daughter of Henry VIII. by his first wife, Catharine. She was a Catholic, and one of the first acts of her reign was to restore the religion of that church. She married Philip II. of Spain, and having engaged in a war with France to please her husband, lost Calais, "the brightest jewel in her crown," the last English possession on the Continent. The port of Archangel having been discovered, a trade with Russia was begun.

This queen was the daughter of Henry VIII. by his second wife, Anne Boleyn. The laws for the establishment of the English Church,

which had been enacted during Edward's reign but abrogated during Mary's, were again enacted. The Puritans, largely composed of English Protestants, who had been in

exile in Switzerland and Germany during Mary's reign, contended for greater changes in religious forms and doctrines. The Pilgrims (p. 61) formed their first church organization under the preaching and teaching of Robert Brown (1581). John Knox completed what is known in history as the "Reformation in Scotland." Mary Queen of Scots, whose subjects had rebelled against her, fled to England, where, after being held a captive by Elizabeth more than eighteen years, she was executed. In the contest between the Netherlands and Spain, Elizabeth espoused the cause of the former; in consequence Philip, of Spain, sent an immense fleet, known as the "Invincible Armada," to invade England. It was attacked and defeated with terrible destruction by a fleet under Lord Howard, assisted by the renowned captains Drake, Frobisher, Hawkins, and Raleigh (1588). Trade with the west coast of Africa was begun; from thirty to fifty English fishing ships came annually to the bays and banks of Newfoundland; tobacco and potatoes were introduced into England from America; Drake, while making a voyage around the world, explored the coast of New Albion (California and Oregon); and Frobisher and Davis endeavored to find a northwest passage to the Pacific. The attempts to provide an asylum in Carolina and Florida for the persecuted Huguenots (p. 96) were followed by the efforts of Gilbert to plant a settlement on Newfoundland, and by Raleigh's to plant a colony in Carolina (pp. 40, 98). Gosnold was the first Englishman to tread upon the soil of New England (p. 60); and though the French, under Huguenot leaders, and the English, under Raleigh, Gilbert, and Gosnold, had made great exertions to establish colonies in America, at the close of Elizabeth's reign—more than a hundred years after Columbus first crossed the Atlantic—there was not so much as one European family between Florida and Hudson's Bay. The few Spaniards who had driven the Huguenots from Florida and were in turn driven by Sir Francis Drake out of the small fort at St. Augustine, into which they had crowded (1586), but were still lingering in Florida, were, besides their countrymen in Mexico, the only people not Indians in all the continent of North America. The *eminent men* were Sir Edward Coke, Bacon, Shakspeare, Spenser, and Raleigh.

SECTION II.

COLONIAL PERIOD.

Virginia.

1. The English claim to territory in America had for its principal foundation stone the discoveries of the Cabots. By virtue of this claim, James I. granted to an association of "noblemen, gentlemen, and merchants," known as the London company, "the exclusive right to occupy the regions from thirty-four to thirty-eight degrees of north latitude;" and, to an association of "knights, gentlemen, and merchants," known as the Plymouth company, an equal right to the regions from forty-one to forty-five degrees. "Collision was not probable, for each company was to possess the soil extending fifty miles north and south of its first settlement, so that neither might plant within one hundred miles of its rival." The northern regions were called North Virginia; the southern, South Virginia.

2. "The London company spent several months in preparations for planting a colony. At length three vessels, fitted out under the command of Captain Christopher Newport, a navigator experienced in voyages to the New World, sailed from England. After passing three weeks in the West Indies, they sailed in quest of Roanoke island; and, having exceeded their reckoning three days without finding land, the crew grew impatient. At this juncture, a violent storm, compelling them to scud all night under bare poles, providentially drove them into the mouth of Chesapeake bay. The first land they came in sight of they called Cape Henry, in honor of the

Prince of Wales, eldest son of King James, as the opposite point, Cape Charles, was named after the king's second son, then Duke of York, afterwards Charles the First.

3. A party of twenty or thirty, with Newport, landing here, found a variety of pretty flowers and goodly trees. While recreating themselves on the shore, they were attacked by five savages, who came creeping upon all fours from the hills like bears, and with their arrows wounded two, but retired at the discharge of muskets. Seventeen days were spent in quest of a place for the settlement. A point on the western side of the mouth of Chesapeake bay they named Point Comfort, because they found a good harbor there, which, after the recent storm, put them in good comfort.

4. On the 8th of May (1607), the colonists went farther up the river to the country of the Ap-po-mat'-tocks, who came forth to meet them in a most warlike manner, with bows and arrows, and formidable war clubs; but the whites, making signs of peace, were suffered to land unmolested. At length they selected for the site of the colony a peninsula lying on the north side of the James river, about forty miles from its mouth. The western end of this peninsula, where it is connected by a little isthmus with the main land, was the spot pitched upon for the erection of a town, which was named, in honor of the king, Jamestown. This was the first permanent settlement effected by the English in North America.¹

5. Upon landing, the council to govern the colony took the oath of office. Wingfield, a member of the council, was elected president. John Smith, another member, was excluded from the council upon some false pretences. Dean Swift says: 'When a great genius appears in the world, the dunces are all in confederacy against him.' All hands fell to

¹ The first permanent settlement made by Europeans within the present limits of the United States was made by the Spaniards at St. Augustine, Florida, in 1565. Santa Fe, New Mexico, is also a very old city. "When first visited by the Spaniards, about 1542, it was a populous Indian pueblo. When it was first settled by the Spaniards is not known."

work, the council planning a fort, the rest clearing ground for pitching tents, preparing clapboards for freighting the vessels, laying off gardens, and making fishing-nets.



JOHN SMITH.

6. On the fourth of June, Newport, Smith (restored to his position in the council), and twenty others were dispatched to discover the head of the river on which they had located their settlement. This stream was called by the Indians Pow-ha-tan', and by the English the James river. The natives everywhere received the strangers kindly, feasting them with fish, strawberries, and mulberries, for which

Newport requited them with bells, pins, needles, and looking-glasses, which so pleased them that they danced before their guests and followed them from place to place. In six days they reached a town called Powhatan, one of the seats of the great chief of that name, whom they found there. It consisted of twelve wigwams, pleasantly situated on a bold range of hills overlooking the river, with three inlets in front and many cornfields around. This picturesque spot lies on the north bank of the river, about a mile below the falls, and still retains the same name."

7. The men sent out were but poorly fitted to settle in a wild country. Of the number, only twelve were laborers. "There were forty-eight gentlemen to four carpenters." Quarrels occurred, the provisions were spoiled, the natives

Character
of the
Colonists.

became hostile, and sickness prevailed. In less than four months fifty men, "one half of the colony," were carried to the grave, among them being Bartholomew Gosnold. The president of the council, accused of dishonest acts, was deposed, and his successor, "possessing neither judgment nor industry, the management of affairs fell into the hands of Smith, whose

buoyant spirit of heroic daring diffused light amidst the general gloom. To his vigor, industry, and resolution, the survival of the colony is due."

8. In an open boat, Smith made several voyages, sailing more than two thousand miles in exploring Chesapeake bay and the rivers that flow into it. While on one of these excursions, he was made a prisoner by the Indians, **John Smith.** "but he saved his life by displaying a pocket compass and explaining its properties to the savage chief." The first printed notice of this adventure in England "made famous the name of Po-ca-hon'-tas, the daughter of Powhatan, a girl of ten or twelve years old. This child, to whom in later days Smith attributed his rescue from death by the club of an Indian, often afterward came to the fort with her companions, bringing baskets of corn for the garrison."

9. New settlers came, "yet the joy in Virginia on the arrival of the first recruits was of short continuance, for they were chiefly vagabond gentlemen and goldsmiths who thought it impossible to thrust a shovel into the soil, without bringing up a lump of gold. In a **The gold excitement.** small rivulet near Jamestown was found a glittering, yellowish sand, which they immediately believed to be gold. This became the all-absorbing topic of thought and discourse, and there was now no talk, no hope, no work, but dig gold, wash gold, refine gold, load gold. The unskilful refiners pronounced this shining sand to be very valuable gold, forgetting that 'all that glitters is not gold.' This, of course, carried the frenzy to its height; and nothing would content Newport but the freighting of his ship with the worthless trash."

10. A new charter conferring greater privileges was obtained by the London company, and Lord Delaware was appointed governor. Before, however, the arrival of Delaware, Smith, who had been president of the council nearly two years, was wounded by the **The starving time.** accidental explosion of a bag of gunpowder while he was sleep-

ing in his boat; and was compelled to embark for England, "never to see Virginia again."¹ There were nearly five hundred men in the colony when he left; but "in six months, indolence, vice, and famine reduced the number to sixty, and these were so feeble and dejected that if relief had been delayed but ten days longer, they also would have perished (1610)."

11. Under Lord Delaware, who was a prudent and kind-hearted man, the colony prospered. "At the beginning of the day they assembled in the little church, which was kept neatly trimmed with the wild flowers of the country; next they returned to their homes to receive their allowance of food. The settled hours of labor, the work being done in common, were from six in the morning till ten, and from two in the afternoon till four." Unfortunately, Lord Delaware was soon compelled by ill-health to return to England, leaving his colony to be ruled by a deputy. At this time a majority of the colonists were Episcopalians. All persons of other denominations were looked upon as Dissenters. From England the settlers for many years received their clergy, and to England they sent their sons to be educated.

12. A trading party, headed by Argall, an English adventurer, made several voyages up the Potomac. While engaged in one of these, Argall "persuaded an Indian chief to betray Pocahontas into his hands, to be kept at Jamestown as a ransom for the return of Englishmen held in captivity by her father. For the sake of her

¹ Smith had traveled through a large part of Europe, and had passed a very adventurous life. He had fought against the Turks; had been captured in battle, and made a slave; had been rescued from slavery through the compassion of his Turkish mistress, and had been sent by her to Russia, where he was treated as a serf. Rising against his taskmaster, he slew him, and fled from the country. Thence, in search of new adventures and dangers, he went to Morocco; and at length returned to England in time to embark in the enterprise of settling the New World. In making his explorations in the Virginia waters, he sailed, by his own computation, about 3,000 miles. (See page 60.)

liberation, Powhatan set free his English captives. During the period of her stay at Jamestown, John Rolfe (*rolf*), 'an honest and discreet' young Englishman, daily, hourly, and, as it were, in his very sleep, heard a voice crying in his ears that he should strive to make her a Christian. After a great struggle of mind, and daily and believing prayers, he resolved to labor for the conversion of the 'unregenerated maiden;' and, winning the favor of Pocahontas, he desired her in marriage.



POCAHONTAS.

13. The youthful princess received instruction with docility; and soon, in the little church at Jamestown, which rested on rough pine columns, fresh from the forest, she stood before the font, that out of the trunk of a tree 'had been hewn hollow like a canoe, openly renounced her country's idolatry, professed the faith of Jesus Christ, and was baptized. The gaining of this one soul, the first fruit of Virginia conversion,' was followed by her nuptials with Rolfe. The immediate result of this event to the colony was a confirmed peace with Powhatan."¹

14. At first the settlers cultivated the soil in common; but this did not promote industry, and it was found best to give each man a few acres to till for himself. Soon the cultivation of tobacco began in good earnest. Then there were no more gold-seekers. The fields, the gardens, the squares, and even the streets of Jamestown were planted with tobacco. As early as the year 1610, to-

Tobacco.

¹ Three years after her marriage, Pocahontas was taken to England by her husband, where she was received as a princess, being presented at court, and treated with marked attention by all classes. When about to return to her native land, she suddenly died (in 1617), leaving a son from whom are descended the Bolling, Randolph, Fleming, and other families in Virginia.

bacco was in general use in England. The manner of using it was partly to inhale the smoke and blow it out through the nostrils ; and this was called " drinking tobacco."

15. The Virginia tobacco was imported into England in the leaf, in bundles ; and was sometimes called the " American silver-weed." Bancroft says : " It was generally used instead of coin. Taxes were paid in tobacco ; remittances to Europe were made in tobacco ; the revenue of the clergy, the magistrates, and the colony, was collected in the same currency. The colonial tradesman received his pay in straggling parcels of it ; and ships from abroad were obliged to lie whole months in the river, before boats, visiting the plantations on their banks, could pick up a cargo." Up to 1619, the plantations were cultivated by the settlers, most of the laborers being " apprenticed servants." In that year a Dutch vessel sailed up the James river and landed twenty negroes, who were sold as slaves. This was the beginning of negro slavery in the English colonies.

16. As yet there were but few families in the colony, and most of the men intended in time to return to England.

**Importation
of wives.** Encouraged by the London company, ninety young women of good reputation embarked for Virginia. These met with a favorable reception, and were " married to the tenants of the company or to men who were able to support them," each man giving for his wife one hundred and twenty pounds of tobacco, the price of her passage to Virginia (1620). A second emigration met with even greater favor, the price paid, in some cases, exceeding one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco. Domestic ties soon bound the settlers to their new homes.

17. The London company procured another charter—their third—which gave them greater privileges. Still the returns from the colony did not satisfy them ; and the Indians, on two occasions, massacred hundreds of the settlers. At last the king, James I., displeased with the freedom of speech indulged in at the public

**Virginia
a royal
colony.**

meetings of the company, took the affairs of the colony into his own hands, his excuse being that the disasters were the result of bad government (1620).

18. Virginia thus became a royal province, her governors receiving their appointment from the king. Nearly fifty years later, all the "dominion of land and water called Virginia" was ceded by Charles II. to Lord Culpeper and the Earl of Arlington "for the term of thirty-one years." This act exasperated the inhabitants, who already had become dissatisfied because Berkeley, their governor, had carried out with great severity the offensive royal instructions in relation to commerce, taxes, the privileges of voting, and church worship.

**Bacon's
Rebellion.**

19. The people wanted but an excuse for appearing in arms, and this was soon found in an invasion made by the Susquehanna Indians. The struggle for popular liberty that ensued is known as "Bacon's Rebellion." In that struggle the little village of Jamestown was destroyed by fire. The people were in the full tide of success, when, suddenly, their leader, Nathaniel Bacon, sickened and died, leaving them without a head (1676). Berkeley caused twenty-two of them to be hung; and for this cruel and vindictive conduct he was recalled by the king, who exclaimed as he did so: "The old fool has taken away more lives in that naked country than I, for the murder of my father."¹

.*

New England.

1. In the history of the struggle to plant a lasting settlement at Jamestown are the names of two men whose good sense, honesty, and enterprise commend them to all who read the interesting story. These are of Smith and Gos-

¹ Charles I. was tried on a charge of treason to his people, was pronounced guilty, and beheaded (1649). His son, Charles II., on becoming king, showed moderation and clemency (1660-1685).

nold ; and to these two men, more than to any other two, is the first success of that struggle due. These have also honorable records in the early history of New England. **Early explorations.** Gosnold, before going to Virginia, crossed the Atlantic in a small bark, explored a large part of the coast from Maine southward, discovered Cape Cod, and "well-nigh secured to New England the honor of the first permanent English settlement" (1602).

2. Smith, a few years later and after leaving Virginia, sailed with two ships, examined with care most of the coast that Gosnold had previously seen, prepared a map of his explorations, and gave to the country the name by which it has ever since been known, that of New England. Unfortunately, a terrible blot was cast upon the expedition, for which, however, its commander was in no wise to blame. After Smith's departure for England, the master of the second ship kidnapped several Indians, and, sailing to Europe, sold them to the Spaniards as slaves.

3. But we are anticipating events. It will be recollected that King James granted to two companies a large part of the vast region that had been discovered by the Cabots. We have shown how the beginning of settlement was made in the southern portion of this region. **First English settlement in Maine.** Under the charter to the Plymouth company, a colony, with George Popham as its president, was planted in the northern portion, near the mouth of the Kennebec river. This was also in 1607, only three months after Smith, Gosnold, and their companions had begun to clear the ground for the settlement of Jamestown. A fort, storehouse, rude cabins, and a church were built ; but the intense cold of the winter, the death of their president, the destruction of their storehouse by fire, and other causes, so discouraged the settlers that they returned to Europe. Thus ended the colony.

4. To forty wealthy men, the most powerful of the English nobility, King James, in 1620, issued a patent which,

“in American annals, and even in the history of the world, has but one parallel.” By this charter, known as the “Great Patent,” the whole of North America, from the fortieth to the forty-eighth degree of latitude, was granted in full property. This vast region, including all its islands, rivers, harbors, mines, and fisheries, was given to forty persons. The name of the new association was “The Council established at Plymouth;” but, for the sake of brevity, it was called the Council of Plymouth. The Plymouth company, so called, no longer existed.

**The
Great
Patent.**

5. There were at that time in England large numbers of the inhabitants who did not believe that it was right to worship God in the manner required by the laws of the country. They desired to purify the Established Church from what they regarded its corruptions; hence, in derision, they were called Puritans. The term was applied to several sects, including one known as Brownists; but these last were not strictly Puritans, for, while the Puritans denounced the Church of England, they still continued to have the most profound reverence for it. The Brownists, so called by the Puritans, were seceders or *Separatists*, inasmuch as, “renouncing all obedience to human authority in spiritual things,” they separated themselves entirely from the Church of England and formed themselves into independent congregations.

**Puritans
and
Pilgrims.**

6. “At an early period of King James’s reign one of these congregations of seceders had been wont to hold meetings at Scrooby, then the residence of one William Brewster, a gentleman of fortune, a good scholar, who was living a retired life, devoted to study, meditation, and practical exertion to promote the cause of religion. The pastor of the church, one John Robinson, was a man of learning, eloquence, and lofty intellect. But what were such gifts in the possession of rebels, seceders, and Puritans? It is needless to say that Brewster and Robinson were baited, persecuted, watched day and night, some of the congregation often clapped into

**The
Pilgrims
in England.**

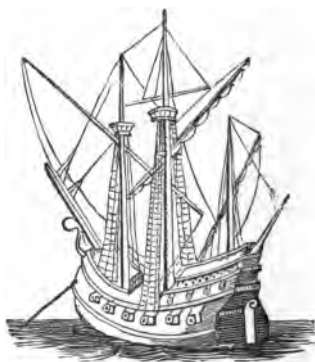
prison, others into the stocks, deprived of the means of livelihood, outlawed, famished, banned. Plainly their country was no place for them. After a few years of such work they resolved to establish themselves in Holland, where at least they hoped to find refuge and toleration.

7. But it proved as difficult for them to quit the country as to remain in it. Watched and hunted like gangs of coiners, forgers, or other felons attempting to flee from justice, set upon by troopers armed with 'bills and guns and other weapons,' seized when about to embark, pillaged and stripped by catchpoles, exhibited as a show to grinning country folk, the women and children dealt with like drunken tramps, led before magistrates, committed to jail, they were only able after attempts lasting through two years' time to effect their escape to Amsterdam." Then the wanderers were *Pilgrims*.

8. Their residence in Amsterdam was brief. To Leyden (*li'-den*) they soon removed, and here for several years they "lived together in peace, and love, and holiness. But they feared that, if they continued there much longer, they

The Pilgrims in Holland. would cease to be English, and would adopt all the manners and ideas and feelings of the Dutch. For this and other reasons," they decided to plant a colony in America, where, in the enjoyment of their religious rights, they would once more be under the government of their native land. The "embarkation" took place at Delft-Haven.

9. "Delft-Haven is an unimportant seaport on the long line of the Dutch coast; yet it is worthy of remembrance, for it marks the march of man toward the future, and toward freedom. On the morning of



SHIP OF THE TIME OF THE PILGRIMS.

the 22d of July, of the year 1620, a few persons, on the quiet key, knew that a small bark of sixty tons, called the Speedwell, was preparing for a voyage; but whither ^{The} and for what? She was no merchantman bound ^{Embarkation.} for gain, no privateer for plunder, no holiday sail for pleasure, no explorer for new continents.

10. On that morning the living freight of that vessel gathered on her deck, men, women, and children, some old, but mostly young. They were English born, and English bred, though they had now lived in this foreign land twelve years. They did not forget the land of their birth, yet they thanked the Dutch for shelter when they were driven out from their homes and the places they loved so well. They had taken counsel of their hope and their fears 'to seek of God,' using their own words, 'a right way for us and our children.' They believed they had found the right way, and were now to go forward on it, leaving behind the larger part of their church and their minister, for all could not then go.

11. The Pilgrims stood in groups, and the conversation, if brief and low, was earnest. Then Robinson knelt down on the deck, and with him knelt his friends and companions. He stretched out his hands, and cried to the Lord, and his words moved all hearts. . . . It would be hard to say which were the more bereft; those who went, or those who stayed. As they on the shore watched the departing bark with streaming eyes, they were borne up by a living faith that liberty and righteousness should one day prevail.

12. They sailed for Southampton, England, where awaited them another small ship, the Mayflower. The final arrangements having been made, the two ships stood out to sea. The passengers had hardly begun to arrange themselves to their new circumstances, when signals from the Speedwell told them that something was wrong—that evil threatened them. To turn back was the only alternative; and then to learn that the Speedwell was leaking badly was the unwel-

come news. To old England, then, they must once more steer, and that without delay, for the water made fast, so that when they arrived at Dartmouth, they believed that in three hours more the ship 'would have sunk right down.'

13. After eight days of delay, they again sailed, but, before long, the signals told of further trouble. The superstitious element was then rife in the land; and the habit of tracing every event to a special act of God led some to fear that these delays and rebuffs signified that God was displeased at the voyage. It was decided to put back to England—this time to Plymouth. Finally the Mayflower, with as many of the Pilgrims as could be accommodated on board, set sail for America, solitary and alone."

14. After a boisterous voyage of more than three months, the Mayflower dropped her anchor at noon, on a Saturday, in the harbor of Cape Cod. There, in the cabin of the little vessel, all the men, forty-one in number, agreed to a form of government for their colony, by signing their names to a compact that had been previously prepared. With the same unanimity they chose John Carver governor for one year. "Having kept their Sabbath in due retirement, the men began the labors of the week by landing a shallop from the ship, and hauling it up the beach for repairs, while the women went on shore to wash clothes. While the carpenter and men were at work on the boat, sixteen others, armed and provisioned, with Standish for their commander, set off on foot to explore the country. The only incident of this day was the sight of five or six savages, who, on their approach, ran away too swiftly to be overtaken. At night, lighting a fire and setting a guard, the party bivouacked at the distance, as they supposed, of ten miles from the vessel.

† 15. Proceeding southward, next morning, they observed marks of cultivation; some heaps of earth which they took for signs of graves, and the remains of a hut, with a 'great kettle, which had been some ship's kettle.' In a heap which

they opened they found two baskets containing four or five bushels of Indian corn, of which they took as much as they could carry away in their pockets and in the kettle. The second night, which was rainy, they encamped again with more precaution than before. On Friday evening, having lost their way meanwhile, and been amused by an accident to Bradford, who was caught in an Indian deer-trap, they returned to their friends.

16. The succeeding week was spent in putting their tools in order and preparing timber for a new boat. During this time, which proved to be cold and stormy, much inconvenience was experienced from having to wade through the shallow water to the shore ; and many took 'coughs and colds, which afterward turned to scurvy.' On Monday of the week next following, twenty-four of the colonists, in the shallop, which was now refitted, set out for an exploration along the coast. That day and the following night they suffered from a cold snow-storm, and were compelled to run into the shore for security.

17. As soon as the state of the weather permitted, a party of ten, including Carver, Bradford, and others of the principal men, set off with eight seamen in the shallop, on what proved to be the final expedition of discovery. The severity of the cold was extreme. 'The water froze on their clothes, and made them, many times, like coats of iron.' Coasting along the cape in a southerly direction for six or seven leagues, they landed and slept at a place where ten or twelve Indians had appeared on the shore. The Indians ran away on being approached.

18. The next day, while part of the company in the shallop examined the shore, the rest, ranging about the country, found a burial-place, some old wigwams, and a small store of parched acorns buried in the ground. The following morning, at daylight, they had just ended their prayers, and were preparing breakfast at their camp on the beach, when they heard a yell, and a flight of arrows fell among them. The assail-

ants turned out to be thirty or forty Indians, who, being fired upon, retired. Neither side had been harmed. A number of the arrows were picked up, 'some whereof were headed with brass, others with hart's horn, and others with eagles' claws.'

19. Getting on board, they sailed along the shore in a storm of snow and sleet. In the afternoon, the gale having increased, their rudder was disabled, and they had to steer with oars. At length the mast was carried away, and they drifted in the dark with a flood tide. With difficulty they brought up under the lee of a 'small rise of land.' Here a part of the company, suffering from wet and cold, went on shore, though not without fear of hostile neighbors, and lighted a fire by which to pass the inclement night.

20. On Monday they sounded the harbor, and found it fit for shipping, and marched also into the land, and found divers cornfields and little running brooks, a place, as they supposed, fit for situation." And here they all landed, to the number of one hundred and two, on the 21st of December, 1620, a memorable day in the calendar. "A grateful posterity," says Bancroft, "has marked the rock on which they first trod. In memory of the hospitalities which the company had received at the last English port from which they had sailed, this oldest New England colony took the name of Plymouth."

21. "The imagination," says Palfrey, "vainly tasks itself to comprehend the horrors of that fearful winter. The only mitigations were, that the cold was of less severity than is usual in the place, and that there was not an entire want of food and shelter. The men carried out the dead through the cold and snow, and then hastened back from the burial to wait on the sick; and as the sick began to recover, they took the places of those whose strength had been exhausted. Warm weather came at length, and the birds sang in the woods most pleasantly. Never was spring more welcome;" but death had carried to

**The first
winter at
Plymouth.**

the grave more than half their number, including Carver and his wife. Bradford was their second governor. The fears that at first they had of the Indians were put at rest by a treaty of friendship made with Mas-sa-soit', the great chief of the Wam-pa-no'-ags (1621).¹

22. "Our fathers were brought hither by their high veneration for the Christian religion. They journeyed by its light, and labored in its hope. They sought to incorporate its principles with the elements of their society, and to diffuse its influence through all their institutions, civil, political, or literary. Let us cherish these sentiments, and extend this influence still more widely; in the full conviction that that is the happiest society which partakes in the highest degree of the mild and peaceable spirit of Christianity."

The great
aim of the
Pilgrims.

23. The "Great Patent" to the Council of Plymouth, including, as it did, the exclusive right of fishing in the waters off the coast of New England and beyond, found no favor with those outside of the company who desired to engage in the business. Said Sir Edward Coke, a celebrated English lawyer, "This is to make a monopoly upon the high seas." The opposition, however, did not prevent the council from granting to two men, Gorges (*gor'-jez*) and Mason, the lands between the Merrimac and the Kennebec. Under this grant, a colony of fishermen made settlements at Portsmouth and Dover (1623). When, six years later, Mason obtained, in his own name alone, a title to the southern and western portions of the same land—New Hampshire—he gave cause for the series of lawsuits about lands that for a quarter of a century distressed the settlers.²

Settlement
of New
Hampshire.

¹ This treaty, "made in a day, was sacredly kept for more than half a century. A bundle of arrows, wrapped in the skin of a rattlesnake, was the warlike message of Ca-non'-i-cus, sachem of the Narragansetts; but when Bradford sent back the skin stuffed with powder and shot, his courage quailed, and he sued for amity" (1622).—*Bancroft*.

² In 1641, the people of the different settlements of New Hampshire placed themselves under the government and protection of Massachu-

24. The third English colony planted with success in New England was at Salem. John Endicott, by authority of a grant made by the Council of Plymouth to a company of five persons beside himself, arrived in the autumn of 1628 ; and, joined by persons who had already settled there, laid the foundation of the colony. This was the beginning of the " Puritan refuge " in America. Endicott's associates, re-enforced by many Puritans of note and many other excellent men, obtained from King Charles a charter, which formed them into a body by the name of the " Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England " (1629). " This charter was cherished for more than half a century as the precious boon."

25. Twelve ships soon arrived in Massachusetts bay ; but, in consequence of their long voyages, the emigrants suffered from fevers and the want of proper food. They " had intended to dwell together ; but, in their distress, they planted where each was inclined." John Winthrop, their governor, made Charlestown his first home. " On the other side of the river, on the little peninsula, scarce two miles long by one broad, marked by three hills, and blessed with sweet and pleasant springs, safe pastures, and land that promised rich cornfields and fruitful gardens, the first good house was built, even before the place took the name (Boston) which was to grow famous throughout the world."¹ Winthrop took possession of this peninsula, and there commenced a settlement (1630).

setts ; but in 1680 the two colonies were separated by order of the king. Twice after this New Hampshire was united to Massachusetts ; but from 1741 it was independent.

¹ The Indian name of the peninsula was abbreviated into the name Shawmut. Some of the colonists were from Boston, England. The first English settler there was William Blackstone. " There is a mystery in his life which probably can never be explained. When and how he came to America is unknown. The first planters of Massachusetts bay found him already established on the Shawmut peninsula, now Boston. In 1634 he sold out his title to Shawmut, and became probably the first white settler of Rhode Island. Williams found him there in 1636."—*Arnold's History of Rhode Island*.

26. The valley through which the Connecticut river flows was soon found to be pleasant and fertile. The Dutch of New Netherlands were the first to ascend the stream ; and, to protect their claim to the region, they put up a building on the west side of the river, which answered the double purpose of a fort and trading-house. The Pilgrims of Plymouth also appear in the early history of Connecticut. They, too, erected a building—a trading-house—where they carried on a profitable traffic in furs with the natives. Meantime, however, the “soil of Connecticut,” by an act of the Council of Plymouth, had been “ceded away,” and was now the property of Lord Say-and-Seal, Lord Brooke, and others. At the mouth of the Connecticut a colony was planted by John Winthrop, son of the Massachusetts governor, which, in honor of the proprietors, was named Saybrook (1635).

27. In the autumn of the same year a second colony was established in Connecticut. This was at Hartford, near the fort built by the Dutch. The settlers were from the vicinity of Boston. These were followed the next year by another emigration from the same locality, conducted by the Rev. Thomas Hooker. “About the beginning of June, the first warm month of the New England year, Mr. Hooker, with about one hundred men, women, and children, set out upon the journey which had been long in contemplation. Over mountains ; through swamps ; across rivers, fording or upon rafts ; with the compass to point out their way, slowly they moved westward.

28. Now, in the open spaces of the forests where the sun looked in ; now, under the shades of the old trees ; now, struggling through the bushes and vines—driving their flocks and herds before them—with hearts as cheerful as the month, slowly they moved on. A stately, well-ordered journey it was, for gentlemen of fortune and rank were of the company. Ladies, too, who had been delicately bred and had known little of toil or hardship until now, were there. At the end of about two weeks they reached the land almost fabulous to

them—the valley of the Connecticut. It lay at their feet, beneath the shadow of the low-browed hills. It lay holding its silvery river in its embrace, like a strong bow half bent in the hands of the swarthy hunter, who still called himself lord of its rich acres.”

29. These settlers had come to a delightful region, but they were surrounded by perils. Their neighbors, the Dutch, were unfriendly, for they looked upon them as intruders ; but their

The worst foes were the hostile tribe of Indians called **Pequod War.** Pequods or Pequots. With these (in 1637) they were compelled to wage a fierce war ; but Indian cunning and ferocity were no match for European courage and skill. What could clubs and arrows avail against muskets and armor ? The Pequods were defeated and completely broken up as a tribe. Of the few that survived and surrendered, some were enslaved by the English, the others were sent to the Narragansetts and Mohegans.

30. Two colonies were already in Connecticut. A third, “ remarkable for the religious spirit that marked its laws,” was founded at New Haven, by Theophilus Eaton, a man

The New
Haven
Colony.

of large fortune, and John Davenport, a distinguished Puritan minister (1638). A title to the lands was obtained by a treaty with the natives. Annual elections were held, and Eaton was chosen governor annually till his death—a period of twenty years.

31. “ The first house for public worship in New Haven was commenced in 1639. That such a house should be built was decided in the town meeting. It was fifty feet square,

A Sabbath
in New
Haven in
the olden
times.

having a tower surmounted with a turret. The men were seated on one side of the house ; the women on the other. Every one, according to his office or his age, or his rank in society, had his place assigned to him. In this temple the fathers of New Haven maintained the worship and ordinances of God for about thirty years. Let us go back to one of their ancient Sabbaths. You see in the morning no mo-

tion, save as the herds go forth to their pasture in the common grounds, driven by the herdsmen. At the appointed hour, the drum having been beaten both the first time and the second, the whole population, from the dwellings of the town and from the farms on the other side of the river, come together in the place of prayer.



PURITANS GOING TO CHURCH.
(From Boughton's celebrated Picture.)

32. The sentinel is placed in the turret to give the first alarm in the event of an attack by the Indians. Those who are to keep ward, the military guard, go forth, pacing two by two the still green lanes. In this rude and unfurnished structure is devotion true and pure. Through a long course of exercises, which would weary out the men of our degenerate days, these hearers sit or stand. They love the word that comes from the lips of their pastor. They love the order of this house. To them, each sermon, every prayer, every

tranquil Sabbath is the more precious for all that it has cost them. As the day declines they retire to their dwellings, and close the Sabbath with family worship.”¹

33. Roger Williams, the founder of Rhode Island, was a “fugitive from English persecution.” Landing at Boston, the year next after Winthrop had taken up his abode there, he soon incurred the enmity of those in power, **The founder of Rhode Island.** for on every occasion he held firmly to the doctrine that “the civil power should have no control over the religious opinions of men.” After a two years’ residence at Plymouth he went to Salem, and there he became the pastor of the church. His efforts, however, to separate the affairs of State from the affairs of the Church so excited the hostility of the authorities, that they resolved to banish him from the colony.

34. “His immediate departure, in a ship then ready to sail for England, was resolved upon. An order was sent for him to come to Boston, which he declined to do. A boat was **His flight to Rhode Island.** then despatched to take him by force, and place him on board the ship. Warned by the previous order, he had already escaped three days before, no one knew whither. Leaving his wife and two infant children, he set out alone in midwinter to perform that arduous journey of which, thirty-five years later, he wrote, ‘I was tossed for one fourteen weeks, in a bitter winter season, not knowing what bread or bed did mean.’

35. Happily for the world, and most fortunately, as the event soon proved, for the people of New England, he eluded the vigilance of his pursurers. Driven from the society of civilized man, Williams turned his steps southward, to find among heathen savages the boon of charity which was re-

¹ The people of the Connecticut colony—Hartford, Windsor, and Wethersfield—met at Hartford in 1639, and united in forming a government. In 1644, Saybrook joined the Connecticut colony. The two colonies, Connecticut and New Haven, were formed into one in 1665, under a royal charter granted by Charles II.

fused at home. The now venerable Massasoit,¹ who, sixteen years before, had first welcomed the weary Pilgrims to his shores, and with whom Williams, during his residence at Plymouth, had contracted a friendship, received with open arms the lonely and twice-exiled Puritan. From him Williams obtained a grant of land, where he built a home and commenced planting.

† 36. But this was not to be his home. He was soon advised by his friend, Governor Winslow of Plymouth, that, as his plantation was within the limits of the Plymouth colony, he should remove. This he resolved to do; and, in company with five others, who appear to have followed him from Salem, he embarked in his canoe to find at length a resting place on the free hills of Providence. . . . Sailing up what was then a broad and beautiful sheet of water, skirted by a dense forest, their attention was attracted by a spring close on the margin of the stream, where they landed, and commenced a settlement, to which, in gratitude to his Supreme Deliverer, Williams gave the name of Providence (1636)."

37. A deed from the Narragansett Indians soon made Williams the owner of a large tract of land. To this asylum for those "distressed for conscience" many fled. They came from England as well as from Massachusetts; and to those whom he thought most in want "he gave away his lands until he gave all away." The ^{Early history of} Rhode Island. affairs of the colony, so long as the population was not large, were managed by the settlers at their town meetings. New settlements in a short time were made, which were united under one government by a charter obtained by Williams from the English Parliament (1644). Not long after Charles the Second ascended the throne, he gave to Rhode Island another and better charter (1663). This, Andros, the governor of all New England when James the Second was king, tried to take away; but he was foiled, and it continued to be

¹ The name as given by Arnold is *Ous-a-me'-quin*.

the great foundation law of Rhode Island for threescore years and a century.

38. The first union of any of the American colonies, "for mutual help and strength," took place in 1643. "A general confederation of the New England colonies had been proposed, and in agitation several years. The cir-

**Union of
New England
colonies.** cumstances of the English nation and the state of the colonies at this time made it a matter of urgent necessity. The colonies had extended their settlements upon the rivers, and had made them in a more scattering manner than was at first designed. No aid could be expected from the mother country. The Dutch had so extended their claims, and were so powerful and hostile, as to afford a just ground of general alarm. All the plantations were compassed by numerous tribes of savage men. The Narragansetts appeared hostile, and there were the appearances of a general combination among the Indians to extirpate the colonies.

39. Commissioners from the colonies of Connecticut, New Haven, and Plymouth were sent to Boston to confer with the commissioners of Massachusetts. A spirit of harmony and mutual condescension prevailed, and articles of union were adopted for the four colonies. This was of the highest consequence to the colonists. It made them formidable to the Dutch and Indians, and respectable among their French neighbors. It was happily adapted to maintain harmony among themselves. It was one of the principal means for the preservation of the colonies during the wars in which England was engaged. It was the grand source of mutual defence in Philip's war. The union lasted more than forty years, until the abrogation of the charters of the New England colonies by King James the Second."

40. "The rise in England of 'the people called Quakers' was one of the most remarkable results of the Protestant revolution." "Twelve of their number, converts of George Fox, the first Quaker in the world, came to Boston. They

seemed to be impelled by an earnest love for the souls of men, and a pure desire to make known what they considered a revelation from Heaven. But the rulers looked upon them as plotting the downfall of all government and religion. They were banished from the colony. In a little while, however, not only the first twelve had returned, but a multitude of other Quakers had come to rebuke the rulers, and to preach against the priests and steeple houses.

**Persecution
of the
Quakers.**

41. These enthusiasts were received with hatred and scorn. They were thrown into dungeons ; they were beaten with many stripes, women as well as men ; they were driven forth into the wilderness, and left to the tender mercies of wild beasts and Indians ; but the more the Quakers were scourged and imprisoned and banished, the more did the sect increase, both by the influx of strangers and by converts from among the Puritans. In 1659 two Quakers were hanged in Boston. A woman had been sentenced to die with them, but was reprieved on condition of her leaving the colony. Her name was Mary Dyer. Next year she returned to Boston and was executed.

42. In 1660, the same year in which Mary Dyer was executed, Charles the Second was restored to the throne of his fathers. This king had many vices ; but he would not permit blood to be shed, under pretence of religion, in any part of his dominions. The Quakers in England told him what had been done to their brethren ; and he sent orders to Governor Endicott, of Massachusetts, to forbear all such proceedings in future. And so ended the Quaker persecution, one of the most mournful passages in the history of our forefathers."

43. About forty years after the Pequod war, another fierce war broke out in New England, known as King Philip's war. King Philip, as he was called by the English, was a son and successor of Massasoit, who had been the fast friend of the colonists. But the whites had now greatly increased in num-

bers, the whole population in New England being about sixty thousand, while the Indians were only half as numerous. The latter, however, were much more to be feared than formerly, for many of them had guns and ammunition instead of bows and arrows, and hatchets and knives instead of the rude weapons made of stone or bone which they had used during the Pequod war.

King Philip's war. 44. Between Narragansett bay and Plymouth were the Wam-pa-no'-ags, of which tribe Philip was the chief. As the farms and villages of the whites were rapidly encroaching upon the hunting grounds of this tribe collisions followed; but whether the storm which broke out so suddenly in 1675 was accidental or the result of a plot is not certain. A converted Indian, who had informed the colonists that his people were making preparations for war, was killed. His murderers were seized, tried by a jury, of which one half were Indians, convicted, and hung. Panting for revenge, the young men of the tribe killed eight or nine of the colonists. The war that ensued was terrible. On the part of the Indians it was one of ambuscades and surprises; and for many months they kept all New England in a state of terror. Brookfield was besieged and set fire to; and Deerfield, Northfield, and other towns were destroyed.¹

45. A treaty of peace had been made with the Narragansetts, but as they gave shelter and protection to the Wampanoags, it was resolved to regard them as enemies. "The place where they were to be sought was in Rhode Island, a little more than eighteen miles from that Pequod fort which

¹ One Sabbath morning, while the people of Hadley were at worship in the village church, a tall and venerable man, a stranger to them, appeared and told them that the savages were coming. He rallied the men and led them against the Indians. The savages were routed and fled; but when the people looked around for their preserver, he had gone; and they for some time believed that they had been rescued by an angel. It was afterward discovered that the tall and venerable man was General Goffe, one of the judges who had condemned Charles the First to be beheaded. He had been hidden in Hadley. This is the story that used to be told, but it has recently been disproved.

had been destroyed by the force under Captain Mason, forty years before. According to information afterwards received from a captive, the Indian warriors here collected were no fewer than three thousand and five hundred. They were on their guard, and had fortified their hold to the best of their skill. It was on a solid piece of upland of five or six acres, wholly surrounded by a swamp. On the inner side of this natural defence, they had driven rows of palisades ; and the only entrance to the enclosure was over a rude bridge consisting of a felled tree.

**Storming
of the
Narragansett
Fort.**

46. Having passed without shelter a very cold night, the English had made a march of eighteen miles through deep snow, scarcely halting to refresh themselves with food. In this condition they immediately advanced to the attack. The Massachusetts troops were in the van of the storming column, next came the two Plymouth companies, and then the force from Connecticut. The foremost of the assailants were received with a well-directed fire. Captain Johnson, of Roxbury, was shot dead on the bridge, as he was rushing over it at the head of his company. Others shared his fate ; but, nothing discouraged by the fall of their leaders, the men pressed on, and a sharp conflict followed, which, with fluctuating success, lasted for two or three hours. There was nothing for either party but to conquer or die, enclosed together as they were. At length victory declared for the English, who finished their work by setting fire to the wigwams within the fort. The military strength of the formidable Narragansett tribe was irreparably broken."

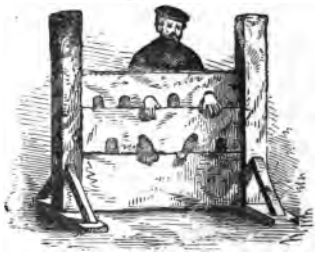
47. " Philip was hunted from spot to spot. At last, with a scanty band of followers, who still remained true to his desperate fortunes, the unhappy man wandered back to Mount Hope, the ancient dwelling of his fathers. Here he lurked about, like a spectre, among scenes of former power and prosperity, now bereft of home, of family, and friends. Little minds are tamed and subdued by misfortune, but great minds rise above it. The very idea of

**Death
of Philip.**

submission awakened the fury of Philip, and he smote to death one of his followers who proposed an expedient of peace. The brother of the victim made his escape, and, in revenge, betrayed the retreat of his chieftain.

48. A body of white men and Indians were immediately dispatched to the swamp where Philip lay crouched, glaring with fury and despair. Before he was aware of their approach they had begun to surround him. In a little while he saw five of his trustiest followers laid dead at his feet. All resistance was vain. He rushed forth from his cover and made a headlong attempt to escape; but was shot through the heart by a renegade Indian of his own nation. Such is the scanty story of the brave but unfortunate King Philip." His body was cut in quarters, and his head was sent to Plymouth, where it was exposed on a gibbet for twenty years. His captive child was sold as a slave in Bermuda.

49. In the year 1692, Sir William Phipps, a native of Maine, came from England with a commission from King William, as governor of Massachusetts. Within the limits of his province were the old colony of Plymouth and the territories of Maine and Nova Scotia. All this region, not including New Hampshire, was now called Massachusetts. Phipps was a "ship carpenter and a fortune-seeker. Accustomed from boyhood to the axe and the oar, he had gained distinction



THE STOCKS.¹

¹ "The stocks and pillory were movable machines on wheels, and had no fixed position. Both were used as a means of enforcing attendance at church meetings, or punishing offences against the church, and their location at its very portal served no doubt as a gentle reminder to the congregation. It is related that in the year 1753 a woman stood for an hour in the pillory of the Town House, Boston, amid the scoffs and jeers of the multitude."—*Drake's Old Landmarks*.

only by his wealth, the fruits of his enterprise with the diving-bell in raising treasures from a Spanish wreck." Almost as soon as he assumed the government he became engaged in a very frightful business.

50. In the little village of Salem, now Danvers, were two young girls, in the family of a clergyman, who "began to have strange caprices. They complained of being pinched and pricked with pins; and often would pretend to be seized with strange convulsions, and would cry out that witches were afflicting them." This led to a strange excitement and alarm. Numbers of persons were accused of the crime of witchcraft, and, to escape torture, confessed that they were guilty. More than fifty, in this way, were compelled to make such a confession. Twenty persons were put to death, and many others were cast into prison. This dreadful delusion lasted more than six months; and it was not until some of the magistrates themselves, and even the governor's wife, were accused, that the people began to see how terribly they had been deceived. All the prisoners were set at liberty; "but the innocent dead could not be restored to life; and the hill where they were executed will always remind people of the saddest and most humiliating passage in our history."

51. "It is well known that no exclusive reproach can with justice be cast upon any part of New England on account of a delusion which equally prevailed in the most enlightened countries of Europe, and received the countenance of the most learned and intelligent men and upright magistrates. In contemplating this sorrowful page in the history of our ancestors, we must bear in mind that, as I have already intimated, no



THE PILLORY.

**Witchcraft
in
Europe.**

peculiar reproach attaches to them. They acted upon principles which all professed, and in which the sincere in all parts of Christendom reposed an undoubting faith."

New York and New Jersey.

1. Two years after Smith and his companions had begun to fell the trees for the settlement of Jamestown, but eleven years before the Mayflower landed the Pilgrims at Plymouth, the Half-Moon, a Dutch ship, entered the harbor of New York (1609).¹ Its

**Discovery of
the Hudson
river.**

commander, Henry Hudson, was an Englishman. In the service of his countrymen, Hudson had twice tried to find a shorter passage by water from the Atlantic to the Pacific than the one discovered by Magellan around the southern part of the American continent. Now, in the service of a Dutch company, he was making his third attempt.



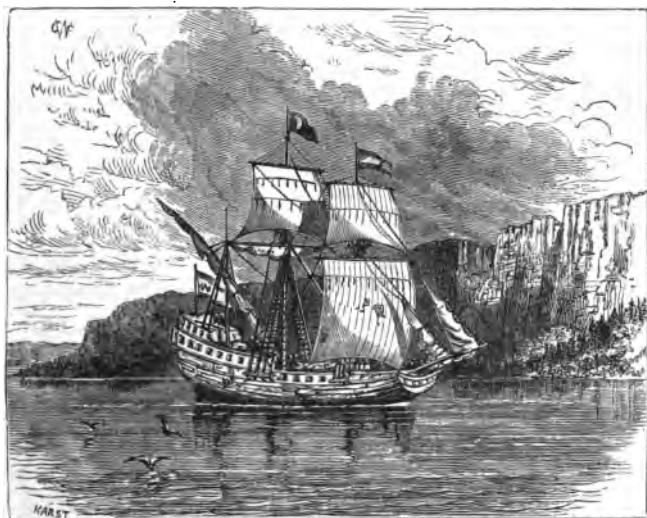
HENRY HUDSON.

2. "The ship was soon visited by canoes full of native warriors ; but no one was suffered to come on board, though their oysters and beans were gladly purchased. The first of Europeans, Hudson, now began to explore the great river which stretched before him to the north, opening, as he hoped, the way to eastern seas. Slowly drifting upward with the flood-tide, he anchored one night just above Yonkers, in sight of 'a

**The
Half-Moon
ascending
the Hudson.**

¹ In behalf of the French, it has been claimed, and the claim has been very generally allowed, that Verrazzani explored a part of the eastern coast of North America in 1524, and then discovered the Hudson river. But this claim has been disputed (See the works on the subject by H. C. Murphy and J. C. Brevoort).

high point of land, which showed out ' five leagues off to the north. The next day, a southeast wind carried him up rapidly through the majestic pass guarded by the frowning



THE HALF-MOON ASCENDING THE HUDSON.

Donderberg. At nightfall he anchored his yacht near West Point, in the midst of the sublimest scenery of the mountains.

3. The next morning was misty until the sun arose, and the grandeur of the overhanging highlands was again revealed. A fair south wind sprung up as the weather became clear, and a bright autumnal day succeeded. Running sixty miles up along the varied shores which lined the deep channel, and delighted every moment with the ever-changing scenery and the magnificent virgin forests which clothed the river-banks with their gorgeous autumnal hues, Hudson arrived towards evening opposite the loftier ' mountains which lie from the river's side,' and anchored the Half-Moon near

Catskill landing. Here he found a 'very loving people, and very old men.'

4. The friendly natives flocked on board the yacht as she remained lazily at anchor the next morning, and brought the crew 'ears of Indian corn, and pumpkins, and tobacco,' which were readily bought for trifles. In the afternoon Hudson went six miles further up the river, and anchored one night near the marshes which divide the channel opposite the flourishing city which now bears his name. Early the next morning he set sail again, and, slowly working his way through the shoaling channel and among the small islands which embarrassed navigation, anchored toward evening about eighteen miles further up. Here the Half-Moon remained at anchor all the next day. With the flood-tide on the following morning the vessel ran higher up, and anchored in deep water near the site of the present city of Albany.

5. The people of the country came flocking on board, and brought grapes and pumpkins, and beaver and otter skins, which were purchased for beads, knives, and hatchets. Here the yacht lingered for several days. Everything now seemed to indicate that the Half-Moon had reached the head of ship navigation. The downward current was fresh and clear, the shoaling channel was narrow and obstructed; yet Hudson, unwilling, perhaps, to abandon his long-cherished hope, dispatched the mate, with a boat's crew, to sound the river higher up. After going eight or nine leagues, and finding 'but seven feet of water and inconstant soundings,' the exploring party returned, and reported that they had 'found it to be at an end for shipping to go in.' Hudson now reluctantly prepared to return."

6. The Dutch made no more attempts to find a north-western passage from ocean to ocean, but they sent ships to the country which Hudson had discovered for them, and explored the coast from both sides of Delaware bay to Massachusetts bay. To a company of mer-

The
first
settlement.

chants was given the exclusive right to trade for three years with all this territory. In the grant thus made the region was named New Netherlands (1614)¹. Previous to this grant, however, little fortified trading houses had been built in the province, one of them on the island of Manhattan. Another was built just south of the present city of Albany, which brought the Dutch in friendly relations with the Mohawks, the most easterly tribe of the Iroquois (*ir-o-kwoiz'*), or Five Nations.

7. A few years later thirty families arrived from Holland. Several of these settled at Orange, now Albany, while "a party under the command of May, who has left his name on the southern county and cape of New Jersey," ascended the Delaware river and on its eastern bank built a fort. In 1626, Peter Min'-u-it came as the governor of New Netherlands. He soon contracted with the Indians for the purchase of Manhattan island, giving beads, buttons, and other glittering trinkets, to the value of about twenty-four dollars, for more than twenty thousand acres of land. Fort Amsterdam was built, and about this centre wooden huts, with roofs of straw and chimneys of wood, soon began to cluster.

8. The growth of the colony was not rapid, although every individual who succeeded in forming a settlement of fifty persons had a large tract of land granted to him. These land-holders were called *patroons*; and in quite recent times the claims of their descendants ^{Growth of the colony.} to rent, led to the *anti-rent* troubles in the State of New York. Minuit was succeeded by the renowned Wouter Van Twil'-ler, and he, in turn, by Kieft (*keeft*); and all this time there were disputes with the English settlers on the Connecticut. The Dutch had first explored the river, and even occupied its banks. There were disputes, too, with the Swedes, who had planted a colony in the southern part of New Netherlands. There were also troubles with the Indians.

9. The prosperity of the colony dates from the arrival, in

¹ Brodhead spells the name New Netherland, in the singular form.

1647, of the brave and honest Peter Stuyvesant (*sti'-ve-sant*), the last of the Dutch governors. In his early military career he had lost a leg, which was replaced by a wooden one



NEW AMSTERDAM.



DUTCH HOUSE.

with silver bands, giving rise to the tradition that he wore a silver leg. As governor of New Netherlands he made peace with the English settlers in Connecticut and with the Indians; he subdued the Swedes on the Delaware

(1655); and tried in every way to encourage trade and agriculture, as well as to induce people to join the settlement.¹

¹ In 1698, the Earl of Bellamont became governor. As commerce was greatly disturbed by pirates, he sent out a bold captain named Kidd, to capture their vessels; but Kidd was a bad man, and knowing that

Kidd. there were very many Spanish ships carrying across the ocean gold, silver, and other treasures from America, he determined to turn pirate himself. He continued on this career for several years, and is said to have obtained immense quantities of gold and rich treasures, some of which he is reported to have buried on

10. These dangers were scarcely settled before a new and greater one appeared ; for Charles the Second, caring nothing for the claims of the Dutch, granted to his brother, the Duke of York, all the country from the Connecticut river to Delaware bay ; and a fleet was sent to take possession of it. When the fleet appeared before New Amsterdam, the citizens, hoping for greater privileges under English rule, were unwilling to make any defense. But Stuyvesant, faithful to his trust to the last, reluctantly, and not till the English were in actual possession of the town, was compelled to march out of the fort and surrender New Netherlands. With this change of masters, New Amsterdam, having a population of fifteen hundred souls speaking eighteen different languages, changed its name to New York, and Fort Orange was presently called Albany (1664). In less than ten years after, while England was at war with Holland, the Dutch regained their former possessions, but, after fifteen months, returned them to the English.¹

11. In the course of its colonial history, New Jersey passed through many ownerships. The claim of the English king Henry VII. came first, by reason of the discoveries of the

Long Island and in other parts of the country. At last he was seized and sent to England, where he suffered death for his crimes (1701). His buried treasures have been sought for at various places.

¹ In consequence of the arbitrary conduct of James II., a revolution took place in England ; the king fled to France, and the English crown was bestowed upon William and Mary (1688-9). The news of these proceedings was received in New York with demonstrations of satisfaction. Jacob Leisler, aided by several hundred armed men, and with the general approbation of the citizens, took possession of the fort there in the name of the new sovereigns. He continued at the head of affairs, managing with prudence and energy, for more than two years, his son-in-law, Milborne, acting as his deputy. On the arrival of Governor Sloughter, bearing a commission direct from William and Mary, Leisler surrendered all authority. This would not satisfy his enemies ; they were bent upon his destruction. So he and Milborne were arrested, tried on a charge of treason, and condemned to death. Sloughter, while drunk at a feast, signed the death warrant, and both men were executed.

Leisler
and
Milborne.

younger Cabot. Then, as part of New Netherlands, it was a Dutch possession. Then, by a gift from King Charles the

Second, it, with New York, became the property **New Jersey.** of the Duke of York. It was next sold to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret,¹ receiving its name in honor of Sir George, who, as governor of the little island of Jersey, in the British channel, had defended it for the king's father, Charles I., during that monarch's contest with the parliament. Then, Berkeley selling his interest to two Quakers, New Jersey was owned by three persons. Again, for a period of thirteen months, the Dutch were in possession ; and then the English. English proprietors effected a division of the territory into eastern and western portions, one of the parts being called East Jersey, and the other West Jersey. By purchase (in 1682), the province became the property of twelve Quakers, of whom William Penn was one ; but twenty years of rule were twenty years of strife and trouble, and the Quakers finally surrendered their powers of government to the crown. New Jersey, as a royal province, was united to New York, and so continued for thirty-six years.²

12. We have seen that the Dutch built a fort on the east bank of the Delaware, in New Jersey. A number of families, Dutch and Swedes, also made their homes in the province, the former in the eastern part, the latter in the southwestern part. But the actual colonization of New Jersey did not commence before 1664. In that year, some Puritans

¹ Berkeley and Carteret were already the proprietors of Carolina.

² In 1674, Sir Edmund Andros was appointed governor of New York, and received its surrender by the Dutch after their fifteen months' repossession of it. In 1680 he seized the government of East Jersey, depriving the governor, Philip Carteret, brother of the proprietor, of his office. In 1681 he was recalled to England. New England having been consolidated, he was appointed its governor in 1686. In 1688, New York and New Jersey were added to his jurisdiction. (Brodhead's History of New York, and Palfrey's of New England, treat the story of the rescue of the Connecticut Charter and its concealment in the hollow of a tree as a "tradition." Palfrey says : "No writing of the period alludes to this remarkable occurrence."

from New England, who had dwelt for a time on Long Island, left the island and established themselves at Elizabethtown, now Elizabeth ; and there the first governor, Carteret, brother of the proprietor, took up his abode.¹

Maryland.

13. Among the notable persons in attendance at the court of James I. was Sir George Calvert, distinguished for his learning and benevolence. Becoming a Roman Catholic, he freely confessed the same to the king, and resigned a high office which he was holding at the time. **Lord Baltimore.** Two acts of James showed that Calvert continued to be held in esteem by that monarch notwithstanding the latter's conversion to the Catholic Church. The title of Lord Baltimore was conferred upon Calvert, and to him also was given a large part of the island of Newfoundland. "How zealous Calvert was in selecting suitable emigrants for his Newfoundland colony, how earnest to promote order and industry, how lavishly he expended his estate in advancing the interests of his settlement,—is related by those who have written of his life." But his efforts, owing to the severe cold of the climate—"both land and sea were frozen the greater part of the time"—were not rewarded with success ; and he asked for an uncultivated domain in a warmer climate. This request was granted, not, however, by King James, but by his successor,

¹ The opposition of Massachusetts to the "Navigation Act," and other obnoxious laws of Parliament, displeased the king, Charles II., and he declared her charter void. His death occurring not long after, his successor, James II., pursued the same arbitrary policy, and, in 1686, deprived Massachusetts of her charter government. In the same year Andros was appointed royal governor of New England. These proceedings on the part of King James rendered him so unpopular, that, when the news of the English Revolution and of his dethronement reached Boston, in 1689, it caused great rejoicing. Andros and his officers, whose tyranny had made them odious to the people, were seized and sent to England, when the New England colonies established their former modes of government. (See ¶ 39, p. 74.)

Charles I. The patent was duly prepared, but before it could receive the king's name and seal, Lord Baltimore died, and it was then issued to his oldest son, who by the English law of inheritance received the title as well as the estate of his father (1632).¹

14. "Lord Baltimore was unwilling to take upon himself the sole risk of colonizing his province. Others joined with him in the adventure ; and, all difficulties being overcome, his two brothers, of whom Leonard Calvert was appointed his lieutenant, embarked themselves for the voyage in the good ship Ark, and a pinnace called the Dove. It was not till the last week of February (1634) that they arrived at Point Comfort, in Virginia ; where, in obedience to the express letters of King Charles, they were welcomed with courtesy and humanity by Governor Harvey. The governor offered them what Virginia had obtained so slowly, and at so much cost, from England : cattle, and hogs, and poultry ; two or three hundred stocks already grafted with apples and pears, peaches and cherries. Clayborne, who had begun a trade in furs with the Indians under a license from the king, also appeared, predicting the hostility of the natives.

15. After a week's kind entertainment, the adventurers bent their course to the north, and entered the Potomac. Under an island, which can now hardly be recognized with certainty, the Ark came to an anchor ; while Calvert, with the Dove, ascended the stream. At about forty-seven leagues above the mouth of the river, he came upon the village of Pis-cat'-aqua, an Indian settlement nearly opposite Mount Vernon, where he found an Englishman, who had lived many

¹ "It was intended, it is said, that the country granted by this charter should have been called *Crescentia*; but when it was presented to the king (Charles I., of England) for his signature, in conformity to his majesty's wishes the name of the province was changed to that of Maryland, in honor of his queen, Henrietta Maria, a daughter of the great king Henry IV. of France."—*Bozman's Hist. of Maryland*.

years among the Indians as a trader and spoke their language well. With him for an interpreter, a parley was held with them. To the request for leave for the new comers to sit down in his country, the chieftain of the tribe would neither bid them go nor stay. 'They might use their own discretion.'

16. Taking with him the trader, Calvert went down the river, examining the creeks and estuaries nearer the Chesapeake. He entered the branch which is now called St. Mary's; and, about four leagues from its junction with the Potomac, anchored at an Indian town. The native inhabitants, having suffered from the superior power of the Susquehannas, who occupied the district between that river and Delaware bay, had already resolved to move into places of more security; and many of them had already begun to migrate. It was easy, by presents of cloth and axes, of hoes and knives, to gain their good-will, and to purchase their rights to the soil which they were preparing to abandon.

†17. On the twenty-fifth, the day of the Annunciation, in the island under which their great ship, the Ark, lay moored, a Jesuit priest, who was of the party, offered the sacrifice of the mass, which, in that region of the world, had never been celebrated before. This being ended, he and his assistants took upon their shoulders the great cross which they had hewn from a tree. Going in procession to the place that had been designated, the governor (Calvert) and other Catholics, and some Protestants as well participating in the ceremony, they erected the cross as a trophy to Christ the Saviour, while the litany of the holy cross was chanted humbly on their bended knees.¹

18. The Indian women taught the wives of the new comers to make bread of maize. The warriors of the tribe instructed the huntsmen how rich the forests of America were in game,

¹ The town purchased of the Indians was called by the settlers St. Mary's. It was anticipated that it would become a great city. None of the houses then built now remain, nor is there even a village there.

and joined them in the chase. As the planters had come into possession of ground already subdued, they at once planted cornfields and gardens. No sufferings were endured. No fears of want arose. The foundation of the colony of Maryland was peacefully and happily laid ; and in six months it advanced more than Virginia in as many years.

19. Toleration grew up in the province silently, as a custom of the land. Through the benignity of the administration, no person professing to believe in Jesus Christ was permitted to be molested on account of religion. Roman Catholics, who were oppressed by the laws of England, were sure to find a peaceful asylum on the north bank of the Potomac ; and there, too, Protestants were sheltered against Protestant intolerance. From the first, men of foreign birth were encouraged to plant, and enjoyed equal advantages with those of the English and Irish nations. Such were the beautiful auspices under which Maryland started into being."

20. There ought to have been peace in the colony, but there was not. From the first, Clayborne, who had established a trading post on the largest island in Chesapeake bay, refused

**Clayborne's
claim.**

to acknowledge the authority of Governor Calvert, and defended his claim by force of arms ; but he was defeated and obliged to flee. Afterward, however, he returned, and made himself master of the province, compelling the governor, in his turn, to flee into Virginia for safety. Calvert the next year appeared at the head of a military force and regained possession of his government.

21. While Cromwell and his Puritan associates were a power in England, the Protestant party obtained control of affairs in Maryland, and, by an act of the Assembly, Catholics were

Civil war.

declared not entitled to the protection of the laws of the colony. This measure caused a civil war between the Catholics and the Protestants. After Cromwell's death, the rights of Lord Baltimore were restored, and the colony enjoyed a long repose. Like Virginia, it was " a colony of planters. Its staple was tobacco. A state house was built at a cost of forty thousand pounds of tobacco."

22. During the revolution in England that placed William, Prince of Orange, and his wife Mary, on the throne, the peace of Maryland was again disturbed. An armed association gained possession of the government in the names of William and Mary, and Maryland, by the act of the king, was made a royal province. Lord Baltimore and his heirs were thus deprived of their rights till 1715, when the fourth Lord Baltimore, then a very young child, had his claim as the proprietor of the colony acknowledged by George I.¹

Further
history.

Pennsylvania and Delaware.

23. We have already spoken of William Penn (see p. 86).



WILLIAM PENN.

Although brought up in wealth and luxury, he soon learned "to despise all vanities and all avarice," and joined the new sect called Quakers, or Friends, of whom Cromwell said: "They are a people whom I cannot win with gifts, honors, offices, or places." By becoming a Quaker, Penn incurred the displeasure of his father; and he suffered much ill-treatment, even to imprisonment, from agents of the

government. The death of his father, who had distinguished

¹ The northern boundary of Maryland is known as Mason and Dixon's Line. The line separates Pennsylvania from the former slave states, Maryland and Virginia. "It was run, with the exception of about twenty-two miles, by Charles Mason and Jeremiah Dixon, two English mathematicians and surveyors, between November 15th, 1763, and December 26th, 1767. During the excited debate in Congress in 1820, on the question of excluding slavery from Missouri, the eccentric John Randolph, of Roanoke, Va., made great use of the phrase, *Mason and Dixon's Line*, which was caught up and re-echoed by every newspaper in the land, and thus gained a proverbial celebrity which it still retains."

himself in the history of England by the conquest of Jamaica, and had been admiral of the British navy, left him a claim against the government for sixteen thousand pounds.

24. Desiring to found a colony where civil and religious liberty might dwell together in peace, Penn applied for a grant of land west of the Delaware river. "To the prodigal Charles II., always embarrassed for money, the grant of the province seemed the easiest way" of cancelling the claim which Penn had inherited. A charter was accordingly obtained. It was Penn's design at first to call the territory New Wales, but afterward he suggested the word Sylvania, as suitable for a land covered with forests. The king, however, would not consent to this, but at last prefixed the word Penn, in honor, as he said, of his late friend, the admiral. This, instead of pleasing Penn, made him think that people would accuse him of being vain; and he offered twenty guineas to the king's secretary to have the name changed.

25. Previous to this—more than forty years before—Gustavus Adolphus, the brave king of Sweden, proposed to found in America "a free state, where the laborer should reap the fruit of his toil, where the rights of conscience should be inviolate, and which should be open to the whole Protestant world." A Hollander presented himself to the king, and laid before him a proposition for a trading company, to be established in Sweden, its operations to extend to Asia, Africa, and America. Full power was accordingly given to carry out this project, but before the necessary arrangements could be made, the German war and the king's death occurred, which caused the work to be laid aside, "and the whole project seemed about to die with the king. But just as it appeared to be at its end, it received new life.

26. Another Hollander, by the name of Peter Minuit,¹ made his appearance in Sweden. He had been in the service

¹ Other writers speak of Minuit as a native of Germany (see p. 83).

of Holland, in America, but had been recalled home and dismissed from service. He was not, however, discouraged by this, and went over to Sweden, where he renewed the representations in regard to the excellence of the new country, and the advantages that Sweden might derive from it. Queen Christina, then a child of only eleven years of age, who had succeeded her royal father in the government, was glad to have the project thus renewed.

27. As a good beginning, the first colony was sent off, and Minuit was placed over it, as being best acquainted in those regions. They set sail in a ship-of-war, followed by a smaller vessel, both laden with people, provisions, ammunition, and merchandise suitable for traffic and gifts to the Indians. The ships reached their places of destination; and the high expectations which the emigrants had formed of that new land were well met by the first views which they enjoyed of it. They made their first landing on the bay or entrance to the river Poutaxat, which they called the river of New Sweden. A purchase of land was immediately made from the Indians. Posts were driven into the ground as landmarks; and a deed was drawn up for the land thus purchased. This was written in Dutch, because no Swede was yet able to interpret the language of the heathen. The Indians subscribed their marks; and the writing was sent home to Sweden, to be preserved in the royal archives" (1638).

28. The country thus bought of the Indians was named New Sweden. The Swedes made a settlement near where Wilmington now is, and their colony began to prosper; but they were not permitted to enjoy their new homes in peace. The Dutch regarded the settlement as an intrusion upon their territory of New Netherlands, and molested the new comers in various ways. At length, after a period of more than twenty-five years, Governor Stuyvesant, with a force of six hundred men, proceeded against the Swedes, and compelled them to submit to the Dutch government (1655). (See p. 84.)

Dutch
claim.—Con-
quest by
Stuyvesant.

29. We have seen how the Dutch, in turn, were compelled to surrender New Netherlands, including Delaware. Penn, on the eve of his departure for America, extended his possessions, by obtaining from the Duke of York the duke's title to the "three lower counties, now forming the state of Delaware." Several ships with emigrants, chiefly Quakers, came over in 1681 and 1682. Penn himself landed in 1682. In conformity with his instructions, a site for a city had already been selected. This city, he said, "shall be called Philadelphia, a name which means brotherly love." He treated all the settlers with kindness and liberality, and took great pains to show the Indians that he was their friend.

**Delaware
united to
Pennsyl-
vania.**

30. Beneath a wide spreading elm tree Penn met the chiefs and warriors in council, and made his famous "treaty of peace and friendship." The scene is thus described by one who has written a life of the great Quaker: "It is near the close of November,—the lofty trees on the banks of the Delaware have shed their summer attire, the ground is strewn with leaves, and the council fire burns brightly, fanned by the autumnal breeze. Under the wide-branching elm the Indian tribes are assembled, but all unarmed, for no warlike weapon is allowed to disturb the scene. In front are the chiefs, with their counsellors and aged men on either hand. Behind them, in the form of a half moon, sit the young men, and some of the aged matrons; while beyond, and disposed in still widening circles, are seen the youth of both sexes. Among the assembled chiefs there is one who holds a conspicuous rank—the Great Sachem Tam-i-nend, one of nature's noblemen, revered for his wisdom, and beloved for his goodness.

**Penn's
great
treaty.**

31. But see! a barge is approaching, bearing at its mast-head the broad pennant of the governor (Penn). The oars are plied with measured strokes, and near the helm sits William Penn attended by his council. On the river's bank, waiting with others to join them, is the hospitable Swede, whose

dwelling is near the treaty ground. They land and advance towards the council fire. They pause. Taminend puts on his chaplet, surmounted by a small horn, the emblem of kingly power, and then, through an interpreter, he announces to William Penn that the nations are ready to hear him.

32. Being thus called upon, Penn begins his speech : 'The Great Spirit,' he says, 'who made me and you, who rules the heavens and the earth, and who knows the innermost thoughts of men, knows that I and my friends have a hearty desire to live in peace and friendship with you, and serve you to the utmost of our power. It is not our custom to use hostile weapons against our fellow creatures, for which reason we have come unarmed. Our object is not to do injury, and thus provoke the Great Spirit, but to do good.

33. We are met on the broad pathway of good faith and good will, so that no advantage is to be taken on either side, but all to be openness, brotherhood, and love. I shall not call you children or brothers only, for parents are apt to whip their children too severely, and brothers sometimes will differ. Neither will I compare the friendship between us to a chain, for the rain may rust it, or a tree may fall and break it. But I will consider you as the same flesh and blood with the Christians, and the same as if one man's body were to be divided into two parts.'

34. This speech being listened to by the Indians in perfect silence and with much gravity, they take some time to deliberate, and then the king orders one of his chiefs to speak to Penn. The Indian orator advances, and in the king's name salutes him. Then, taking him by the hand, he makes a speech, pledging kindness and good neighborhood, and that the Indians and English must live in love as long as the sun and moon shall endure."¹

¹ The tree under which the treaty was made stood in what was afterward known as Kensington, but which is now a part of the city of Philadelphia. When the British were quartered near it during the war of American Independence, their general so respected it, that, when his

35. "This treaty," it has been truly said, "was never sworn to and never broken." The Quakers never abused or cheated the natives, and

Subsequent consequently
history. there were no

Indian wars in the territories which they settled.

"Not a drop of Quaker blood was ever shed by an Indian." Penn made two

visits to England; and at

his death, which occurred

there, he left his American

possessions to his sons, by

whom the government was

managed, most of the time

through deputies, till the

Revolution. Finally their

claims were purchased by the

Commonwealth of Pennsylvania.



TREATY MONUMENT.

North and South Carolina.

36. In looking for the circumstances that gave to Carolina its name, we come to the first attempt to settle the region. Some French Protestants, known as Huguenots, with Ribault (*re-bo*) as their leader, entered the commodious haven of Port Royal and so named it. "When they landed, all was

solitude. The frightened Indians had fled, but

The they lured them back with knives, beads, and

Huguenots in looking-glasses, and enticed two of them on board

Carolina. their ships. Here, by feeding, clothing, and caressing them,

they tried to wean them from their fears; but the captive war-

soldiers were cutting down every tree for firewood, he placed a sentinel under it that not a branch of it might be touched. A few years ago (in 1810) it was blown down, when it was split into wood, and many cups, bowls, and other articles were made of it to be kept as memorials. A monument marks the spot where the tree stood.

riors moaned and lamented day and night, till Ribault, with the prudence and humanity which seem always to characterize him, gave over his purpose of carrying them to France, and set them ashore again (1562).

37. Preliminary exploration, not immediate settlement, had been the object of the voyage ; but all was still rose color in the eyes of the voyagers, and many of their number would fain linger in the New Canaan. Ribault was more than willing to humor them. He mustered his company on deck, and made them a stirring harangue. He appealed to their courage and their patriotism, told them how from a mean origin men rise by enterprise and daring to fame and fortune, and demanded who among them would stay behind and hold Port Royal for the king. The greater part came forward, of whom thirty were chosen.

38. A fort was forthwith begun, on a small stream, which they named Charlesfort—the Carolina—in honor of Charles IX. of France. But how were they to subsist ? Their thought was not of subsistence, but of gold. Of the thirty, the greater number were soldiers and sailors, with a few gentlemen, that is to say, men of the sword, born within the pale of nobility, who at home could neither labor nor trade without derogation from their rank.” Famine, contention, and homesickness were the consequence. “ But how to escape ? A continent was their solitary prison, and the pitiless Atlantic closed the egress. Not one of them knew how to build a ship ; but Ribault had left them a forge, with tools and iron ; and strong desire supplied the place of skill. Trees were hewn down and the work begun.

39. All, gentle and simple, labored with equal zeal. They calked the seams with the long moss which hung in profusion from the trees ; the pines supplied them with pitch ; the Indians made for them a kind of cordage ; and for sails they sewed together their shirts and bedding. At length a brigantine worthy of Robinson Crusoe floated on the waters. They laid in what provisions they might, gave all that remained to

the delighted Indians, embarked, descended the river, and put to sea." ¹

40. "To suppose that Sir Walter Raleigh's efforts accomplished nothing, because he did not actually plant an abiding colony in North Carolina, would be unjust to him, as well as

Albemarle and Clarendon colonies. sadly to violate the truth of history. His zeal and enterprise prompted others to pursue the path in which, with so much loss, he had been the bold pioneer." In 1663, Charles II. granted to Lord Clarendon and other English noblemen a vast territory south of Virginia. In honor of the Duke of Albemarle, one of the grantees, a settlement previously made on the Chowan river, by emigrants from Virginia, who would not obey the church rules prescribed in Virginia, was called the Albemarle County Colony. Another settlement, begun near Wilmington, by planters from Bar-ba'-does, was called the "Clarendon County Colony."

41. John Locke, the most eminent philosopher of his time, was engaged to draw up a charter and scheme of government

The Grand Model. for the new province. It was to be, the proprietors thought, a populous empire. A constitution was accordingly proposed, which became known as the "Grand Model;" but it was so poorly adapted to the wants of the settlers, that it never went into full effect, and was finally abandoned by the proprietors (1693.)

42. In 1670, a third colony was planted in Carolina. It was

Division of the province. on the western bank of the Ashley river; but, ten years after, was removed to a better location, at the junction of that stream with the Cooper river.

¹ The sufferings which they endured on the voyage, because of their want of food, were frightful; but a remnant of their number at length reached France. "One day, while at sea, they cast lots for the life of one of their number, who was sacrificed, and his flesh divided equally." — *Fairbanks' History of Florida.*

It will be noticed that Parkman says that thirty persons were left at Port Royal by Ribault. Other authors say twenty-six. Parkman, who is excellent authority, also spells the name of the Huguenot Captain thus, Ribault. Charles, in Latin, is *Carolus*—hence Carolina.

Thus the first settlement was made in South Carolina, and the foundation of Charleston was laid. About fifty years later Carolina became a royal province, the king, George II., having purchased the proprietors' rights. North Carolina and South Carolina then, as royal provinces, began their separate existence (1729).

Georgia.

43. "Each year, in Great Britain, at least four thousand unhappy men," says Bancroft, "were put into prison for the misfortune of poverty. The subject won the attention of James Oglethorpe, a member of the British parliament; and to him, in the annals of legislative philanthropy, the honor is due of having first resolved to lighten the lot of debtors. Touched with the sorrows which the walls of a prison could not hide from him, he searched into the gloomy horrors of jails"; and was the means of "restoring to light and freedom multitudes who, by long confinement for debt, were strangers and helpless in the country of their birth. He did more." For them, as well as for others who were poor, distressed, or persecuted, "he planned a new destiny in America, where former poverty or misfortune would be no reproach."

Motives
for the
settlement.

44. To him and to others, twenty-one in all, the king, George II., granted, for a term of twenty-one years, "in trust for the poor," as the charter stated, all the country between the Savannah and the Altamaha (*al-ta-ma-haw*). Oglethorpe embarked with more than a hundred emigrants; and, ascending a river, on a high bluff he laid the foundation of a town, which received the name of Savannah. The new province was called Georgia, in honor of the king (1733). "Next year the colony was joined by about a hundred German Protestants. The colonists received this addition to their numbers with joy. A place of residence was chosen for them which the devout and

Settlement
of
Savannah.

thankful strangers named Ebenezer. The river and the hills, they said, reminded them of home. They applied themselves with steady industry to the cultivation of indigo and silk, and they prospered."

45. There came to Georgia "the two brothers, John and Charles Wesley. John, the founder of the sect of Methodists, was even then, although a very young man, a preacher of unusual promise. He burned to spread the Gospel among the settlers and their Indian neighbors. He **Wesley and Whitefield.** spent two years in Georgia, but these were unsuccessful years. Then he returned to England to begin his great career, with the feeling that his residence in Georgia had been of much value to him, but of very little to the people whom he sought to benefit. Just as he reached England, his fellow-laborer, George Whitefield (*hwit'-feeld*), sailed for Georgia. There were now (1737) little settlements spreading inland, and Whitefield visited these, bearing to them the word of life. He founded and maintained an orphan home in Savannah, visited all the provinces from Florida to the northern frontier, and made his grave in New England." His eloquence was wonderful; his voice powerful, rich, and sweet. Said Dr. Franklin: "When Whitefield was preaching in the open air, more than thirty thousand persons might hear him distinctly."

46. Emigrants continued to arrive, including Swiss and Scotch; but while the colony thus increased in numbers, the bright anticipations of plenty and comfort which had been indulged in, were not, for a long time, realized.

Further history. This was owing in large part to the poverty and idle habits of the English settlers. Besides, the regulations of the trustees were not suited to the condition and needs of the people. Trouble, too, came from their neighbors on the South. The Spaniards, in Florida, looking upon the Savannah settlement as an encroachment upon their territory, hostilities ensued between the rival colonies; but Oglethorpe, who was a good general and a brave soldier, made a successful

defense. The trustees governed till 1752, when wearied with their charge, they gave up their charter, and Georgia became a royal province. Eleven years later all the lands between the Altamaha and St. Mary's were annexed to Georgia by a royal proclamation. The western limit was the Pacific ocean.

European Wars that affected the Colonies.

1. During the colonial period, there were three wars in which England was engaged on the one side and France on the other, that disturbed the peace of the colonists and enlisted their aid in behalf of the "mother country," as England was affectionately called. In the first of these, known as *King William's War*, an expedition, fitted out by Massachusetts and commanded by Sir William Phipps, captured Port Royal, in Nova Scotia, and returned to Boston with a large amount of plunder; but at the close of the war the place was given back to the French (1689-1697). In the second contest, known as *Queen Anne's War*, Port Royal was again captured, when its name was changed to Annapolis, in honor of the queen, and Acadia was annexed to the British realm (1702-1713).

2. In the last contest, known as *King George's War*, the fortress of Louisburg, the "Gibraltar of America," was captured after a long siege, by New England troops and an English fleet; but the treaty of peace at the close of the war restored Louisburg to the French (1744-1748). In all these struggles, the French were aided by their Indian allies in Canada. The English had at times the assistance of the warlike Iroquois (*e'-ro-quah*) or Five Nations. New York, New Hampshire, and Massachusetts, were the greater sufferers, they being nearer to Canada. Bodies of French and Indians made incursions from Canada, fell upon the defenseless villages, and murdered or carried into captivity the helpless inhabitants. Of the Iroquois Parkman says :

3. "Foremost in war, foremost in eloquence, foremost in their savage arts of policy, stood the fierce people called by the French the Iroquois. They occupied Central New York, but extended their conquests and their depredations from Quebec to the Carolinas, and from the western prairies to the forests of Maine. They consisted of five tribes or nations—the Mohawks, the Oneidas, the Onondagas, the Cayugas, and the Senecas (to which a sixth, the Tuscaroras, was added in 1715).

4. Both reason and tradition point to the conclusion that the Iroquois formed, originally one undivided people. Sundered, like countless other tribes, by dissensions, caprice, or the necessities of the hunter-life, they separated into five distinct nations. At length, says tradition, a celestial being, incarnate on earth, counseled them to compose their strife and unite in a league of defense and aggression. Another personage—wholly mortal, yet wonderfully endowed—a renowned warrior and a mighty magician, stands, with his hair of writhing snakes, grotesquely conspicuous through the dim light of tradition, at this birth of Iroquois nationality. This was At-o-tar-ho, a chief of the Onondagas; and from this honored source has sprung a long line of chieftains, heirs not to the blood alone, but to the name of their great predecessor."

The French and Indian War.

5. The three wars just alluded to had their origin in European affairs. In 1753, however, a difficulty sprung up between the French and English colonists in America, respecting the boundaries between their respective territories. The French entertained the project of possessing the whole of the vast region of the west, the valley of the Mississippi, to which La Salle had given the name of Louisiana. "Not a fountain bubbled on the west of the Alleghanies but was claimed as being within the French

empire. Every brook that flowed to the Ohio was French water." To secure this region to the French, forts had been built at suitable places. Along the line of the St. Lawrence, at the great lakes, and by the Mississippi, more than sixty military posts were established, beside missionary agencies. The total population of this valley, excluding Indians, may have been at the time we speak of, seven or eight thousand persons, of whom half at least were negroes.

6. The English claim to the territory was based on the discoveries of their navigators, the Cabots. This, if valid, gave them a prior right to the country. The French, however, deemed this an absurd claim; since the Cabots knew nothing of those vast inland regions which French missionaries and explorers had, with incredible difficulty, perseverance, and hardships, discovered and settled. For years these rival claims were urged; but the crisis did not arrive till 1753.

The
English
claim.

7. At this time there was in existence a company, mostly Virginians, that had obtained a grant of land on and near the Ohio river, for the purpose of trading with the Indians and of settling the country. This was called the Ohio Company. The French, in large force, began to occupy the Ohio valley, and, for the protection of their movements, to establish posts at Erie and other places. They also seized three British traders (1753).

The
Ohio Company.

8. Complaint was made to Robert Dinwiddie, lieutenant-governor of Virginia and a member of the Ohio Company, of these acts; and it was resolved to send "a person of distinction to the commander of the French forces, to know his reasons for invading the British dominions." The envoy chosen was George Washington, then about twenty-two years of age, but already noted for his prudence and energy. He was a surveyor by profession, and, in the exercise of his calling, had become familiar with the wilderness. In the militia service, he had reached the rank of major. The task imposed upon Washington was a very diffi-

Washing-
ton's mission.

cult one. When he set out it was in the middle of winter ; and he had to travel several hundred miles through an almost pathless wilderness, infested by bands of lurking savages, cruel and treacherous. Still, the task was accomplished. "I am here," said the French commander at Erie, "by the orders of my general," the Marquis Du Quesne (*kane*), the governor of Canada ; and to Du Quesne the English were referred for satisfaction.

9. On his return, Washington found the Alleghany full of drifting ice. "He encamped on its border, and at day-break was up to devise some means of reaching the opposite bank. No other mode presented itself than by a

His return. raft, and to construct this, they (he and one companion named Gist) had but one poor hatchet. With this they set resolutely at work, and labored all day, but the sun went down before their raft was finished. They launched it, however, and getting on board, endeavored to propel it across with poles. Before they were half way over, the raft became jammed between cakes of ice, and they were in imminent peril.

10. Washington planted his pole on the bottom of the stream, and leaned against it with all his might to stay the raft until the ice should pass by. The rapid current forced the ice against the pole with such violence that he was jerked into the water, where it was at least ten feet deep. He only saved himself from being swept away and drowned, by catching hold of one of the raft logs. It was now impossible, with all their exertions, to get to either shore. Abandoning the raft, therefore, they got upon an island, near which they were drifting. Here they passed the night, exposed to intense cold, by which the hands and feet of Mr. Gist were frozen. In the morning they found the drift ice wedged so closely together, that they succeeded in getting to the opposite side of the river ; and before night they were in comfortable quarters." After an absence of eleven weeks, Washington delivered the French commander's reply to Dinwiddie.

✓
11. Active operations were at once resolved upon. A fort, at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, was begun ; and, Washington at the head of a small body of men, was sent to finish and protect it. Before, how-^{Washington's} ever, he could reach the place the French ap-^{expedition.} peared, took possession of the works, completed them, and named the fort Duquesne. Hearing of this event and that a force was marching to intercept him, Washington fell back to the "Great Meadows." Here he attacked and defeated the invaders (May, 1754) ; but another force of fifteen hundred French and Indians coming against him, he, in turn, was defeated and compelled to return to Virginia (July 4, 1754).

12. Several expeditions against the French were planned for the next year. "At the peace of 1748, Acadia had been ceded to England ; but the French still claimed a large portion of it, and built forts for its defense. In 1755 these forts were taken and the whole of Acadia was conquered by three thousand men from Mas-^{Expulsion of the Acadians.} sachusetts, under the command of General Winslow. The inhabitants, a peaceful race taking no delight in warfare, were accused of supplying the French with provisions, and of doing other things that violated their neutrality. These accusations were probably true, for the Acadians were descended from the French, and had the same friendly feelings towards them that the people of Massachusetts had for the English ; but their punishment was severe.

13. The English determined to tear these poor people, more than seven thousand persons in all, from their native homes, and scatter them abroad. A considerable part of them were made prisoners, and transported to the English colonies. All their dwellings and churches were burned, their cattle were killed, and the whole country was laid waste, so that none of them might find shelter or food in their old homes, after the departure of the English. One thousand of the Acadians were sent to Massachusetts.

14. A sad day it was for them when the armed soldiers

drove them from their homes, at the point of the bayonet, down to the sea shore. Very sad were they, likewise, while tossing upon the ocean in the crowded transport ships. But it must have been sadder still when they were landed on the Long Wharf, in Boston, and left to themselves on a foreign strand. Then, probably, they huddled together and looked into one another's faces for the comfort which was not there. Hitherto they had been confined on board of separate vessels, so that they could not tell whether their relatives and friends were prisoners along with them.

15. Now a desolate wife might be heard calling for her husband. He, alas, had gone, she knew not whither ; or, perhaps, had fled into the woods of Acadia, and had now returned to weep over the ashes of their dwelling. O, how many broken bonds of affection were here ! Country lost—friends lost—their rural wealth of cottage, field, and herds all lost together ! Every tie between these poor exiles and the world seemed to be cut off at once. They must have regretted that they had not died before their exile ; for even the English would not have been so pitiless as to deny them graves in their native soil. The dead were happy ; for they were not exiles !”

16. During the same year an expedition went against Fort Duquesne. It was conducted by General Braddock, an officer of

skill and experience, **Braddock's defeat.** who had been sent from England with several regiments of soldiers, to take command of all the forces in the colonies. Confident of success, he

marched through the wilderness, heedless of danger from the savages ; and treated with contempt the suggestion of Washington, who served as his aid, that he should scour the



GENERAL BRADDOCK.

woods so as to protect his army from a surprise by the Indians.

17. Thus he rashly pushed on till about ten miles from the fort, when the soldiers' ears were suddenly assailed by the savage war-whoop, and a deadly fire was poured into their ranks from an unseen enemy. Panic and disorder ensued. The soldiers were shot down like deer, and the general was mortally wounded. Washington, throughout this disastrous day, distinguished himself by his courage and presence of mind. His escape from injury was wonderful, for he had two horses shot under him, and four bullets passed through his coat (July 9, 1755).¹

18. So little had been accomplished up to this time against the French, that the English people demanded a change in the administration of their government, and the celebrated William Pitt was placed at the head of affairs. Preparations were immediately made for carrying on the war with vigor, and fifty thousand men were enlisted for the service. The French, at this time, held forts by which their trade and possessions were protected in every direction.

The
war to be
carried on
with vigor.

19. Fort Duquesne guarded the territory on the west; Crown Point and Ticonderoga, on Lake Champlain, closed the route to Canada; Niagara protected the fur trade of the great lakes and the region beyond; Louisburg menaced New England and guarded the fisheries; and Quebec, with its strong fortifications, was the key to the possessions of Canada. A vigorous effort was now to be made to capture all these strong posts, and thus to destroy the French power in America.

¹ General Johnson started against Crown Point, but did not get further than the head of Lake George. Dieskau (*de-es-ko'*), the French commander, marching against him, met and defeated a detachment under Williams, but was repulsed by Johnson; who, after erecting Fort William Henry, retired to Albany. In 1757, Montcalm took Fort William Henry after a siege of six days. His Indian allies, incited by the hope of plunder, massacred the garrison while they were on their retreat to Fort Edward.

20. The expedition against Crown Point and Ticonderoga was intrusted to General Abercromby. With an army of sixteen thousand men, "the largest body of European origin that had ever been assembled in America," Abercromby left the head of Lake George in the early part of July (1758). The vast flotilla, consisting of nine hundred small boats and one hundred and thirty-five whale-boats, with artillery on rafts, proceeded slowly down the lake. Banners fluttered in the breeze, arms glittered in the sunshine, and martial music echoed along the wood-clad mountains. Landing at the northern end of the lake, the army commenced a march through the dense forests towards Ticonderoga, which was then commanded by Montcalm. The advance, under Lord Howe, was suddenly met by the French, and repulsed, the young and lamented leader being killed.

21. "With Lord Howe expired the master-spirit of the enterprise." The troops fell back to the landing place; but resuming their march, advanced against the fort and made an assault. The attempt failed, with the loss of nearly two thousand men; "Abercromby hurried the army back to the boats, and did not rest till he had placed the lake between himself and Montcalm." The expeditions against Louisburg and Duquesne were successful. Louisburg was taken after a desperate resistance. Duquesne made no defense. It was abandoned on the approach of the English, and its name changed to Fort Pitt.

22. The great object of the campaign of 1759 was the reduction of Canada. Niagara was taken, and the French were driven from the posts on Lake Champlain. With eight thousand men, General Wolfe ascended the St. Lawrence river to proceed against Quebec. He landed his army upon an island below the city; and made a daring assault upon the French intrenchments; but it resulted in defeat and serious loss. "Wolfe was greatly dispirited by this repulse. The emotions of his mind, co-operating with great fatigue of body, brought on a fever, which nearly proved

fatal ; and it was almost a month before he was able to resume his command in person.

23. While stretched upon his bed in his tent, he arranged a plan for scaling the almost inaccessible Heights of Abraham, and gaining possession of that elevated plateau in the rear of Quebec. The camp was now broken up, and all the troops and artillery, except a garrison left on the island, were taken by a part of the fleet far up the river, while the remainder lingered and made feigned preparations for a second attack upon Montcalm's intrenchments. It was the 12th



GENERAL WOLFE.

of September, and the brief Canadian summer was over. After midnight the army left the vessels ; and in flat-boats, without oars or sails, they glided down noiselessly with the tide, followed by the ships soon afterward.

24. At his evening mess on the ship, Wolfe composed and sang impromptu that little song of the camp, commencing—

‘ Why, soldiers, why,
Should we be melancholy, boys ?
Why, soldiers, why—
Whose business ’tis to die.’

And as he sat among his officers, and floated softly down the river at the past-midnight hour, a shadow seemed to come upon his heart, and he repeated, in low, musing tones, that touching stanza of Gray’s ‘Elegy in a Country Church-yard’—

‘ The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power,
And all that beauty, all that wealth e’er gave,
Await alike the inevitable hour :
The paths of glory lead but to the grave !’

At the close he whispered : ‘ Now, gentlemen, I would prefer

being the author of that poem to the glory of beating the French to-morrow.'

X25. The flotilla reached a cove which Wolfe had marked for a landing place, and which still bears his name, before daybreak. At the head of the main division, Wolfe pushed eagerly up a narrow and rough ravine, while the light infantry and Highlanders climbed the steep acclivity by the aid of the maple, spruce, and ash saplings, and shrubs, which covered its rugged face. The sergeant's guard on its brow was soon dispersed, and at dawn, on the 13th, almost five thousand British troops were drawn up in battle array on the Plains of Abraham, three hundred feet above the St. Lawrence.

26. Montcalm could hardly believe the messenger who brought him intelligence of this marshalling of the English upon the weak side of the city. 'It can be but a small party come to burn a few houses, and return,' he said; but he was soon undeceived. Then he saw the imminent danger to which the town and garrison were exposed, and he immediately abandoned his intrenchments, and led a large portion of his army to attack the invaders. Wolfe placed himself on the right: Montcalm was on the left. So the two commanders stood face to face. Wolfe ordered his men to load with two bullets each, and to reserve their fire until the French should be within forty yards.

27. These orders were strictly obeyed, and the double-shotted guns did terrible execution. After delivering several rounds in rapid succession, which threw the French into confusion, the English charged upon them furiously with their bayonets. While urging on his battalions in this charge, Wolfe was slightly wounded in the wrist. He stanchd the blood with a handkerchief, and, while cheering on his men, received a second wound. A few minutes afterward, another bullet struck him on the breast, and brought him to the ground mortally wounded. At that moment, regardless of self, he thought only of victory for his troops.

'Support me,' he said to an officer near him; 'let not my brave soldiers see me drop. The day is ours—keep it!' He was taken to the rear while his troops continued to charge.

28. The officer on whose shoulder he was leaning, exclaimed, 'They run! they run! The waning light returned to the dim eyes of the hero, and he asked, 'Who run?'—'The enemy, sir; they give way everywhere.'—'What,' feebly exclaimed Wolfe, 'do they run already? Now God be praised, I die happy!' These were his last words, and, in the midst of sorrowing companions, just at the moment of victory, he expired. Montcalm, who was fighting gallantly at the head of the French, also received a mortal wound. 'Death is certain,' said his surgeon. 'I am glad of it,' replied Montcalm: 'how long shall I live?' 'Ten or twelve hours, perhaps less.' 'So much the better: I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec.' Five days afterward the city capitulated."

29. This victory really decided the war, though the French, the next year, made an attempt to recover Quebec. Montreal was also surrendered, and thus the whole of Canada became the property of the English (1760). In 1763 a treaty of peace was signed at Paris, by the terms of which, France gave up to Great Britain all her American possessions east of the Mississippi and north of the I'-ber-ville river, in Louisiana.¹ This gave great dissatisfaction to the Indians of the northwest, for they disliked the English. Soon a combination, known as the "Pontiac Conspiracy," was formed by the various tribes, and all the posts were captured, except Niagara, Fort Pitt, and Detroit. Hundreds of families were butchered or driven from their homes. Detroit was besieged six months, but the Indians were finally compelled to sue for peace (1763). Pontiac, their great leader, wandered to the Mississippi, and there, in

Closing
events of
the war.

¹ The Iberville is an outlet of the Mississippi, fourteen miles south of Baton Rouge, connecting the Mississippi on the east with Lake Maurepas.

a forest, an Indian who had been bribed with a barrel of liquor, stole close upon his track and buried a tomahawk in his brain (1769).

Condition of the Colonies.

1. At the close of the French and Indian War the thirteen colonies that afterward became the United States, contained a population of more than two millions of persons, one fourth of whom at least were negro slaves. This estimate does not include the Indians. The whites were descendants, in large part, of persons who had come from the old world to secure for themselves freedom to worship God as they desired. In general, they were intelligent and industrious, and of good moral and religious culture.¹ The number of slaves imported into the colonies direct from Africa up to this time, was probably not far from three hundred thousand. Slavery existed in all the colonies, though, Georgia at first, had laws against the holding of slaves, and the Quakers were always opposed to slavery. "Slavery is opposed to the gospel," said Oglethorpe, and yet, within seven years after his settlement was begun, slave-ships were discharging their cargoes at Savannah.

2. The number of slaves in New England was small, but Governor Stuyvesant so encouraged their importation into his province, that, at one time, there were more slaves in New York, in proportion to the white population, than in Virginia. Afterward the slaves in Virginia were the majority of her inhabitants. Philadelphia, with a population not much exceeding thirty thousand, was the first city in size and wealth. New York came next, though that city never was, even under English rule and up to the close of colonial times,

¹ The Huguenots came in great numbers, and settled in New York, Massachusetts, Virginia, and South Carolina. Large settlements were also made by the Scotch-Irish Presbyterians in New Hampshire, Western Pennsylvania, and North Carolina.

“much more than a prosperous and drowsy Dutch village.” Boston, Charleston, and Baltimore followed.

3. There were three forms of government in force among the colonies. These were the provincial, or royal; the proprietary; and the charter. New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, Virginia, the Carolinas, and Georgia were under the first form. Each had a governor ^{Government.} who had received his appointment from the king, and who ruled according to instructions from his royal master. Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Maryland were of the second form. They were governed by owners or proprietors. Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut were under charter governments. Their charters, which had been conferred by the crown, gave to the people certain civil rights, which, it was believed, could not be taken from them.

4. When it is recollected that England, by her “Navigation Acts” and other oppressive laws would not allow other nations to trade with her colonies, and would not permit the colonists to manufacture any article, not even a nail or a pin, a wheel or a plow, we can understand how the cultivation of the soil came to be ^{Industry, mechanical and agricultural.} the chief pursuit of the people. The northern colonies were famous for wheat and corn. “The cultivation of tobacco in Virginia and Maryland was an epoch in the history of man: all other products of the soil there were neglected for it.” Ships from England every year ascended the Potomac or the James, to gather at the wharves of the large planters the great crops of tobacco. Every year, for a long time, the proceeds from the sale of tobacco exported, reached nearly \$4,000,000. This amount was at least one third of the total sum received from the sale of all the productions exported from the colonies. And what did we get in return? Hinges, pins, locks, plows, and a great variety of other things which the English laws would not permit us to make.

5. At a very early period seed-rice was brought into the Carolinas from the island of Madagascar, and soon became an

article of general cultivation and a staple export. The rice of Carolina was esteemed the best in the world. Indigo was also raised in large quantities. The production of silk was quite active in Georgia. Cotton had been grown for many years in the south, but the quantity produced was not yet equal to the demand for home use. The largest branch of manufacturing industry in which the New England colonists were employed, was the making of lumber. The building of ships, for the coasting and river trade and



LINEN SPINNING-WHEEL.

for sale, was extensively carried on in Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Maine, and New York. More than a hundred ships were sold every year to English merchants.

6. All the labor throughout the south, during the latter part of the colonial period, whether in the shops or the fields, was done by slaves. "Tobacco, which was the source of the wealth of Virginia, was altogether produced by slaves. The progress of the physical sciences in Europe, and many admirable inventions of industrial art, created in the course of time a demand for another product, cotton, which experience proved could be more advantageously produced in the Southern States than anywhere else, but produced in them only by slaves. Thence, very soon, the whole economy of the south centered on slavery. At the north, it was different. There the slaves being few, the cobbler used his brain as well as his lapstone; the blacksmith was an artisan, a leader in the church choir, and a chief speaker in town meetings. The carpenter was a craftsman; with poor tools,



WOOLEN SPINNING-WHEEL.

unaided by machinery, he was compelled to hew out his dwelling-place, and he built it firmly and well. The house and the man were built up together, and each was strong and true. The housewife spun and wove the very cloth in which the family was clad.”¹ (See *Invention of cotton-gin*, p. 187.)

7. Several of the coast towns of New England had been engaged for many years in the whale fishery. The business was for a long period a source of great profit, and it proved to be a school for the training of men whereby they became accomplished seamen. The cod and **Fisheries.** other fisheries employed very many persons. “About 1670, the profits of the mackerel, bass, and herring fisheries at Cape Cod, were granted to found a free public school, which was opened in 1671.”

8. “Our ancestors were plainly resolved that the new world should be a land of printers.” Only eighteen years

after the landing of the Pilgrims a printing press was

set up at Cambridge; and four **Printing.**

years after the arrival of Penn, one was at work in Philadelphia. In 1704, the publication of a newspaper was commenced in Boston.

It was then the only newspaper printed in all America, and for fifteen years it had no competitors. A little more than twenty years after its first publication William Bradford published

a paper in New York. Benjamin Franklin, as an apprentice, aided his brother to print one in Boston. The newspapers



FRANKLIN'S BIRTHPLACE, BOSTON.

¹ Edward Atkinson, in “The First Century of the Republic.”

soon increased in number, and, in the course of time, became as necessary to the people as their daily food. The first magazine was published by Franklin at Philadelphia in 1741. To Franklin, when in England twenty years later, Hume, the historian, wrote : " America has sent us many good things,—gold, silver, sugar, tobacco, indigo, and so forth, but you are the first philosopher, and indeed the first great man of letters, for whom we are beholden to her."

9. The early settlers of New England, New York, Pennsylvania, and other colonies saw that the good reputation and happiness of the whole country could only be promoted and maintained by the proper education of their children, and their children's children for all time. **Education and schools.** The school-house, like the church, was soon found in every New England town. Common schools were established by law. Hawthorne gives a description of a school, one famous in Boston for many years, in which he presents us with the following picture : " It is a large, dingy room, with a sanded floor, and is lighted by windows that turn on hinges, and have little diamond-shaped panes of glass. The scholars sit on long benches, with desks before them. At one end of the room is a great fireplace, so very spacious that there is room enough for three or four boys to stand in each of the chimney corners. This was the good old fashion of fireplaces when there was wood enough in the forests to keep people warm without their digging into the bowels of the earth for coal."

10. New York had a school at an early day when the Dutch were in possession of the country, over which a school-master from Holland presided ; and a school was established in Pennsylvania the very next year after the arrival of Penn. The oldest college is at Cambridge. In 1636, " the Massachusetts court agreed to give £400 towards a school or college, but the project lay in abeyance until 1638, when, by the will of the Rev. John Harvard, about £700 were secured, and the first class was formed." In 1700 ten clergymen came together, and each one laying some books on a table, said : " I

give these books for the founding of a college in this colony. This was afterward called Yale College, in honor of Elihu Yale, of England, who gave it a large sum of money. In Virginia, the College of William and Mary had been founded with great liberality by the two sovereigns whose names it bore; the College of New Jersey (at Princeton) flourished; and King's College, now Columbia College, established by royal authority in New York, and the university of Pennsylvania, began the useful careers in which they still continue.

11. Domestic life, except among the wealthy planters, was marked by great simplicity. The houses were plainly furnished. In a few there were relics from the old world, such as richly-carved mahogany side-boards, mirrors, and tall Dutch or English clocks. Every house except **Manners** in the far south, had its great fireplace, which was **and customs.** inclosed in wide wooden mantels. This was sufficiently spacious to receive logs of three or four feet in diameter. It had an oven in the back, and "a flue large enough to permit the ascent of a good-sized balloon." Tallow candles, in brass or iron candlesticks, were in common use, but, for grand occasions, sperm or wax candles were used. High, four-post bedsteads, and window curtains graced the best chamber, which was kept closed most of the time and reserved "for company."

12. The New England Church, or, as it was always called, the meeting-house, was a great square building standing in the middle of the "common." It had nothing of what nowadays we call lecture rooms or vestries. Neither had it any conveniences for holding evening meetings. When these were to be held, and they could only be held in the later colonial times when there was no longer any fear of Indian attack, the minister would give notice in this way: "There will be preaching on Wednesday night in the school-house at early candle light. The brethren are requested to bring their own candles with them." The old-fashioned two-tined fork was the candlestick for the occasion. It was stuck through

the lower end of the candle and then into a block of wood nailed against the wall.

13. There were no carpets, except such as were made of rags and had been woven by the family. The many floors were sprinkled with sand. This was particularly the custom among the Dutch, who, also, ornamented their front doors—usually in two parts, upper and lower—with large brass knockers, which had to be burnished every day. Pewter plates were in ordinary use, and also plain crockery instead of china. Ladies, belonging to the wealthy classes, had each her silk gown, but they did not wear them every day, or change them with every puff of fashion. Home-made woolen garments were the common wear of men; calico and blue check of women. In New Hampshire “it was ordered that the sleeves of the women should reach down to their wrists, and their gowns be closed round their necks. Men were obliged to cut short their hair, that they might not resemble women.”

14. In New York many of the customs were such as had been introduced by its Dutch founders. Some of them still remain; such as the “May-day moving,” the visit of Santa Claus “the night before Christmas,” the coloring of “Easter eggs,” and the general visiting on New Year’s day. In the houses of the wealthy planters of the south the “people sat on carved chairs at quaint tables, amid piles of ancestral silver ware, and drank punch out of costly bowls from Japan.” In that early period, long before railroads were even thought of, the facilities for traveling were small indeed. Stage coaches were few, and horseback riding was common. In the towns of Maryland and Virginia the ladies made visits in sedan-chairs borne by lackeys in livery. A coach ran in two days from New York to Philadelphia. From Boston to New York was a week’s journey.

15. The Indians had a kind of money called wampum, which was made of clam shells. Gold and silver were of no value to them. For the furs and skins which they brought to the whites, they would only receive their pay in strings of

wampum, or in powder, shot, muskets, or rum. Strange to say, the whites adopted this kind of money, not only in transactions between themselves and the Indians, but it was taken in payment of debts due by one settler to another. But wampum, in the course of time, became so abundant that custom and law abolished it. The gold and silver money of England, Spain and Portugal, then came into general use ; “ but these coins being scarce, the people were often forced to barter their commodities instead of selling them. If a man wanted to buy a coat, he perhaps exchanged a bear skin for it. If he wished for a barrel of molasses, he might purchase it with a pile of pine boards. Musket balls were used instead of farthings. There was not money enough in any part of the country to pay the salaries of the ministers, so that they sometimes had to take quintals of fish, bushels of corn, or cords of wood, instead of silver or gold.”

16. As the people grew more numerous, and their trade one with another increased, the want of current money was still more sensibly felt. To supply the demand in Massachusetts, a mint was established in Boston (1652), which coined “ pine-tree shillings” for more than thirty years. “ The

battered silver cans and tankards, silver buckles and broken spoons, silver buttons of worn-out coats, and silver hilts of swords that had figured at court, — all such curious old arti-



PINE-TREE SHILLING.

cles were doubtless thrown into the melting-pot together. But by far the greater part of the silver consisted of bullion from the mines of South America, which the English buccaneers had taken from the Spaniards. Each coin had the date (1652) on the one side and the figure of a pine tree on the other. Hence they were called pine-tree shillings.”

SUMMARY BY COLONIES.

1492-1768.

- | | | |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1492. | America having been discovered and extensively explored, actual possession was taken of the new regions by the planting of settlements in them. The first attempts at settlement on the part of the French and English were not successful. On the part of the Spaniards, St. Augustine, Florida, was settled in 1565, and is therefore the oldest settlement in the United States. | Sovereigns
of England. |
| 1607. | <p><i>Virginia.</i>—The next permanent settlement (this was made by the English) was at Jamestown. The growth of Virginia was at first slow, owing to the unfitness of the settlers for pioneer life. Domestic strife, the "Starving Time," hostility of the Indians, and Bacon's Rebellion were causes against the progress of the colony; the marriage of Pocahontas, importation of wives, and the cultivation of tobacco contributed to its prosperity. African slavery began in 1619. "English king and English church were alike faithfully honored here. The gentry of Virginia dwelt on their great plantations after a fashion almost patriarchal."</p> | <p>Elizabeth.
1558-1603.</p> <p>James I.
1603-1625.</p> |
| 1609. | <p><i>New York and New Jersey.</i>—The discovery of the Hudson river for the Dutch and their explorations gave them a title to the country, which they took advantage of by making settlements at various places. Liberal inducements were offered to settlers, who, coming mostly from England, preferred English rule; and the Dutch governor was compelled to submit (1664). New Netherlands, while in the possession of the Dutch, made good progress in population and wealth. A large fur trade was carried on with the Indians. The early history of New Jersey is connected with that of New York, both colonies having been under the same ownership or governor much of the time. In both were large numbers of slaves. The Jerseys were never disturbed by Indian wars. The government of both colonies was of the class called provincial or royal.</p> | <p>James I.</p> |
| 1620. | <p><i>New England.</i>—Religious motives influenced the first settlers of all the New England colonies. The Pilgrims left England to escape persecution, and, after a brief stay in Holland, established themselves at Plymouth. The other New Eng-</p> | |

land colonies, except Rhode Island, were settled by Puritans. Church and civil matters were united, and church members only, in two of the colonies, were permitted to vote and hold office. The first settlers of Rhode Island, under the leadership of Roger Williams, admitted all persons of whatever religion to participate in the civil affairs of the colony. The habits of the early New Englanders were simple but strict. "The church and the school-house were built side by side." Fishing, fur-trading, and agriculture were the pursuits. The Pequod War, Persecution of the Quakers, King Philip's War, and the Witchcraft Delusion were causes that operated against the progress of the colonies; but the principles, energy, and character of the people, with their instruments of church, school, and college, overcame all adverse circumstances. At the close of this period, New Hampshire was under provincial or royal government; the other colonies of New England were under the charter rule.

Charles I.
1625-1649.

1634. *Maryland.*—The first settlement was made at St. Mary's. The settlers, like those of New England, were influenced by religious motives; but while they welcomed comers from every Christian denomination, it was understood that the colony was established for the particular benefit of Catholics, who could here enjoy that freedom which the Puritans had in New England. The settlers were intelligent and enterprising. Their principal occupation was the cultivation of tobacco. Clayborne's Rebellion and the Civil Wars were impediments in the progress of the colony. The form of government was proprietary.

Charles I.

1650. *North and South Carolina.*—The first settlement in North Carolina was made on the Chowan river (1650), that of South Carolina on the Ashley (1670). The settlers were from Virginia, England, or from English possessions: they were influenced by the hope of bettering their worldly condition. The cultivation of rice was carried on extensively; and indigo, tar, and turpentine were exported. The "Grand Model," from which great expectations had been formed, was a hindrance to the growth of North and South Carolina. The colony was divided in 1729. The form of government of both colonies was provincial or royal.

Charles II.
1660-1685.

Pennsylvania and Delaware.—Both Delaware and Pennsylvania were settled by Swedes, the former more than forty years before Penn received his charter (1638). The subjugation of the Swedes by the Dutch placed the settlers under the rule of New Netherlands (1655), but the sur-

Charles I.

- render of New Netherlands to the English gave that power undisturbed possession of the whole region (1664). The charter obtained by Penn, with his grant of Delaware from the Duke of York, put both Pennsylvania and Delaware under proprietary rule. Like the New England colonies and Maryland, a leading motive for the settlement of Pennsylvania was religious. Penn welcomed all good men to his colony, but he extended a special invitation to Quakers, who were subjected to persecution in England. As the Indians were dealt with justly and kindly, no Indian war ever disturbed the colony of Pennsylvania or Delaware. Both colonies, especially the former, made rapid growth in population.
- 1682.** *Charles II.*
- 1733.** *Georgia.*—The first settlement was at Savannah. The colony was established for the poor—that is, for those persons in England who could not pay their debts, and who, in consequence, were condemned by law to spend their lives in prison. Other distressed persons found a shelter in Georgia, but for a long time the colony did not prosper. How could it with such settlers? The hostility of the Spanish neighbors of Florida was another cause that operated against its prosperity, until, finally, the colony was returned to the crown, and thenceforth was under provincial or royal government.
- 1689 to 1748.** *European Wars.*—The three wars of European origin—King William's, Queen Anne's, and King George's—afflicted the northern colonies most. Their only important result in America was the transfer of Acadia to England's possession.
- 1754.** *French and Indian War.*—This was a contest between England and France for dominion in America. Both powers claimed the territory west of the Alleghany mountains. The English were aided by their colonists and the Iroquois, the French by their colonists and the Indians of Canada. The French, in the first years of the war, drove the English from the western part of Pennsylvania and the northern part of New York; but the English expelled the Acadians from Nova Scotia, recovered their lost territory of Pennsylvania and New York, and finally gained a great victory before Quebec. *Result:* Canada and all the region to the Mississippi, except a very small portion at the mouth of that river, became British territory; the debt of Great Britain was greatly increased; and the colonists had taken important lessons in the art of war, which, in a short time, were to be turned to account in enabling them to resist oppression and gain their independence.
- 1763.** *George III.*
1760-1820.
- George II.**
1727-1760.
- William III.**
1689-1702.
- Anne.**
1702-1714.
- George II.**

GENERAL SUMMARY.

- 1607 When Newport sailed up the James river, all America from Nova Scotia to Florida, was still in possession of the Indians. Jamestown was the first permanent English settlement in America. Two years later the Dutch, under the leadership of an
1609. English navigator, entered the Hudson river; but before Holland had effected any settlement in the new region, the Virginians had gone through the experience of a "starving time," and had married one of their number to Pocahontas; and so rapid was the march of events that before the Dutch began in earnest to colonize New Netherlands (1623) the African slave made his appearance at Jamestown (1619). The slave preceded
1620. the Pilgrim. When, then, the Mayflower's "little crew descended upon the solitary rock on that level shore of Plymouth," slavery was already planted in America. The "Pilgrim Fathers" took early measures to secure themselves from Indian molestation by making a treaty with Massasoit. New Hampshire (1623) and Connecticut (1633) were settled; but, two years before Roger Williams "wandered over wooded hill and valley to unfurl the banner of religious toleration (1636)," Lord Baltimore's colonists had established themselves at an Indian village
1634. in Maryland. The Pequod war, in Connecticut, was ended before the Swedes made their appearance in the Delaware. The formation of the New England Union was effected (1643) before North Carolina was settled (1650), or before the Dutch subdued the Swedes in Delaware (1655), or even before the Puritans persecuted the Quakers (1656). The transfer of New Netherlands to the English (1664) in the same year led to the colonization of New Jersey (1664). King Philip's war, in New England (1675), overlapped Bacon's Rebellion, in Virginia (1676); and when William Penn commenced what he called the "holy experiment,"
1682. and founded the "City of Brotherly Love," Charleston, in South Carolina, was just two years old. During King William's war, Andros's career, as governor of New England, was brought to a close (1689), and the "witchcraft delusion" prevailed (1692). The
1732. year in which Oglethorpe and other benefactors were sent across the ocean to provide in America an asylum for the "poor, distressed, or persecuted" was the year of Washington's birth (1732). Georgia was the last settled of the thirteen colonies (1733).

TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

(See the hints and directions, p 49.)

BIOGRAPHICAL.

John Smith.	(See Hillard's Life of Smith in Sparks's "American Biography.") - - - 53-59
Pocahontas.	(See Hillard's Life of Smith.) - - - 55-57
Roger Williams.	(See Knowles's Memoirs of Williams, also Elton's Life of Williams.) - - - 72, 73
King Philip.	(See Church's History of King Philip's War.) 76-78
Henry Hudson.	(See Cleveland's Life of Hudson in Sparks's "American Biography." Hudson made his fourth voyage in 1610. While in Hudson's bay, a mutiny occurring, he, with eight faithful men, were put into an open boat and abandoned. - - - 47, 80-82
Peter Stuyvesant.	(See Brodhead's History of New York, also Irving's "Knickerbocker's History of New York." - - - 84; 85
William Penn.	(See Janney's Life of Penn, also Dixon's.) - 86-96
Washington.	(See Irving's Life of Washington, or Marshall's, or Sparks's. Let the account extend only to the close of the colonial period.) - 103-123

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Jamestown	53-59	Wilmington	93
Cape Cod	60, 64	Philadelphia	92
Kennebec R.	60	Port Royal, S. C.	97
Plymouth	66	Chowan R.	98
Charlestown (now of Boston) ..	68	Charleston	98, 99
Boston	68	Savannah	99
Connecticut R.	69	Louisburg	101, 107, 108
Saybrook	69	Ohio R.	103-111
Hartford	69	Alleghany R.	103, 104
New Haven	70	Fort Duquesne (now Pitts-	
Providence	73	burg)	105-111
Salem	68, 74	Crown Point	107, 108
New York City	80-85	Fort Ticonderoga	107, 108
Albany	82-85	Lake Champlain	41, 107, 108
Delaware R.	82, 94	Fort Niagara	107
Long Island	86, 87	Lake George	108
Elizabethtown (Elizabeth) ...	87	Quebec	41, 107-111
Potomac R.	88	Montreal	111

HISTORICAL.

Virginia	52-59	South Carolina	96-99
New York	80-85	Pennsylvania	91-96
Massachusetts	64-79	Georgia	99-101
New Hampshire	67	European Wars	101
Connecticut	69-77	French and Indian War ...	105-111
Maryland	87-91	Bacon's Rebellion	59
Rhode Island	72, 73, 76	Pequod War	70
Delaware	92-96	King Philip's War	76-78
North Carolina	40, 96-99	Salem Witchcraft	74, 75
New Jersey	82-87	Expulsion of the Acadians ...	105

ENGLAND AND AMERICA.

JAMES VI. of Scotland, son of Mary Queen of Scots (beheaded in 1587), succeeded Elizabeth as James I. of England, and by this act united both crowns, but the two countries continued to

James I.
1603-1625. have separate legislatures a century longer. Two rebellious conspiracies marked the reign of James: one aimed to place his cousin, Arabella Stuart, upon the throne, the other to blow up the Parliament Houses by means of powder in their vaults, at a moment when the Lords and Commons would be assembled to hear the king's speech. James, who avowed himself to be an Episcopalian, caused a new translation of the Bible to be made, which, known as "King James's version," is still in common use among Protestants. The colonization of America began in good earnest, the grant of North and South Virginia by the king, in 1606, being the opening movement (p. 52). While the French were pushing into Nova Scotia and Canada, and their missionaries were bringing the Indians of the lake region under church civilization, and while the Dutch were thrusting a wedge of settlement even into the heart of the region claimed by England, the English were laying the foundations of a great republic in Virginia and New England (pp. 52, 66), a republic destined to grow and to extend its limits from ocean to ocean, despite the poison of slavery infused into its system during its very infancy (p. 58). James smiled upon Virginia, but frowned upon New England. The first newspaper published in England made its appearance, sedan chairs began to be used, forks were introduced from Italy, and the telescope, thermometer, and microscope were invented. Shakspeare and Raleigh died.

This king, also an Episcopalian, was the second but only surviving son of James I. He had hardly reached the throne when he began to devise plans for drawing a revenue from the colonies; and

Charles I.
1625-1649. in his dealings with them his aim was less to promote their prosperity than to derive personal benefit from their industry. How he planned to have every pound of tobacco annually raised in Virginia pass through his hands forms an interesting chapter in the history of that colony. Believing that kings rule by divine right, and that their wish is above all law, his wants grew with his reign. He wanted money to enable him to carry on a war against Spain, to aid the French Protestants in their defense against Richelieu, to subdue the Scotch Covenanters, to fight Parliament. A large part of his reign was spent in disputes with the several Parliaments. One of these, known as the Long Parliament, he greatly offended, and having failed to obtain money by legal means he procured it by oppressive exactions. Both parties, the king and Parliament, resorting to arms, a civil war raged for several years. Finally the king was taken prisoner, tried for treason, found guilty, and beheaded. The only colonial charter granted by Charles was for Maryland (p. 87), that to Roger Williams for Rhode Island being obtained from Parliament while the king was at war with that body (p. 73). The close of this reign finds six New England colonies all well started in settlement, and, with the exception of Plymouth, bound together under a form of union (p. 74); New York and New Jersey in the undisturbed possession of the Dutch; Delaware a Swedish community; Maryland enacting the law of religious toleration; and

Virginia, with its one negro slave to fifty white freemen, more than forty years on its eventful career.

Oliver Cromwell had been the most prominent man in the opposition to Charles. He made and unmade Parliaments, and, seven years after

Charles's death, received the title of Lord Protector of the Commonwealth of England. By the vigor and ability of his administration and the uniform success of his naval and military enterprises the nation grew to be powerful.

The colonists of Virginia, ever loyal to Charles, and now loyal to the principle of kingly succession, looked upon Cromwell and his Puritan associates as rebels; and Cromwell was careful never to appoint any one to office for the colony. In Maryland, the Protestants, emboldened by the elevation of Cromwell, secured and abused power, and civil war was the consequence (p. 90). The Puritans of New England, who believed that Cromwell's battles were the battles of the Lord, always enjoyed the confidence of the Protector. He favored them in many ways, and when he died and his son succeeded him as Protector they were in the enjoyment of perfect independence except in name.

Cromwell's son resigned the Protectorate after holding it less than a year, and the eldest son of Charles I. was proclaimed king amid great

Charles II. rejoicings, the event being known in English history as the
1660-1685. Restoration. Of the judges, commonly known as "the regicides," who had condemned the father of the new king

to the axe, three escaped to New England. Puritanism no longer swayed the destinies of England. The Navigation Act, declaring that "no merchandise shall be imported into the colonies but in English vessels," became the law of the land (1651). Charles looked upon the English possessions in America as his own personal property. He granted to Connecticut, it is true, a liberal charter (p. 72), but to this he had been influenced by the presentation to him of a ring that had belonged to his father. He also granted to Rhode Island a charter which made that colony secure from the claims of Massachusetts (p. 73), but to this he had been influenced by his dislike of Massachusetts because of that colony's devotion to Cromwell. He gave to two men for a term of years the whole of Virginia (p. 59); and to his brother, the Duke of York, who afterward became king, he gave not only the most of Maine, but, in total disregard of the charter he had granted to Connecticut a few years before, he also gave the territory from the Connecticut river to Delaware bay. To Penn, to whom he owed a debt for services rendered by Penn's father, he cancelled the debt by paying Pennsylvania instead of money (p. 91). His reign, as stated, began in rejoicings, but, in consequence of his dissolute habits and arbitrary rule, he died unlamented except by his vicious and profligate court. At this time Charleston, the only settlement in South Carolina, was just five years old, Penn's surveyors were still busy making the streets of Philadelphia cross each other at right angles, and only three years had passed since La Salle had descended the Mississippi (p. 43). Milton died (1674).

This king, brother of Charles II., had, while he was the Duke of York, become a great popular favorite in England because of his gallant naval exploits, but he soon offended his subjects by his

James II. attempts to restore the Catholic religion to his country.
1685-1689.

It was the design of James to annul all the charters of the American colonies, but, with the exception of the brief administration

of Andros, who, as governor of all New England, New York, and New Jersey, ruled with a tyrant's hand, the peace and progress of the colonies were not disturbed. The short reign of the king did not give him time to put his design into execution. He was also kept busy at home, for his title to the throne was disputed by the Duke of Monmouth; and though the duke was defeated and executed, the people deserted James and invited William, Prince of Orange, to come and help them defend their religion and their freedom. William accepted the call, left Holland, and crossed to England with a large army. The revolution was peacefully accomplished. William and his wife, Mary, eldest daughter of James, were placed upon the throne, while James fled to France.

Aided by the French king (Louis XIV.) James made an effort to regain his crown, but in the battle of the Boyne (Ireland) he was utterly defeated, and again compelled to flee to France. The war that followed between England and France, and known as **William III. 1689-1702.**

"King William's War," extended to America. William left the colonies to take care of themselves; as a consequence the French and Indians of Canada invaded New York and New England and effected terrible destruction of life and property. Only four inhabited towns of Maine remained. As an offset, Port Royal, in Nova Scotia, was captured, but at the close of the war was returned to the French (p. 101). While the war was in progress Sir William Phipps, with a new charter which joined Plymouth, Nova Scotia, and Maine to Massachusetts, returned from England to take the place of Andros (p. 78). Thus Plymouth, contrary to her wishes, lost her separate existence, and New Hampshire, also contrary to her wishes, was taken from under the protection of Massachusetts (p. 67). The death of Mary left William sole ruler, and when James's death occurred, seven years later (1701), Louis made preparations to force James's son upon the throne of England; but while William was getting ready to oppose the scheme of the French king he died, and Anne, James's second daughter, known as "Good Queen Anne," ascended the throne, the succession having been settled on her in 1689 when William and Mary were crowned.

The war that followed was known in the colonies as "Queen Anne's War" (p. 101); but as it became a contest in which England, Holland, and Germany united to prevent Louis from gaining control

Anne. 1702-1714. of Spain, it was known in Europe as the "War of the Spanish Succession." It gave to the Duke of Marlborough, Anne's great general, opportunity to gain the splendid victories which have made his name so famous. While the war was in progress England and Scotland were united as Great Britain; and at its close the English were in possession of Gibraltar, the key to the Mediterranean, and this, the strongest fortress in the world, has ever since continued to be in their possession. The French in America meanwhile were not idle. Their missionaries and tradesmen were active along the lake region and in the valley of the Mississippi. Immense numbers of furs were sent to France.

Queen Anne was the last sovereign of the House of Stuart, and when she died the crown passed to George I., of the House of Brunswick,

George I. 1741-1767. whose mother was granddaughter of James I. All other heirs were thus passed over in order to secure for Great Britain a Protestant succession. George, who was born in Germany, was utterly ignorant of the English language. One of the most

noted events of his reign was the South Sea scheme, a project of a corporation called the South Sea Company, to pay off the debt of Great Britain by mercantile enterprises with the Spaniards in South America. The spirit of speculation pervaded all classes, and the premium for the company's stock ran up to nine hundred per cent. The bubble, however, soon broke and produced wide-spread ruin (1720). Louis XIV. was now dead, after a reign of seventy-two years. Addison (in 1719) and Newton (in 1727) died.

This king, a dull, conceited little despot, son of George I., supported the claims of Maria Theresa to the throne of Austria, and thus involved

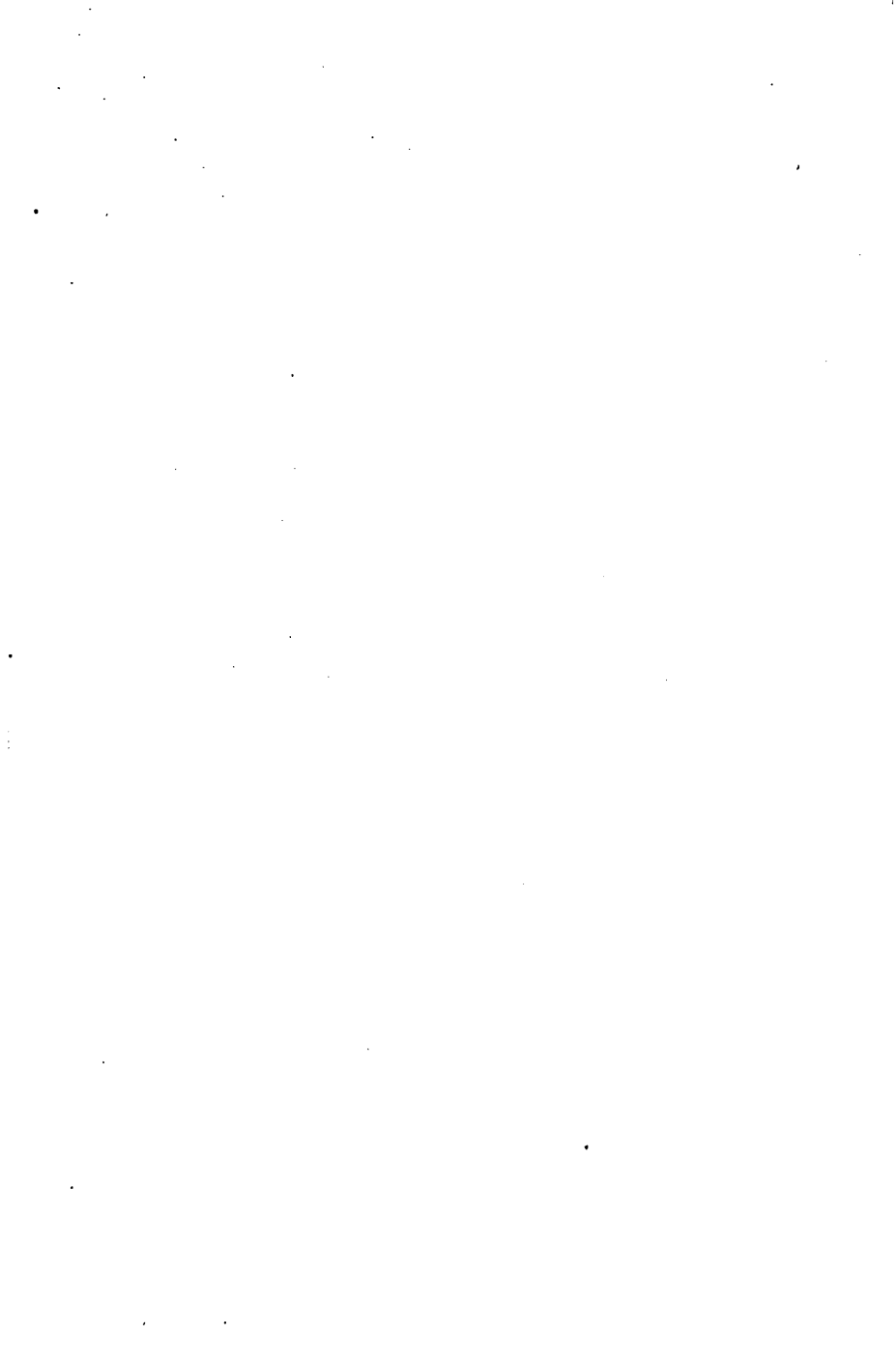
England in the contest against France known as the **George II. "War of the Austrian Succession."** In America, where 1727-1760.

it was known as "King George's War" (p. 101), old rivalries raged between English and Spanish traders, and a contest began respecting the boundary between Georgia and Florida. After the war had continued about five years the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle was made; but this secured a peace of only six years, when the struggle was renewed in consequence of conflicting claims to territory in America, and during the contest England took part in the famous Seven Years' War (pp. 101-111). At the close of this reign all of America north of Florida and east of the Mississippi, as far as explorations had been made, was in the possession of Great Britain, though the treaty with France confirming this possession was not made till three years later (p. 111). Florida still belonged to Spain, though it likewise was given up to England three years later, England returning Cuba to Spain in exchange; and, at the same time, Spain recovered from France the New Orleans part of Louisiana and all the rest of that then unknown region extending hundreds of miles west of the Mississippi. The claims of Spain to the western side of America were not up to this time really disputed by any power. No English vessels had been there since Drake made his explorations and submitted to the king-crowning farce at the hands of the California Indians in 1579 (p. 39). The thirteen colonies, including Georgia, which, eight years before, had passed from the rule of the trustees to that of the crown, had a population of not far from a million of white inhabitants, among whom circulated about twenty newspapers. Goldsmith and Pope had been dead sixteen years. Washington, who was then twenty-eight years of age, was only half as old as Dr. Franklin.

During the sixty years' reign of George III., grandson of George II., the peace of Paris, closing the French and Indian War, was made (p. 111); the thirteen American colonies revolted and

George III. 1762-1820.

gained their independence (pp. 125-181); England "shook under the volcano of the French Revolution;" grappled and fought for life with her great enemy Napoleon Bonaparte; and waged her second war to the end with the United States (pp. 204-216). When George III. died, David Hume, the historian, had been dead 44 years; William Pitt, earl of Chatham, the friend of America, 42 years; Dr. Samuel Johnson, the dictionary-maker, 35 years; Dr. Franklin, the lightning-trainer and philosopher, 30 years; Gibbon, the historian, 26 years; Burns, the Scotch poet, 24 years; Edmund Burke, the orator and political writer, 23 years; and Washington, 21 years. The Prince of Wales, who, because of his father's insanity, had been regent ten years, ascended the throne as George IV.



FRENCH & INDIAN WAR AND THE REVOLUTION.

This map illustrates the Eastern United States and parts of Canada during the French & Indian War and the American Revolution. Key features include:

- Geographical Features:** The Great Lakes, St. Lawrence River, Hudson River, Delaware River, Chesapeake Bay, and the Atlantic Ocean.
- Provinces and States:** Quebec, New Brunswick, Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Vermont, New York, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia.
- Major Cities and Towns:** Quebec, Montreal, Plattsburg, Burlington, Albany, New York, Philadelphia, Trenton, Princeton, Baltimore, Alexandria, Richmond, Petersburg, Raleigh, Guilford, Camden, Columbia, Charleston, Savannah, and others.
- Water Bodies:** Lake Ontario, Lake Erie, Lake Champlain, and the Gulf of Mexico.
- Mountains:** The Appalachian Mountains are shown running through the center of the map.
- Orientation:** A compass rose indicates North is at the top.



SECTION III.

THE REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD.

1. FOR many years England had governed her American colonies in a harsh, unjust, and selfish spirit. The colonies were ruled, not for their good, but for the benefit of English commerce and English work shops. They were forbidden to send their tobacco, rice, lumber, fish, or any of their other products, to any country except England. No foreign ships were permitted to enter their ports. Do we wonder, then, that the colonists were dissatisfied? And can we wonder that when fresh burdens were put upon them, they rebelled?

Causes
of
the war.

2. The French and Indian war had cost a vast sum of money. In order to carry it on, Great Britain had been obliged to borrow three hundred millions of dollars, thus increasing her national debt by that amount. The English government, therefore, asserting that the war had been waged in behalf of the colonies, further asserted that they ought to bear a part of the burden. The right to tax the colonies was boldly proclaimed by Parliament; but the colonists did not agree to this. They claimed that during the war they had performed their full share in defending their territory, that their preservation as English colonies was quite as much for the benefit of England as themselves, and that they could not in justice be taxed by a legislature in which they were not represented. "Taxation and representation," they maintained, should go together! "This claim of the right of taxation on the one side, and the denial of it on the other, was the very hinge on which the revolution turned."

3. The remonstrance was all to no effect. A law was passed called the Stamp Act (1765). This required that all busi-

ness papers, such as deeds, bonds, and notes, and all such printed matter as newspapers and almanacs, should have stamps put upon them. The law, however, could not disguise the intent: it was "taxation by means of a stamp duty." Benjamin Franklin, who was then in Eng-



PATRICK HENRY.

land, said that "America would never submit to the Stamp Act;" and America never did. Indignation meetings were held, and protests were uttered. In the legislature of Virginia, Patrick Henry, "a young man highly distinguished for his moral courage," spoke with startling eloquence against the injustice of the measure, exclaiming, "Cæsar had his Brutus; Charles the First, his Cromwell; and George the Third—" "Treason! Treason!" was shouted from every part of the house. The orator, after a pause, thus concluded the sentence: "—may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

4. James Otis, a brilliant, bold, and defiant orator, "the creator of the theory of independence," in the Massachusetts Assembly, also eloquently denounced the act, and, on his motion, adopted by the Assembly, a congress of delegates from nine of the colonies met in the city of New York "to consult for the general safety." The Declaration of Rights and the petitions addressed to the king and Parliament, the work of this congress, were as nothing to the fact that a beginning had been made in effecting a union by which the colonies became, as the delegates expressed it, "a bundle of sticks which could neither be bent nor broken." While the congress was in session a ship with stamps arrived at New York, and "at once all the vessels in the harbor lowered

their colors. The whole city rose up as one man in opposition to the Stamp Act (Oct. 1765)."

5. "The first Monday of November," the day on which the obnoxious measure was to go into effect, "broke upon a people unanimously resolved on nullifying the Stamp Act. From New Hampshire to the far south, the day was introduced by the tolling of muffled bells; minute-guns were fired, and penants hoisted at half-staff." Not a stamp was to be seen, for everywhere it was the fixed purpose that the act should not go into effect. As business, therefore, continued to be conducted in the old method, that is without stamps, for all of them had been concealed or destroyed; and as the merchants of all the cities agreed to import no goods while the Stamp Act remained a law, Parliament yielded. The Stamp Act was repealed, but the right to tax America was again asserted and proclaimed (1766). The stamps, what became of them? They were returned to England "where the curious traveler may still see bags of them, cumbering the office from which they were issued."

6. The repeal of the Stamp Act caused great rejoicing throughout the colonies. Virginia and New York voted statues to the king. New York also voted a statue to Pitt, who, in Parliament had declared "that the king-

**The
Boston
massacre.**

A second statue was voted to Pitt by Maryland. But the joy was short-lived; for soon another law was passed by Parliament imposing a tax on all glass, painters' colors, and tea, imported into the colonies (1767). Again the spirit of opposition was aroused not unlike that which had been caused by the Stamp Act. The colonists determined to import no more of these articles. Franklin, still in England, advised his countrymen "to light the torches of industry and economy." As the people of Boston showed the most decided opposition to the tax, a body of the king's soldiers were sent to keep them in subjection. The presence of these "redcoats," or "lobsterbacks," as they were called by

the boys in the streets, caused constant affrays, in one of which, known as the "Boston Massacre," the soldiers fired on the people. "A gush of smoke overspread the scene. It rose heavily, as if it were loath to reveal the dreadful spectacle beneath it. Eleven of the sons of New England lay stretched upon the street. Some, sorely wounded, were struggling to rise again. Others stirred not nor groaned; for they were past all pain. Blood was streaming upon the snow; and though that purple stain melted away in the next day's sun, it was never forgotten nor forgiven by the people (1770)."¹

7. Before the news of this event reached England, Parliament revoked the duty which had been imposed on glass and painters' colors, but retained that of three pence a pound on tea. This concession, however, did not satisfy the people, for they were contending, not against the *amount* of the tax but for the *principle* of "no taxation without representation." They were determined not to be taxed except by their own representatives. Accordingly, the tea brought to New York and Philadelphia was sent back. That which came to Charleston was stored in damp cellars, and as no one would buy or use it, it soon became worthless.

8. "Samuel Adams was the true king in Boston at that time, though honors, emoluments, and even power he never

¹ Two years later an affair occurred in Narragansett bay, which, says Arnold, Rhode Island's historian, "is deserving of commendation as it was the first blow, in all the colonies, for freedom." The *Gaspee*, a British schooner, was stationed in the bay "to prevent the clandestine landing of goods subject to the payment of duty." The packet *Hannah*, from New York, while proceeding up the bay was chased by the *Gaspee*, but the latter ran aground, and the *Hannah* thus escaped to Providence. The situation of the hated enemy was soon proclaimed at Providence by beat of drum, calling upon those who desired to go and destroy her, to meet that evening. Eight long-boats were provided, and the party embarked. It was past midnight when they approached the *Gaspee*. The attacking party boarded the schooner, and, after a brief struggle, the crew surrendered and were put on shore, their vessel being set fire to and completely destroyed.

sought. He was a man of cultivated mind and stainless reputation, a powerful speaker and writer, a man in whose sagacity and moderation all men trusted. He was among the first to see that there was no resting-place in this great struggle short of independence. The men of Boston felt the power of his resolute spirit, and manfully followed where Samuel Adams led. With his tongue and pen he made the king of England tremble on his throne." "The king," he said, "has no right to send troops here to invade the country; if they come, they will come as foreign enemies. We will not submit to any tax, nor become slaves. We will take up arms, and spend our last drop of blood before the king and Parliament shall impose upon us. It was not reverence for kings that brought the ancestors of New England to America. They fled from kings and looked up to the King of kings. We are free, and want no king."

9. Three "tea-ships" arrived at Boston, and the agents refused to send them back to London. Public meetings were held. Faneuil (*fan'-you'l*) Hall¹ could not contain the people that poured into the town, so they adjourned to the "Old South Meeting House." Samuel Adams, John Hancock, Joseph Warren, and other notable patriots conducted the proceedings. The time for action at length arrived and Adams gave the word. "On the instant, a cry was heard at the porch; the war-whoop resounded; a body of men, forty or fifty in number, disguised with painted faces and clad in blankets as Indians, each holding a hatchet, passed by the door." The crowd followed. The ships were boarded. Silently and quickly "these grim figures, the painted war-

¹ Faneuil Hall, in Boston, was used by the patriots during the revolution, and for that reason is often called the "Cradle of American Liberty." The original building, comprising a market-place on the ground floor, a town-hall, and other rooms, was erected by Peter Faneuil. In 1761, it was destroyed by fire; but in 1763 it was rebuilt at the expense of the town; and when the British occupied Boston in 1775, they used the Hall for a theatre. In 1805, the building underwent considerable alteration.

riors, hoisted the tea chests on the decks of the vessels, broke them open, and threw all their contents" into the water (1773).¹

10. It began to be suggested that a union of the colonies would be the best barrier against the wrongful measures of



FANEUIL HALL, IN 1776.

Parliament. Accordingly, committees of correspondence were speedily formed in New England and Virginia, and communication by letters was opened with the leading patriots in every colony. The first result was soon seen. Delegates from all the colonies, except Georgia, met in Philadelphia (1774). The low-roofed quaint old room in which the meeting was held, is, to this day, one of the shrines which Americans delight to visit.

¹ "When tidings of this bold deed were carried to England, King George was greatly enraged. Parliament immediately passed an act known as the "Boston Port Bill," by which all vessels were forbidden to take in or discharge their cargoes at the port of Boston. In this way they expected to ruin all the merchants, and starve the poor people by depriving them of employment." Thus was Boston punished.

Washington was there, and so too were Patrick Henry, Richard Henry Lee, Samuel and John Adams, John Jay, and other good men and true. It was resolved that all commerce with England should be stopped, addresses were voted to the king and the people of Great Britain, and an appeal for support was made by the delegates to their brother colonists of Canada. "Whenever my country calls upon me," said Washington, "I am ready to take my musket on my shoulder."

11. Previous to this, General Gage had been appointed to the command of the king's troops in the colonies, and had also been made governor of Massachusetts. The people, though greatly excited, acted with prudence and **Preparations** caution. They did not desire a conflict with the **for war.** "mother country," but were prepared for it, should it prove unavoidable. The militia were organized; and, in Massachusetts, men capable of bearing arms were put under daily training. "The Americans called them Minute Men, because they engaged to be ready to fight at a minute's warning. The English officers laughed, and said that the name was a very proper one, because the 'Minute Men' would run away the minute they saw the enemy. Whether they would fight or run was soon to be proved."

THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.

12. England showed no disposition to relent. The king, not only returned no reply to the address of the American Congress, but Parliament would not even allow the address to be read in either of its houses. In America, **The** events were approaching a crisis. Late one April **struggle** night eight hundred of the king's soldiers, com- **begins.** manded by Colonel Smith, left Boston to destroy some ammunition and provisions which the patriots had collected at Concord, a small town about sixteen miles distant (1775).

13; "Gage thought that the movement was a profound secret, but Lord Percy, who had heard the people say on the

Common that the troops would miss their aim, undeceived him. Gage instantly ordered that no one should leave the town. But Dr. Warren was before him, and as the troops crossed the river, Ebenezer Dorr, with a message to John Hancock and Samuel Adams, was riding over the Neck to Roxbury, and Paul Revere was rowing over the river farther down, to Charlestown, having agreed with his friend, Robert Newman, to show lanterns from the belfrey of the Old North Church—

Paul
Revere's
ride.

‘One, if by land, and two, if by sea’—

as a signal of the march of the British. Already the moon was rising, and while the troops were stealthily landing at Lechmere Point, their secret was flashed out into the April night, and Paul Revere, springing into the saddle upon the Charlestown shore, spurred away into Middlesex.

‘How far that little candle throws his beams.’

The modest spire yet stands, reverend relic of the old town of Boston, of those brave men and their deeds.

14. It was a brilliant April night. The winter had been unusually mild, and the spring very forward. The hills were already green. The early grain waved in the fields, and the air was sweet with blossoming orchards. Already the robins whistled, the bluebird sang, and the benediction of peace rested upon the landscape. Under the cloudless moon the soldiers silently marched; and Paul Revere swiftly rode, galloping through Medford and West Cambridge, rousing every house as he went, spurring for Lexington and Hancock and Adams, and evading the British patrols who had been sent out to stop the news. Stop the news! Already the village churches were beginning to ring the alarm, as the pulpits beneath them had been ringing for many a year. In the awakening houses, lights flashed from window to window. Drums beat faintly far away and on every side. Signal-guns flashed and echoed. The watch-dogs barked. Stop the news! Stop the sunrise. The murmuring night trembled

with the summons so earnestly expected, so dreaded, so desired. Such was the history of that night in how many homes ! The hearts of those men and women of Middlesex might break, but they could not waver. They had counted the cost. They knew what and whom they served ; and as the midnight summons came, they started up and answered, ' Here am I. ' ”

15. The British troops meanwhile moved steadily along ; but “ the firing of guns and ringing of bells announced that their expedition had been heralded before them ; and Smith sent back for a re-enforcement. The last stars were vanishing from night when the foremost party, led by Pitcairn, a major of marines, was discovered by the husbandmen of Lexington, advancing quickly and in silence. Alarm guns were fired and the drums beat. Less than seventy, perhaps less than sixty, obeyed the summons, and, in sight of half as many boys and unarmed men, were paraded in two ranks, a few rods north of the meeting house. The ground on which they trod was the altar of freedom, and they were to furnish the victims. Pitcairn rode in front of his men, and, when within five or six rods of the minute men, cried out : ‘ Disperse, ye villains ! ye rebels, disperse ! lay down your arms ! why don’t you lay down your arms and disperse ? ’ The patriots stood motionless in the ranks, witnesses against aggression ; too few to resist, too brave to fly. At this, Pitcairn discharged a pistol, and with a loud voice cried, ‘ Fire ! ’ The order was followed by a close and deadly discharge of musketry.

Lexington
and
Concord.

16. Day came in all the beauty of an early spring. The trees were budding ; the grass was growing rankly a month before its time ; the bluebird and the robin were gladdening the genial season and calling forth the beams of the sun which on that morning shone with the warmth of summer ; but distress and horror gathered over the inhabitants of the little town. There, on the grass, lay in death the gray-haired and the young ; the grassy field was red ‘ with the in-

nocent blood of their brethren slain,' crying unto God for vengeance from the ground. Seven of the men of Lexington were killed, nine wounded ; a quarter part of all who stood in arms on the green. These are the village heroes, who were of more than noble blood, proving by their spirit that they were of a race divine. They gave their lives in testimony to the rights of mankind, bequeathing to their country an assurance of success in the mighty struggle which they began."

17. After a halt of less than thirty minutes, the British troops marched on for Concord, and there destroyed all the stores they could find, but not without a severe skirmish in which several persons were killed on both sides. Meanwhile the militia had collected in large numbers. The British began to retreat, but they were not permitted to escape thus. Every fence, barn, and shed, "every piece of wood, every rock by the wayside," hid their assailants. "Scarce ten of the Americans were at any time seen together, yet the hills on each side of the road seemed to the British to swarm with 'rebels,' as if they had dropped from the clouds. At Lexington the invaders were met by re-enforcements under Lord Percy ; and while their cannon kept the Americans at bay, Percy formed his men into a square, enclosing the fugitives, who lay down for rest on the ground, 'their tongues hanging out of their mouths like those of dogs after a chase.' Delay to the British was sure to prove ruinous. Aware of his peril, Percy, resting but half an hour, renewed the retreat. The Americans pressed upon the rear of the fugitives, keeping up a constant fire, and, until a little after sunset, when the survivors escaped across Charlestown Neck, the pursuit never flagged. On that day, forty-nine Americans were killed, thirty-four wounded, and five missing. The loss of the British in killed, wounded, and missing, was two hundred and seventy three (April 19, 1775)."

18. This contest fully aroused the colonies. "With one impulse, they sprang to arms ; with one spirit, they pledged

themselves to each other 'to be ready for the extreme event.' With one heart, the continent cried: 'Liberty or Death.' " The patriots flocked in from all sides and formed a camp near Boston. Putnam, of Connecticut, left his plough in the field; turned loose the oxen, buckled on his sword, and rode to the camp in one day, a distance of sixty-eight miles. Stark, Greene, and others were soon there also. General Ward, of Massachusetts, was exercising a limited command, for as yet no one had been authorized to assume supreme control. Georgia sent gifts of money and rice, and cheering letters. New York and Virginia sent encouraging words. North Carolina threw off the authority of the king. There was a general resort to arms, one of the immediate and important results being the capture of Ticonderoga by a body of Green Mountain Boys, under the heroic leadership of Ethan Allen.

19. "A flight of stairs outside of the barracks was pointed out, which Allen hastily ascended, and with a voice of thunder at the door, cried out to the captain to come forth instantly or the whole garrison should be sacrificed. At this the captain came out undressed, with his breeches in his hand. 'Deliver to me the fort instantly,' said Allen. 'By what authority?' asked the captain. 'In the name of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress,' answered Allen. The captain began to speak, but was peremptorily interrupted, and at sight of Allen's drawn sword near his head, he gave up the garrison. Thus Ticonderoga, which cost the British nation eight millions sterling, a succession of campaigns, and many lives, was won in ten minutes by a few undisciplined volunteers, without the loss of life or limb (May 10, 1775)."

20. It coming to the knowledge of the Americans that Gage intended to extend his lines north and south, they determined to anticipate the movement by occupying Bunker Hill. Accordingly, Colonel Prescott was sent at night with a thousand men to fortify

Effect
of
the battle.

Capture
of
Ticonderoga.

Battle
of
Bunker Hill.

the hill ; but, on reaching the ground, "obeying the orders as he understood them," he selected Breed's Hill, an eminence nearer Boston. The pickax and spade were plied with vigor,



and at dawn Gage and his officers were astonished by the view of a strong redoubt, thrown up as if by magic. An attack was at once ordered (June 17). "The British troops, having crossed the river, moved forward in two divisions, —General Howe with the right wing, to penetrate the American line at the rail fence and cut off a retreat from the redoubt, —General Pigot, with the left wing, to storm the

breastwork and redoubt. They moved forward slowly, for they were burdened with knapsacks full of provisions, obstructed by the tall grass and the fences, and heated by a burning sun ; but they felt unbounded confidence in their strength, regarded their antagonists with scorn, and expected an easy victory. The Americans coolly waited their approach. Their officers ordered them to reserve their fire until the British were within ten or twelve rods, and then to wait till the word was given. ' Powder was scarce and must not be wasted,' they said. ' Fire low ; aim at the waistbands ; wait until you see the white of their eyes.' * * *

21. At length the British troops reached the prescribed distance, and the order was given to fire ; when there was a discharge from the redoubt and breastwork, that did terrible execution on the British ranks. But it was received with veteran firmness, and, for a few minutes, was sharply returned. The Americans, being protected by their works, suffered but

little ; but their murderous balls literally strewed the ground with the dead and wounded of the enemy. General Pigot was obliged to order a retreat, when the exulting shout of victory rose from the American lines. The patriot volunteer saw the veterans of England fly before his fire, and felt a new confidence in himself. * * * General Howe, in a short time, rallied his troops, and immediately ordered another assault. They marched in the same order as before, and continued to fire as they approached the lines. But, in addition to the previous obstacles, they were obliged to step over the bodies of their fallen countrymen. Charlestown, in the meantime, had been set on fire by shells thrown from Copp's Hill and by a party of marines. And now ensued one of the greatest scenes of war that can be conceived. To fill the eye,—a brilliantly appointed army advancing to the attack and storming the works, supported by co-operating ships and batteries ; the blaze of the burning town, coursing whole streets or curling up the spires of public edifices ; the air above filled with clouds of dense black smoke, and the surrounding hills, fields, roofs, and steeples, occupied by crowds of spectators. To fill the ear,—the shouts of the contending armies, the crash of the falling buildings, and the roar of the cannon, mortars, and musketry. * * *

22. At length, at the prescribed distance, the fire was again given by the patriots, which, in its fatal impartiality, prostrated whole ranks of officers and men. The enemy stood the shock, and continued to advance with great spirit ; but the continued stream of fire from the whole American line was even more destructive than before. General Howe was in the hottest of it. Two of his aids, and other officers near him, were shot down, and at times he was left almost alone. His officers were seen to remonstrate and to threaten, and even to prick and strike the men to urge them on. But it was in vain. The British were compelled again to give way, and they retreated even in greater disorder than before."

23. The third time, with the addition of some fresh troops,

the assault was ordered ; but the Americans, having expended every grain of powder, were obliged to abandon their works.

**Result
of
the battle.**

Slowly they retreated down the hill, vanquished men, yet leaving little cause for triumph to the victors. On both sides many fell ; but the Americans lost one whom they could little spare, the noble patriot, and brave soldier, Joseph Warren. Mrs. John Adams,

in writing of Warren after the battle, said : “ We want him in the Senate, we want him in his profession, we want him in the field. We mourn for the citizen, the senator, the physician, and the warrior.”



JOSEPH WARREN.

24. Though the British were successful, the victory to them was more disastrous and humiliating than an ordinary defeat. “ Two more such victories,” said the celebrated statesman at the head of the French cabinet, “ and

England will have no army left in America.” The Americans were not discouraged. They felt that they could contend successfully with the king’s troops, however skillful and well-tried these were. The contest proved to them also that the Putnams, Starks, Prescotts and others, who had been trained in the school of the “ French and Indian war,” had been apt scholars, and were the men to make good use of their training and experience. The sympathy for Massachusetts, in her sufferings, was wide-spread ; but no where was it more boldly manifested than in Virginia. There Patrick Henry’s voice, with its thrilling effect, was again heard. One of his speeches is thus reported :

25. “ Sir, we are not weak, if we make a proper use of those means which the God of nature hath placed in our power. Three millions of people, armed in the holy cause of

liberty, and in such a country as this which we possess, are invincible by any force which our enemy can send against us. Besides, sir, we shall not fight our battles alone. There is a just God, who pre-^{The necessity of the war.}sides over the destinies of nations, and who will raise up friends to fight our battles for us. The battle, sir, is not to the strong alone : it is to the vigilant, the active, the brave. Besides, sir, we have no election. If we were base enough to desire it, it is now too late to retire from the contest. There is no retreat but in submission and slavery. Our chains are forged. Their clanking may be heard on the plains of Boston. The war is inevitable—and let it come ! I repeat it, sir, let it come. * * * I know not what course others may take ; but as for me, give me liberty or give me death.”

26. On the very day of the capture of Ticonderoga, the Second Continental Congress met in Philadelphia. Its most important duty was to appoint a commander-in-chief of the patriot forces. “ This was a task of more delicacy and difficulty than might at first be supposed. ^{Washington chosen commander-in-chief.} Many considerations were to be weighed besides the personal qualifications of any individual for that high station, either as to character, abilities, or military skill. While the discussions were going on respecting military preparations, John Adams, one of the delegates from Massachusetts, moved that the army, then besieging the British troops in Boston, should be adopted by Congress as a Continental army. In the course of his observations enforcing this motion, he said it was his intention to propose for the office of commander-in-chief a gentleman from Virginia, who was at that time a member of their own body. His remarks were so pointed, that all present perceived them to apply to Colonel Washington, who, upon hearing this reference to himself, retired from his seat and withdrew.

27. When the day for the appointment arrived, the nomination was made by Thomas Johnson, of Maryland. The choice was by ballot ; and, on inspecting the votes, it was

found that Colonel Washington was unanimously elected. As soon as the result was ascertained the House adjourned. On the convening of Congress the next morning, the president communicated to him the notice of his appointment, and he rose in his place and signified his acceptance in a brief and appropriate reply. Before the election, it had been voted that five hundred dollars a month should be allowed for the pay and expenses of the general. On this point Washington said : ' I beg leave to assure the Congress that, as no pecuniary consideration could have tempted me to accept this arduous employment, at the expense of my domestic ease and happiness, I do not wish to make any profit from it. I will keep an exact account of my expenses. Those, I doubt not, they will discharge ; and that is all I desire.' "

28. This appointment was made two days before the battle of Bunker Hill. There was no such thing as communication by telegraph in those days, and it took a week to travel from Boston to Philadelphia by the quickest mode then known. Washington's preparations to assume the command of the army round Boston, were soon made ; and, with Generals Charles Lee and Philip Schuyler (*ski'-ler*) as his companions, he set out on horseback, but had scarcely proceeded twenty miles when he was met by a courier with tidings of the great battle that had been fought. Washington eagerly asked for particulars, and when told that the militia stood their ground bravely, exclaimed : " The liberties of the country are safe !" Under an ancient elm at Cambridge, three miles from Boston, and in the presence of soldiers drawn up in line, and of a multitude of men, women, and children, from all parts of the country, he took formal command of the army.

29. To prevent the British from using Canada as a base of operations, Congress sent an expedition under Schuyler to gain possession of it. Schuyler had reached the outlet of Lake Champlain, when sickness compelling his return, General Richard Montgom-

Washington
takes
command.

Expedition
against
Canada.

ery, the next officer, assumed the command. Montgomery soon made himself master of Montreal and other places in Canada,¹ and then marched against Quebec, where, as had been arranged, he was joined by General Benedict Arnold, who had proceeded by the Kennebec river.



30. For three weeks they laid siege to the city, and then resolved to make an assault. On the last day of the year, and during a fierce snow storm, **Death of** they advanced to the attack. **Montgomery.**

"Push on, brave boys, Quebec is ours," cried Montgomery, as the column began to move up the ascent. "On they marched to within forty paces of the block-house. At that moment, a sailor who had fled from his post, surprised that the Americans did not advance, ventured back to discover the reason. Through one of the port-holes of the block-house he saw the advancing party, and turned to run away again; but as he turned, he performed an act which decided the fortunes of the day, and gave Canada back again to Britain. He touched off one of those grape-charged cannon. Forward fell the majestic form of Montgomery, never to rise again.



GENERAL MONTGOMERY.

Down went two of his aids, mortally wounded. The orderly sergeant, too, never again saw daylight. Every man that marched in front of the column, except Captain Aaron Burr and the guide, was struck down to death by the discharge of that twelve-pounder. The day was just dawning,

¹ St. Johns, on the Sorel river, was besieged, and then captured. During the siege Colonel Ethan Allen, at the head of only eighty men, with great rashness forced his way to Montreal, but was defeated, captured, and sent to England in irons.

and the soldiers were soon aware of the whole extent of the catastrophe. The column halted and wavered. * * The enemy returned to the block-house, and opened fire on the assailants. The retreat soon became a precipitate and disorderly retreat." Arnold, severely wounded, was borne from the field (Dec. 31, 1775.)

31. Meanwhile, Washington had remained with his army ; and Boston, with its ten thousand troops sent to subdue the patriots, was as a besieged city. Finally, he resolved to drive **Evacuation of Boston.** the enemy away. Accordingly, he ordered fortifications to be erected on Dorchester Heights. As these commanded the city and the Americans could not be dislodged, General Howe, Gage's successor, was compelled to withdraw to his ships (March 17, 1776) ; and, accompanied by a large number of loyal families, he sailed for Halifax. Washington entered the city amid the rejoicings of the people, who, for so many months, had endured every kind of insult and indignity from the British soldiery.¹

32. Surmising that an expedition under General Clinton which had been previously sent from Boston, was destined for the capture of New York, Washington sent Lee to protect that city. It happened that on the very day of **Expedition against Charleston.** Lee's arrival there, but two hours after, Clinton also arrived, and anchored in the harbor. Thus foiled, Clinton sailed to the south, whence, joined by a fleet and troops from England, he proceeded against Charleston.

33. The people of Charleston had begun to make preparations against an attack by erecting a fort on Sullivan's island at the entrance of the harbor. " This was built of logs, laid

¹ " No little excitement was produced by the publication in Philadelphia about this time (Jan. 10) of 'Common Sense,' a pamphlet, by Thomas Paine, a recent emigrant from England, and editor of the *Pennsylvania Magazine*. This pamphlet argued, in that plain and convincing style for which Paine was so distinguished, the folly of any longer attempting to keep up the British connection, and the absolute necessity of a final and formal separation. Pitched exactly to the popular tone, it had a wide circulation throughout the colonies, and gave a powerful impulse to the cause of independence."—*Hildreth*.

one upon another in parallel rows, at a distance of sixteen feet, bound together at frequent intervals with **Charleston** timber. The spaces between were filled up with **saved.** sand. The merlons were walled entirely by palmetto logs, notched into one another at the angles. Such was the plan of the work, but, with all the diligence of the officers, and all the industry of the men, it was still unfinished at the perilous moment when the powerful British fleet appeared before its walls. The defense was confided to Colonel Moultrie (*moll'-tre*).

34. On the 20th of June, 1776, a day ever memorable in the annals of Carolina, the enemy's ships of war, nine in number, commanded by Sir Peter Parker, drew up abreast of the fort, let go their anchors, and commenced a terrible bombardment. The famous battle which followed makes one of the brightest pages in our history. The garrison fought with a coolness which would have done honor to veterans. The day was very warm, and the men partially stripped to it. In the hottest of the fire, the flag of the fort was shot away. It fell outside the works. Sergeant Jasper, one of Marion's men (See p. 167), instantly sprung after it upon the beach, and binding it to a sponge-staff, restored it to its place, and succeeded in gaining his own place again in safety. Tradition ascribes to the hand and eye of Marion, the terrible effect of the last shot which was fired. It was aimed at the commodore's ship, which had already received something more than her due share of the attention from the fort. This



shot, penetrating the cabin of the vessel, cut down two young officers, who were drinking, we may suppose, to their fortunate escape from a conflict which seemed already over. It then ranged forward, swept three sailors from the main deck, and finally buried itself into the bosom of the sea." The ships, in a disabled condition, were compelled to retire; and the victory of the Americans was complete. "Moultrie received the thanks of Congress, and the fort was thenceforth called by his name."

35. The time was now ripe for the consideration by Congress of the great question of independence. The people, at first opposed to a separation from the "mother country," as

Birth of the nation. England was still affectionately termed, had discussed the question in the newspapers, in numerous pamphlets, in public meetings, and in letters. "There had been a time when loyalty to the British crown was the distinguishing trait of the colonists, when every address and every petition showed their real regard for the young monarch, when no one would believe that the occupant of the throne was the chief cause of all their misery and that it was a mad and cruel king who had invoked the horrors of war upon his people. But the swift course of events had roused the people and driven them on before even their leaders. They had discovered that their chief enemy was their king."

36. On the 7th of June, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, offered a resolution in Congress, declaring "That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States." The debate that ensued was long and animated, for all the members were not as yet quite prepared for a measure so decisive. At length, on the 2d of July, the resolution was passed; but "of the proceedings of Congress upon this eventful day no record has been preserved. We are better acquainted with the speeches delivered in the Roman Senate and the Roman Forum than with the grand discussion of the principles of liberty and progress which was so thoroughly and so fearlessly carried on." The resolution

having passed, "the immortal state paper, the genuine effusion of the soul of the country," THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, which had been prepared by Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, in behalf of a committee previously appointed, was ready for adoption.



INDEPENDENCE HALL.

37. "In a plain room were assembled somewhat less than fifty persons, to consider a paper prepared by a young Virginia lawyer, giving reasons for the resolve which had been adopted two days before.¹ They were farmers, planters, lawyers, physicians, surveyors of land, with one eminent Presbyterian clergyman. A majority of them had been educated at such schools, or primitive colleges, as then existed on this continent ; while a few had enjoyed the rare advantage of training

The
fathers
of the
Declaration.

¹ The old State House, in Philadelphia, where Congress met, is still standing. In is generally known by the name of Independence Hall, though the room in which the Declaration of Independence was adopted and signed received at first that appellation. The building was erected in 1735, but its bell-tower was not put up until 1750. A bell which was imported from England expressly for the tower, was found cracked upon its arrival, and thereupon it was recast in the city of Philadelphia, and raised to its place in 1753. By a curious coincidence, it bore around its crown the words : *Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof.* It has a world-wide reputation as the "Liberty Bell."

abroad and of foreign travel. But a considerable number, perhaps twenty in all, and among them some of the most influential, had received no other education than that which they had gained by diligent reading while at their trades or on their farms.

38. The figure to which our thoughts turn first is that of the author of the careful paper on the details of which the discussion turned. It has no special majesty or charm. The slight, tall frame, the sun-burned face, the gray eyes spotted with hazel, the red hair which crowns the head ; but already, at the age of thirty-three, the man has impressed himself on his associates as a master of principles, and of the language in which those principles find their expression, so that his colleagues have left to him, almost wholly, the work of preparing the important declaration. He wants readiness in debate, and so is now silent ; but he listens eagerly to the vigorous argument and the forcible appeals of one of his associates on the committee, Mr. John Adams. Now and then he speaks with another of the committee, much older than himself, a stout man, with a friendly face, in a plain dress, whom the world had already heard something of as Benjamin Franklin.



JOHN HANCOCK.

39. These three are, perhaps, most prominently before us as we recall the vanished scene, though others were there of fine presence and cultivated manners ; and though all impress us as substantial representative men, however harsh the features of some, however brawny their hands with labor. But, certainly, nothing could be more unpretending, more destitute of pictorial charm, than that small assembly of persons for the most part quite unknown to previous fame."

40. While we know that John Adams was "the colossus of

the debate," yet we have no report whatever of his speeches. Still we can suppose,¹ with Daniel Webster, that he said : "Sink or swim, live or die, survive or perish, I **Adams's** give my hand and my heart to this vote. It is **speech.** true, indeed, that in the beginning we aimed not at independence. But 'there's a Divinity which shapes our ends.' The injustice of England has driven us to arms ; and, blinded to her own interest for our good, she has obstinately persisted, till independence is now within our grasp. We have but to reach forth to it, and it is ours. Why, then, should we defer the Declaration?"²

41. On that day, July the 4th, 1776, the Declaration was adopted. The thirteen colonies were thenceforth no longer colonies. They were States ; and the United States were a nation. The **Effect of the Declaration.** people rejoiced. The Declaration was read to the army amidst exulting shouts. It was read in the open air before large and rapturous gatherings of men. There were bonfires and illuminations. "The people of the United States of America were one people."



LIBERTY BELL.

42. It was evident to Washington that the British had designs against New York. As soon, therefore, as the safety of Boston was secured, he hastened to that city, and stationed the greater part of his army at Brooklyn for its defense. The forces of the enemy, exceeding thirty thousand in

¹ This is but a small part of the supposed speech. Adams and Jefferson died July 4th, 1826, just fifty years after the Declaration of Independence. Webster's eulogy, in which the supposed speech occurs, was delivered soon after their death.

² When the members were about to sign the Declaration, Mr. Hancock, the president of Congress, is reported to have said : "We must be unanimous ; there must be no pulling different way ; we must all hang together." To which Franklin replied : "Yes, we must, indeed, all hang together, or, most assuredly, we shall all hang separately."

number,¹ were being collected at Staten Island. At length,

The after days of suspense in
battle of the American camp, the
Long Island. British, commanded by Howe, crossed to Long Island, and marched in three divisions. Two of the divisions attacked the Americans in front, while the third marched round and fell on their rear. The patriots fought bravely, but without avail. Some cut their way through the ranks of the enemy, but many were killed, or taken prisoners (Aug. 27, 1776).



43. This was a sad disaster to the patriots. Its effects were seen not only in the blight it gave to the cause, in deciding the wavering to join the royal standard, and in thinning the ranks of Washington's army, but in giving form and direction to all the subsequent events of the war, and in making the war itself more defensive than it otherwise would have been. The result of the battle gave New York city to the British, and this possession they retained till the end of the war. From it they sent out expeditions against Connecticut, against posts and towns on the Hudson river, and against New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and even Virginia.

44. Favored by a fog, Washington, by a skillful movement, succeeded in getting his shattered force across the river

Retreat of to New York.² "A tradition tells how the Brit-
Washington. ish camp became aware of the march that had been stolen upon it. Near the ferry resided a lady whose hus-

¹ Many of the enemy's soldiers were hired by the king. They were called Hessians, because the most of them had been furnished, at a certain price for each person, by the landgrave of Hesse-Cassel, in Germany.

² "This extraordinary retreat of the Americans across the river to New York, which, in its silence and celerity, equaled the midnight fortifying of Bunker (Breed's) Hill, was one of the most signal achievements of the war, and redounded greatly to the reputation of Washington, who, we are told, for forty-eight hours preceding the safe extrication of his army from their perilous situation, scarcely closed his eyes, and was the greater part of the time on horseback,"—*Irving's Life of Washington*.

band, suspected of favoring the British, had been removed to the interior of New Jersey. On seeing the embarkation of the first detachment of the American army, she, out of loyalty or revenge, sent off a black servant to inform the first British officer he could find, of what was going on. The negro succeeded in passing the American sentinels, but arrived at a Hessian outpost, where, not being able to make himself understood, he was put under guard as a suspicious person. There he was kept until about daybreak, when an officer visiting the post examined him, and was astounded by his story. An alarm was at once given, and the troops were called to arms; but it was too late. The rear boats of the retreating army were halfway across the river." Washington continued his retreat northward, and at White Plains a partial engagement took place. Fort Washington, garrisoned by a large force, made a good defense, but both it and Fort Lee, on the opposite side of the Hudson, fell into the hands of the enemy; and Washington, followed by Lord Cornwallis, retreated through New Jersey and across the Delaware.

45. Before abandoning New York and while Howe's army was at Brooklyn, Washington sent Captain Nathan Hale to the British camp to obtain a knowledge of the condition of the enemy. On his return, he was captured, and taken before Howe, who, without even the form of a trial, ordered him to be hung the next morning. "Hale calmly requested that he might be furnished with writing materials and a light. He wanted, he said, to address a few lines to his parents and friends. The request was brutally refused. He asked for a Bible. This request, too, met with a coarse denial. But there was one heart near, which, for a moment, throbbed with pity for the prisoner—so young, so treated, yet so mild, so firm, so soon to die, and—alone! Moved, in spite of himself, the young lieutenant of Hale's guard interfered in his behalf, and was so far successful as to procure for him the privilege of writing.

46. With pen, ink, paper, and a light, he was thrust at night

into some desolate chamber, or grated cell, and, for awhile, was left to himself. * * * What a night to Hale ! * * * It was morning,—morning, too, of the hallowed day ; but war knows no Sabbaths. The fatal hour had come. Hale handed the letters he had written to the marshal for delivery. The marshal examined them, and, as he read, grew furious at the noble spirit which breathed in every line of the composition ; and, for the reason afterwards given by himself, tore the letters into shreds, ‘ that the rebels should never know they had a man who could die with such firmness.’ Early morning as it was, yet quite a crowd was collected around the place of execution. But in all that crowd there was not one face familiar to the prisoner, not one friend to whisper a word of consolation. With a voice, full, distinct, and slow, in words which patriotism will forever enshrine, at the very moment when the tightening cord was to crush the life from his young body forever, Hale exclaimed : ‘ I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country.’ ”

47. A deep gloom at this time pervaded all classes of the Americans. “ Thus far their army had met with nothing but defeat, retreat, sacrifice, hardship, and discouragement.”

Battle of Trenton. Many of the patriots saw no other prospect than a complete failure of their treasured scheme of liberty. But Washington, who with the remnant of his army,



had taken a position on the west side of the Delaware, was still hopeful. To strike a blow that would raise the spirits of his countrymen was now his determination. “ The opportunity came. The British delayed crossing the river, and divided their force among different posts throughout New Jersey. At Trenton they stationed a body twelve hundred strong, composed chiefly of Hessians. Washington resolved to make a sudden dash upon

this detachment. A surprise, an irresistible attack, the capture of a post with a thousand men, might work wonders in their moral effect. The soldiers with him were trusty men, twenty-four hundred of whom he proposed to lead himself in this enterprise.

48. The night of the 25th of December brought storm, snow, and sleet, but Washington was determined on the attempt. He called upon Glover's men to man the boats; and these amphibious soldiers, who had transported the army on the retreat from Long Island, were ready again to strain every nerve for the plans of their chief. It was a long, tedious night as they pushed across the Delaware, through floating ice and chilling spray, and it was not till four o'clock in the morning that the force was ready to take up the march on the Jersey side. Trenton was nine miles distant; and not to be reached before daylight. To surprise it was supposed to be out of the question, but a return was not to be thought of. It began to hail and snow as the troops commenced their march, and increased in violence as they advanced, the storm driving the sleet in their faces. At eight o'clock the enemy's outposts were reached. Our troops, surprising their outguards, dashed after them 'pell-mell' into Trenton, gave the enemy no time to form, cleared the streets with cannon and howitzers 'in the twinkling of an eye,' dislodged the Hessians from the houses, drove them beyond into a plain, surrounded them, and finally compelled them to surrender. A fine and remarkable exploit! The turning-point of the campaign—if not, indeed, the decisive stroke of the war." "That victory," writes Bancroft, "turned the shadow of death into the morning (Dec. 26, 1776)." ¹

49. This bold and successful stroke went far to restore confidence, but Washington's army at this time scarcely ex-

¹ Nearly a thousand prisoners were taken. Generals Greene, Sullivan, and Colonel Stark distinguished themselves in the battle. Rahl, the Hessian commander, mortally wounded, was conveyed to the house of a Quaker family, where Washington and Greene visited the dying man.

ceeded five thousand men. With this meager force he was soon confronted at Trenton by a large body of troops of Princeton. under Cornwallis. Escape seemed impossible, for the river was filled with floating ice ; and to risk a battle with a force so much superior, seemed full of peril. Knowing that several regiments of the enemy were at Princeton to join Cornwallis, he quickly broke up his camp during the night, leaving the fires burning so as to deceive the British, and rapidly marched towards that place. At sunrise, the van of his forces met, near Princeton, the British regiments already on the march. At first the American militia gave way ; but Washington, coming up with a select corps, turned the tide of battle and routed the enemy. The British loss was severe : that of the Americans, though not so great, included one of their best officers, the brave General Mercer (Jan. 3, 1777). After this victory, Washington retired to the heights of Morristown, where he took up his quarters for the rest of the winter.

50. Among the men of Washington's army, "there was one, a young and gallant stranger, who had left the blushing vine-hills of his delightful France. The people whom he came to succor were not his people : he knew them only in the melancholy story of their wrongs. He was no mercenary wretch, striving for the spoil of the vanquished : the palace acknowledged him for its lord, and the valleys yielded him their increase. He was no nameless man, staking life for reputation : he ranked among nobles, and looked unawed upon kings. He was no friendless outcast, seeking for a grave to hide his cold heart : he was girdled by the companions of his childhood, his kinsmen were about him, his wife was before him. Yet, from all these he turned away and came. Like a lofty tree, that shakes down its green glories to battle with the winter's storm, he flung aside the trappings of place and pride, to crusade for Freedom, in Freedom's holy land. He came ; but not in the day of successful rebellion ; not when the

Lafayette
joins the
Americans.

new-risen sun of Independence had burst the cloud of time, and careered to its place in the heavens. He came when darkness curtained the hills, and the tempest was abroad in its anger ; when the plow stood still in the field of promise, and briers cumbered the garden of beauty ; when fathers were dying, and mothers were weeping over them ; when the wife was binding up the gashed bosom of her husband, and the maiden was wiping the death-damp from the brow of her lover. He came when the brave began to fear the power of man, and the pious to doubt the favor of God. It was then that this one joined the ranks of a revolted people."

51. In vain did Howe, on the opening of Spring, strive to draw Washington into a general engagement. All his manœuvres were frustrated by the cautious skill and watchful prudence of the American commander. On this account Washington was called the American *Expedition against Philadelphia.* Fa'-bi-us, from the resemblance of his policy to that of the celebrated Roman general, who, contending with Hannibal, avoided engagements, and harassed him by continued delay. Howe, baffled in his attempts, and "aware of the madness of trying to march to the Delaware against Philadelphia, through a hostile country, with such force on his rear," withdrew his troops to Staten Island. Thence, embarking on board the fleet of his brother, Lord Howe, he sailed to the Chesapeake and landed at the head of the bay. The destination of the fleet being unknown to Washington, he remained for several days in painful uncertainty about it. When, at length, the mystery was solved, he marched to the Brandywine, determined to make a stand for the defense of Philadelphia.

52. Here, at Chad's Ford, Brandywine creek, a battle was fought (Sept. 11) ; but the superior numbers of the enemy, aided by a stratagem secretly conducted, gave them the victory. A large part of their army made a circuit of several miles, crossed the creek above the ford, and while the Americans were attacked in front, marched round in the

rear as at the battle of Long Island. The patriots were routed, notwithstanding the efforts and valor of their



officers, among whom were Lafayette and Pulaski.¹ The British soon after entered Philadelphia, in spite of the exertions of Washington to save it;² but the greater part of their troops were quartered in and about the village of Germantown—then a suburb of Philadelphia, now a part of the city,—to guard their new possession. Howe's expedi-

tion had been rewarded with success and the British were elated; but the patriots saw that if Howe meant to hold Philadelphia he had not force enough to do much else. Said Franklin, who had been sent to France to solicit aid for the Americans, and who was at Paris when the news of the disaster reached him: "It is not General Howe that has taken Philadelphia, it is Philadelphia that has taken General Howe."

53. So little were the Americans disheartened by their late reverses that in a few days Washington resolved to attack the enemy at Germantown. Accordingly, at sunrise, on the 4th of October, the English were unexpectedly greeted by a charge from a strong force. It was a complete surprise; and, at first, the success was complete.

¹ Early in 1776, Congress sent Silas Deane to France, to solicit aid. He was afterwards joined by Franklin and Arthur Lee. While France could at that time give no assistance openly to the Americans, without incurring the hostility of Great Britain, she secretly sent them supplies of money, arms, provisions, and clothing. The Count Pulaski was a distinguished Polish nobleman, who had previously joined the American army as a volunteer soldier in the cause of liberty.

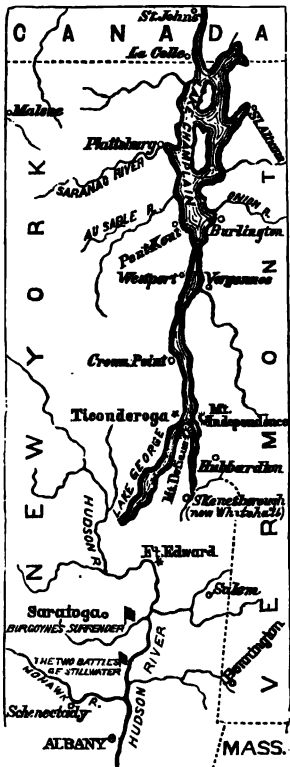
² While the British were on their march to Philadelphia, Washington gave pursuit. The two armies met, and were on the point of engaging when a violent rain-storm prevented. Four days after, General Wayne, who had been sent by Washington to capture the enemy's baggage train, was surprised at Paoli, by a midnight attack, and defeated with great loss (Sept. 20.).

But a dense fog, which had rendered the surprise possible, finally frustrated the plans of Washington, who, seeing that the day was lost, ordered a retreat. During the following month the forts on the Delaware surrendered to the British, though not till after the assailants had suffered a severe repulse ; and thus the approaches to Philadelphia were free to Lord Howe's fleet.

54. "During the winter of 1777-8, Washington went into winter quarters at Valley Forge. What a terrible time it was for the hopes of America ! Women who had once melted their pewter plates into bullets could not do it a second time. Here, within a day's march of ^{The} ~~the~~ enemy's headquarters, there were not twelve ^{army at} ~~thousand~~ ^{Valley Forge.} thousand soldiers. That winter they lay on the ground. So scarce were blankets that many were forced to sit up all night by their fires. At one time, more than a thousand soldiers had not a shoe to their feet. We could trace their march by the blood which their naked feet left in the ice."

55. "Out of the cold white snow rose the leafless forests, dark and spectral ; and the wind swept in fierce gusts down the valley, or sighed and moaned around the thatched roofs of the huts. From the huts themselves came few signs of life, but the smoke that swayed to and fro over the chimneys at the will of the blast, and ^{The} ~~the~~ shivering sentinels at the officers' doors, and ^{dark hour} ~~at~~ ^{at} ~~Valley Forge.~~ now and then, as you passed along, a half-naked soldier peering from a door, and muttering, in an ominous undertone, 'No bread, no soldier.' If you ventured within, hungry nakedness met you on the threshold. In the streets, you would meet parties of soldiers yoked together to little carriages of their own contriving, and dragging their wood and provisions from the storehouse to their huts. . . . There were regular parades, too, at guard-mounting ; and sometimes grand parades, in which you would see men half naked holding their rusty firelocks with hands stiffened with cold, and officers shielding themselves from the cold in a kind of dressing-gown made out of an old blanket or faded bed-quilt."

56. Meanwhile, stirring events had occurred in the north. With the design of separating New England from the rest of the **Burgoyne's** Union, by taking possession of Lake Champlain and the valley of the Hudson, General Burgoyne (*bur-goin'*), commanding an army of ten thousand British and German troops, Canadians and Indians, had moved from Canada and invaded New York. Having captured two forts on Lake Champlain—Crown Point and Ticonderoga¹—he advanced southward; but his march was slow and difficult, for General Schuyler, the commander of the American forces, had obstructed his way by destroying the bridges and felling immense trees across the roads. Burgoyne had previously sent Colonel St. Leger against Fort Schuyler, formerly called Fort Stanwix, on the Mohawk. Finding the fort resolutely defended by Colonel Gansevoort, St. Leger, with his motley force of royalists and Indians, commenced a siege. Two days later, General Herkimer, while advancing to the relief of the place with a body of militia, fell into an ambushcade at O-ris'-ka-ny, was defeated, and mortally wounded.

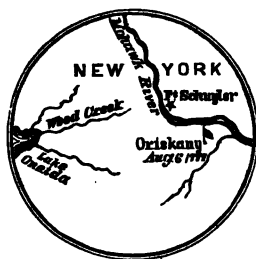


General St. Clair was in command at Ticonderoga. He had determined upon a resolute defense, but discovering to his dismay, that the British had erected batteries on Mount Defiance, a rocky height commanding the fort, he made a hasty retreat. His army crossed over to Vermont, but at Hubbardton was overtaken and routed. The ammunition and stores, which had been sent by water, were also overtaken and were destroyed.

Schuyler, upon hearing that Gansevoort was so closely pressed, sent a detachment under Arnold to his aid.

57. "Conscious of the smallness of his force Arnold resorted to stratagem, sending emissaries ahead to spread exaggerated reports of the number of his troops, so as to work on the fears of the enemy's Indian allies, and induce them to desert. The most important of

**Arnold's
stratagem to
relieve
Fort Schuyler.**



these emissaries was an eccentric half-witted fellow, known throughout the country as a rank tory. He had been convicted as a spy, and only spared from the halter on condition that he would go into St. Leger's camp, and spread alarming reports among the Indians, by whom he was well known. To insure

a faithful discharge of his mission, Arnold detained his brother as a hostage. All this while St. Leger was pressing the siege, but his Indian allies were growing sullen and intractable. This slow kind of warfare, this war with the spade, they were unaccustomed to, and they by no means relished it. They had been led to expect easy times, little fighting, many scalps, and much plunder.

58. At this juncture, scouts brought word that a force one thousand strong was marching to the relief of the fort. Rumors soon stole into the camp doubling the number of the approaching enemy. Burgoyne's whole army was said to have been defeated. Lastly came the half-witted fellow, with his coat full of bullet holes, giving out that he had escaped from the hands of the Americans, and been fired upon by them. His story was believed, for his wounded coat corroborated it, and he was known to be a royalist. Mingling among his old acquaintances, the Indians, he assured them that the Americans were close at hand, and 'numerous as the leaves on the trees.' Arnold's stratagem succeeded. The Indians, fickle as the wind, began to desert. In a little while two

hundred decamped, and the rest threatened to do so likewise, unless St. Leger retreated. The unfortunate colonel found too late what little reliance was to be placed upon Indian allies. He was at length obliged to decamp in such hurry and confusion that he left his tents standing; and his artillery, with most of his baggage, ammunition, and stores, fell into the hands of the Americans."

59. When Burgoyne arrived at Fort Edward, finding himself in want of supplies, he sent Colonel Baum (*bowm*) to seize a quantity which the Americans had collected at Bennington. Baum was met by the New Hampshire militia, under General Stark. As Stark saw the enemy's lines forming for battle, he shouted to his "Green Mountain Boys:" "There are the red-coats! Before night they must be ours, or Molly Stark will be a widow." He was successful; and, on the same day, with Seth Warner's regiment of Vermonters that had timely come to his aid, he was again victorious, defeating a detachment that had been sent to reinforce Baum (Aug. 16).

60. Every day the Indians brought scalps to Burgoyne's camp.¹ One day they displayed twenty, and "their activity was commended." This

**The
foes of
the patriots.** leads us to ask: against whom were the patriots, in their heroic struggle for liberty, contending? The answer is: not only against the regular troops of



FLAG OF THE UNITED STATES,
ADOPTED IN JUNE, 1777.²

¹ The murder of Jane McCrea excited wide-spread horror. This young lady, it appears, had engaged her hand in marriage to a refugee named Jones, who was with Burgoyne. Anxious to possess himself of his bride, he sent a small party of Indians to bring her to him. On her way the Indians quarrelled, when one of them struck her down with his hatchet. "Tradition reports that the Indians divided her scalp, and that each party carried half of it to the agonized lover."

² *The National Flag.* No flag was adopted for the United States before

England, but against more than twenty thousand hired troops from Germany ; against thousands of vindictive tories—men of American birth who adhered to the king's cause,—and, what was far worse, against hordes of savages, whose ferocity, said Edmund Burke, “ exceeded the ferocity of all barbarians mentioned in history.”

61. But the atrocities of the savages aroused into terrible earnestness the men of New Hampshire, Vermont, and the western part of Massachusetts ; and they flocked, each with his musket, and with his powder horn slung **Burgoyne's situation.** around his shoulders, to the American head-quarters. Washington, too, though needing every man of his force to watch and thwart Howe, sent, from his best troops, five hundred riflemen under Colonel Morgan ; and soon General Gates, who had succeeded Schuyler, found himself at the head of a large army, animated with one purpose.

62. On the 19th of September the great conflict between the two armies began. In the struggle of that day, known as the first battle of Stillwater, Arnold did brave service. The contest was severe, and was only ended when **Surrender of Burgoyne.** darkness ended it. Both parties claimed the victory ; but, though the British remained on the field of battle, their progress towards Albany had received a fatal check. For two weeks the armies confronted each other, Burgoyne hoping all the time to receive aid from Clinton, who was in command at New York. Finding, at last, that he must either fight or surrender, he made an effort to cut his way through the American lines. This brought on the second battle of Stillwater, sometimes called the battle of Saratoga, in which Burgoyne, after the most determined exertions, was compelled to fall back (Oct. 7). Ten days after, finding himself completely surrounded by the patriots,

June, 1777, consequently, up to that time the Americans had not been fighting under a common banner. During the first months of the war, each colony or state had its own flag. At first, thirteen stars were arranged in a circle to express the union of the states. The flag has now (1879) thirty-eight stars and thirteen stripes. Why?

and being without provisions for his half-starved army, he was compelled to surrender. (Oct. 17, 1777).¹

63. Such a decided victory inspired the patriots with the conviction that their cause would ultimately triumph. When the news reached France, "the effect was thrilling, electric.

Effects
of the
surrender.



DR. FRANKLIN.

All Paris was thrown into transports of joy." The government of that country decided openly to take the part of the struggling patriots. Treaties,

which had previously been considered, were soon made, by which France acknowledged the independence of the United States, and agreed to aid them in their war with Great Britain (Feb. 1778). This important event was brought about, mainly, through the efforts and address of an old man, who, "with white stockings, spectacles on his nose, a round white hat under his arm, and thin gray hair," had again and again appeared at the

French court, and who was affectionately known by all the French people by the simple title of Dr. Franklin.

64. "Free from the illusions of poetic natures, Franklin loved truth for its own sake, and looked upon things just as they were. As a consequence, he had no eloquence but that of clearness. He computed that the inheritor of a

Franklin
at the
French court.

noble title in the ninth generation represents at most but the five hundred and twelfth part of the ancestor. In regard to money he was frugal that he might be independent, and that he might be generous. He owed good

¹ In this second battle of Stillwater, Arnold, though holding no command, again distinguished himself, and was severely wounded. The number of men, not including the sick and wounded, of Burgoyne's army that surrendered was five thousand seven hundred and ninety-one. The Americans also acquired a large number of cannon and muskets. While Burgoyne was expecting aid from Clinton, that officer captured forts Clinton and Montgomery, on the Hudson river, and Kingston was burnt.

health to his exemplary temperance. Habitually gay, employment was his resource against weariness and sorrow ; and contentment came from his superiority to ambition, interest, or vanity. There was about him more of moral greatness than appeared on the surface ; and while he made no boast of unselfish benevolence, there never lived a man who would have met martyrdom in the course of duty more surely or more unmoved.

65. The official conduct of Franklin and his intercourse with persons of highest rank were marked by the most delicate propriety, as well as by perfect self-respect. His charm was simplicity, which gave grace to his style and ease to his manners. No life-long courtier could have been more free from vulgarity ; no diplomatist more true to his position as minister of a republic ; no laborer more consistent with his former life as a working-man ; and thus he won respect and love from all. When a celebrated cause was to be heard before the Parliament of Paris, the throng which filled the house and its approaches opened a way on his appearance, and he passed through to the seat reserved for him amidst the acclamations of the people. At the opera, at the theatres, similar honors were paid him. At the Academy he was addressed by its president as the man who had wrenched the thunderbolt from the cloud, the sceptre from tyrants ; and both these ideas were of a nature to pass easily into the common mind. Whatever favor Franklin met in society, whatever honor he received from the Academy, whatever respect he gained as a man of science, whatever distinction came to him through the good-will of the people, whatever fame he acquired throughout Europe, he turned all to account for the good of his country."

66. The loss of Burgoyne's army and America's alliance with France, alarmed the British government. Bills were passed by Parliament, having for their object the winning back to royalty " the revolted colonies ;" and Howe's army,—in danger of being entrapped

Evacuation
of
Philadelphia.

by a French fleet, under D'Estaing (*des-tang'*), on the eve of sailing for the Delaware, to co-operate with Washington's forces,—was ordered to leave Philadelphia. That city was accordingly abandoned ;¹ but the retreating army, commanded by Clinton, Howe's successor, while crossing New Jersey, was overtaken by Washington, at Monmouth.

67. General Lee, who led the advance, was directed to make an attack upon the enemy's line ; but, instead of doing so, he commenced a retreat. Washington coming up,

**Battle of
Monmouth.**

severely reprimanded him on the spot,² and again ordered him to rally his men and advance. This was done, and the battle continued until nightfall, but without a decisive result (June, 1778). The Americans slept on their arms, intending to renew the contest early the following morning. "Washington lay on his cloak at the foot of a tree, with Lafayette beside him, talking over the strange conduct of Lee, whose disorderly retreat had come so near being fatal to the army. What opinions he gave on the subject, in the course of his conversation, the marquis does not tell us : after it was ended he wrapped himself in his cloak, and slept among his soldiers. At daybreak the drums beat. The troops roused themselves from their heavy sleep and prepared for action ; but, to their surprise, the enemy had disappeared. There was a deserted camp, in which were found four officers and about forty privates, too severely wounded to be conveyed away by the retreating army." Washington did not continue the pursuit. "The distance to which the enemy must

¹ After the evacuation of Philadelphia, General Joseph Reed, a member of Congress, was approached by a lady acting under the direction of a British agent named Johnstone, and offered £10,000 and any colonial office in his Majesty's gift, if he would exert his influence to restore a union of the two countries. Filled with indignation, Reed replied, "*I am not worth purchasing, but, such as I am, the king of Great Britain is not rich enough to do it.*"

² Lee's pride having been wounded by the rebuke which he had received on the field of battle, he sent two disrespectful letters to Washington. He was therefore tried by court-martial, and suspended from his command for a year. He never rejoined the army ; but, just before the close of the war, died at Philadelphia.

by this time have attained, the extreme heat of the weather, and the fatigued condition of his troops," deterred him.¹

68. Among the saddest events of the year 1778 was the massacre at Wy-o'-ming, Pennsylvania. In July a band of Tories and Indians entered that beautiful valley, which was almost defenseless, as most of the able-bodied men had joined the patriot army, and with fire and sword ravaged and desolated every settlement. Massacre
of
Wyoming.

"The closing scene of that memorable drama was in terrible keeping with the bloody acts which had preceded."² "The fair fields of Wyoming presented a melancholy spectacle on the morning of the 4th. The sun arose upon the carcasses of the dead—not only dead but horribly mangled—strewn over the plain. A few stragglers had at first taken refuge in Fort Forty (near Wilkes'-bar-re), and, by the morning light, all who had not been slain, or who had not betaken themselves to the mountains, had collected within the fort, before which Colonel John Butler, with his motley forces, appeared at an early hour, and demanded a surrender. * * *

69. The little fort, being surrounded by a cloud of Indians and Tories and having no means of defense, Colonel Dennison, now in command, yielded to the force of circumstances, and the importunities of the women and children, and entered into articles of capitulation. By these it was mutually

¹ The hopes of the Americans in regard to the French fleet were disappointed. D'Estaing, "was unfortunate in the length of his voyage. Had he arrived in ordinary time, he might have entrapped Lord Howe's squadron in the river, and, by co-operating with Washington, compelled the British army to surrender." A plan had also been formed to drive the British from Newport, R. I. General Sullivan, who was to act with D'Estaing, gained a position on the island where the city is located, but the French fleet, after an encounter with the enemy's fleet, sailed to Boston. Sullivan being thus deserted, and also threatened by a greatly superior force, was obliged to withdraw to the mainland (Aug. and Sept., 1778).

² A battle took place, July 3d, between a large force of Tories and Indians, commanded by Colonel John Butler, and a hastily organized force of patriotic Americans, commanded by Colonel Zebulon Butler. The Americans were defeated with horrible slaughter, and many of those who were made prisoners were put to death by fiendish torture.

agreed that the inhabitants of the settlements should lay down their arms, the fort be demolished, and the stores be delivered to the conquerors. The inhabitants of the settlements were to be permitted to occupy their farms peaceably. But the last-mentioned stipulation was entirely unheeded by the Indians, who were not, and perhaps could not be, restrained from the work of rapine and plunder. The surrender had no sooner taken place than the savages and some tory fiends spread through the valley. Every house not belonging to a loyalist was plundered and then laid in ashes. The greater part of the inhabitants not engaged in the battle, men, women, and children, had fled to the mountains; and as the work of destruction was re-commenced, many others followed the example. The village of Wilkesbarre, consisting of twenty-three houses, was burnt, and women and children perished in the dismal swamp to which they had sought refuge."¹

70. Toward the close of the year Clinton sent a force to invade Georgia. Savannah was attacked, and being defended by only a small force, was captured (Dec. 29).

Events in the South. Other disasters followed, until Georgia was entirely in the possession of the British.² Some months later, General Lincoln, who was in command of the patriot forces at the South, was defeated near

¹ In November of the same year, a party of tories and Indians fell upon the settlement of Cherry Valley, New York, and killed or carried into captivity many of the settlers. To punish the Indians, General Sullivan, during the following summer, entered the region near the headwaters of the Susquehanna and Genesee rivers. At Newtown, now Elmira, he routed a body of the enemy in a fierce conflict known as the "Battle of Chemung" (Aug. 29th, 1779); and then destroyed forty Indian villages. The murderous incursions of the savages were afterward less frequent.

² Colonel Clark, in the service of Virginia, conducted an expedition, which, says Bancroft, "for the valor of the actors, their fidelity to one another, the seeming feebleness of their means, and the great result of their hardihood remains forever memorable in the history of the world." Commanding a small body of men, on rafts he floated down the Ohio as far as the present State of Indiana, then captured Kaskaskia, whence, in the dead of winter, his little party of one hundred and thirty men marched a distance of 280 miles, much of the time up to their breasts in

Charleston ; he, however, in co-operation with the French fleet under D'Estaing, endeavored to recover Savannah. After a siege of about three weeks, an assault was made ; but the assailants were repulsed with heavy loss. Among those who fell was the gallant Count Pulaski (Oct. 9, 1779).

71. Stony Point projects into the Hudson about forty miles from the city of New York. It had been taken possession of by the British, who strongly fortified it ; but Washington, desiring to recover the post, planned an attack to be conducted by General Anthony Wayne, "the Mad Anthony," so called from his daring valor. **Storming of Stony Point.** At midnight, July 15th, the Americans, in two columns, forced their way into the fort from opposite sides, and, meeting in the centre of the works, the garrison surrendered. This "stands out in high relief, as one of the most brilliant achievements of the war. The Americans had effected it without firing a musket."

72. A wonderful cruise, crowned by a brilliant victory, was made by Paul Jones, "a tough, valiant, indomitable, audacious hero, with foppish ways



PAUL JONES.

and costume, and romantic, fantastic

courtesy and enthusiasm. Like all the greatest fighters, he performed his immortal exploits while he was young : he was but thirty when he did his greatest day's work." He was a Scot by birth, in the service of the United States. With a small squadron, for which he was mainly indebted to the efforts of

Dr. Franklin, he sailed from France ; and, after cruising

water, and captured Vincennes (1778-9). "Except for George Rogers Clark and his victories, the North-west would have been to-day a British Canadian colony."

along the eastern coast of Scotland and England, effecting the destruction of several ships and alarming every settlement, he encountered two British frigates that were convoying a merchant fleet. One of the most desperate naval engagements recorded in the annals of naval warfare ensued. The *Bon Homme (hom)* Richard, Jones's flag-ship, coming in contact with one of the frigates, Jones lashed the two vessels together; and there were moments when both were on fire. The contest lasted from seven in the evening till ten at night, when the frigates struck their flags. Finding that his own ship was sinking, Jones transferred himself and crew to one of the prizes (Sept. 1779).

73. The principal military operations of 1780 were carried on in the Carolinas. Clinton appeared before Charleston, and laid siege to the city. After holding out forty days, its brave defender, General Lincoln, was obliged to surrender the place; and he and his army became prisoners of war (May 12).¹ Three expeditions, sent by Clinton into the interior of South Carolina, were completely successful; and the British general at last felt convinced that the province was thoroughly subdued.

74. Clinton was, however, greatly mistaken. The brave partisan leaders, Marion, "The Swamp Fox;" Sumter, "The South Carolina Game Cock;" and Pickens, "the Puritan in religion, the patriot in thought and deed," gathered around them the scattered patriots, and by their daring ex-

¹ When, in 1781, the fortunes of the British at the South began to decline, their commander, Rawdon, called upon all persons who had given in their adhesion to the royal cause to repair at once to his standard. Among the persons so called was Colonel Isaac Hayne, a distinguished patriot of South Carolina, who had been assured, when he took the oath of adherence at the fall of Charleston (May 12th, 1780), that he would never be required to take up arms against his countrymen. Believing this call to be in violation of the agreement, and being thus compelled to assume the sword either for or against the patriots, he did not hesitate to choose the former. At the head of a troop of horse he gained some advantages, but, being surprised and captured, he was taken to Charleston, briefly examined, and sentenced to be hung; and, though the citizens petitioned for his pardon, the sentence was duly executed (1781).

plots kept alive the spirit of freedom. "These leaders were always engaged in breaking up the smaller posts, or in repair-



GENERAL MARION.

ing losses sustained by action. The troops which followed their fortunes, on their own or their friends' horses, were armed with rifles, in the use of which they had become expert; a small portion only, who acted as cavalry, being provided with sabres. When they approached an enemy, they dismounted, leaving their horses in some hidden spot. Victorious or

Marion,
Sumter,
and Pickens.

vanquished, they flew to their horses, and thus improved victory or secured retreat.

75. Their marches were long and toilsome, and they seldom partook of food more than once a day. Their combats were like those of the Parthians, sudden and fierce, their decisions speedy, and all their after measures equally prompt. With alternate fortunes they persevered to the last, and greatly contributed to that success which was the first object of their efforts." On one occasion, a British officer was conducted to Marion's camp on official business, and was politely invited to dinner. The whole fare proved to be only roasted sweet potatoes, served on pieces of bark. "And is this your usual mode of living?" exclaimed the officer. "It is," said Marion; "and we are content with it, and ask no pay besides." The officer returned feeling that it was of little use to fight against such men.

76. Lincoln's surrender at Charleston left the Americans without a commander-in-chief of their southern department. To Gates, the victor at Saratoga, Congress speedily assigned that important command, hoping that he would be able to check the British in their conquest of the South. From his camp, a few miles from Camden, he began a march to attack Cornwallis, at that city, when, at the

Battle
of Camden.

same time, by a singular coincidence, Cornwallis set his troops in motion to attack Gates's camp. The vanguards of the two armies met at Sanders creek, two hours after midnight (Aug. 16). "Both sides paused, and drawing back, waited with throbbing hearts to see what daylight might reveal. At break of day the battle began. The first scene was soon ended. Unable to stand the fierce onset of Cornwallis's veterans, the militia broke and fled." The regulars, however, commanded by the Baron de Kalb, a German, and "the ablest European officer who had come over to assist the Americans," were not so easily vanquished.

77. "Gathering all his forces around him, Kalb led them to the charge. His sword was stained deepest, his battle-cry rang clearest; there was triumph in the keen flash of his eye, if not the victor's triumph, the triumph of duty done. Three times he led his willing men to the charge. Three times they were forced back by superior numbers. For



BARON DE KALB.

numbers began to tell. His horse was shot under him. His head was laid open by a sabre stroke. Wound followed wound, but he held his ground desperately. At last, Cornwallis, concentrating his strength in a final charge, came on. Kalb fell, bleeding from eleven wounds. 'Spare the Baron de Kalb,' cried his adjutant, vainly throwing himself upon his body and trying to shield it with his own from the thirsty bayonets. He spoke to hearts hardened by the fierce spirit of battle. * * For three days Kalb's strong frame struggled with death. Soldier to the last, his thoughts were with the brave men who had faced the enemy so gallantly at his command, and just before he expired he charged his faithful adjutant to give them his 'thanks for their valor, and bid them an affectionate farewell.' "

78. On the evacuation of Philadelphia by the British, Arnold was placed in command at that city. Here he governed

gain was made ; but being unable to return to New York by water, as had been previously arranged, he was obliged to cross the river and proceed by land.

80. "Andre, coming to a place where a small stream crossed the road and ran into a woody dell, a man stepped out from the trees, levelled a musket and brought him to a stand, while two other men, similarly armed, showed themselves prepared to second their comrade.¹ The man who had first stepped out wore a refugee uniform. At sight of it Andre's heart leapt, and he felt himself secure. Losing all caution, he exclaimed eagerly : 'Gentlemen, I hope you belong to our party?' 'What party?' was asked. 'The lower party,' said Andre. 'We do,' was the reply. All reserve was now at an end. Andre declared himself to be a British officer ; that he had been up the country on particular business, and must not be detained a single moment. He drew out his watch as he spoke. It was a gold one, and served to prove to them that he was what he represented himself, gold watches being seldom worn in those days, excepting by persons of consequence. To his consternation, the supposed refugee now avowed himself and his companions to be Americans, and told Andre he was their prisoner !

81. Andre was astounded at finding into what hands he had fallen ; and how he had betrayed himself by his heedless avowal. Promptly, however, recovering his self-possession, he endeavored to pass off his previous account of himself as a mere subterfuge. 'A man must do anything,' said he laughingly, 'to get along.' He now declared himself to be a Continental officer, going down to Dobbs Ferry to get information from below ; so saying he drew forth and showed them the pass which had been furnished him by Arnold. This, in the first instance, would have been sufficient ; but his unwary tongue had ruined him. The suspicions of his captors were completely roused. Seizing the bridle of his

¹ The names of these three patriots were John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wart.

horse, they ordered him to dismount. He warned them that he was on urgent business for the general, and that they would get themselves into trouble should they detain him. 'We care not for that,' was the reply, as they led him among the thickets, on the border of the brook. Paulding asked whether he had any letters about him. He answered, no. They proceeded to search him.

82. They obliged him to take off his coat and vest, and found on him eighty dollars in Continental money, but nothing to warrant suspicion of any thing sinister, and were disposed to let him proceed, when Paulding exclaimed: 'Boys, I am not satisfied—his boots must come off.' At this Andre changed color. His boots, he said, came off with difficulty, and he begged he might not be subjected to the inconvenience and delay. His remonstrances were in vain. He was obliged to sit down. His boots were drawn off and the concealed papers discovered. Hastily scanning them, Paulding exclaimed, 'My God! he is a spy!' Paulding demanded of Andre where he had gotten these papers. 'Of a man at Pine's Bridge, a stranger to me,' was the reply. While dressing himself, Andre endeavored to ransom himself from his captors, rising from one offer to another. He would give any sum of money, if they would let him go. He would give his horse, saddle, bridle, and one hundred guineas; but the patriots were incorruptible. They took him to the nearest military station, the commander of which, having no suspicion of Arnold, at once notified him of the arrest. The traitor, panic-stricken, fled, and "shrinking at the sight of the flag it had been his glory to defend," escaped by means of the sloop-of-war which had carried Andre up the river.

83. Andre was conveyed to Tappan. On the way, he put questions to the officer who had charge of the escort, respecting the result of his capture. The officer was silent, but being urged to reply, said: "I had a much-loved Fate
classmate in Yale College, by the name of Nathan of Andre.
Hale, who entered the army in 1775. Immediately after the

battle of Long Island, General Washington wanted information respecting the strength, position, and probable movements of the enemy. Captain Hale tendered his services, went over to Brooklyn, and was taken on his return just as he was passing the outposts of the enemy. Said I with emphasis, Do you remember the sequel?" "Yés," said Andre. "He was hanged as a spy! But you surely do not consider his case and mine alike?" "Yes, precisely similar; and similar will be your fate."

84. Andre was tried by a court composed of Generals Greene, Lafayette, Stark, and other officers, found guilty, and condemned to be hung as a spy. He was led forth to die. The cart on which he stood moved away, and he was no longer in the land of the living. Forty years afterward his remains were taken to England, and, though "such honor belongs to other enterprises and deeds," were laid in Westminster Abbey beneath a costly monument.¹

85. Gates's defeat near Camden "withered the laurels which he had snatched at Saratoga," and he was superseded in the command of the southern department by General Greene, who, says Hawthorne, was "a Quaker and a blacksmith, and the best soldier, except Washington, in the army." Separating his forces into two divisions, Greene sent one, under Morgan, to repress the ravages of the British and tories in



GENERAL GREENE.

¹ "Arnold was made brigadier-general in the British service, and put on an official level with honorable men who scorned to associate with the traitor. What golden reward he was to have received had his treason been successful is not known; but six thousand three hundred and fifteen pounds sterling were paid to him, as a compensation for losses which he pretended to have suffered in going over to the enemies of his country."—*Irving*.

South Carolina. The successes of Morgan impelled Cornwallis to send Tarleton to intercept him ; but at the Cowpens, where the Americans made a stand, the British were completely routed, and " Morgan won the most extraordinary victory of the war (Jan. 17, 1781)."

86. Hearing of the disaster to Tarleton, Cornwallis started in pursuit of Morgan, who, anticipating the enemy's movement, had hurried off with his prisoners and spoils. " Morgan succeeded in reaching the Catawba and crossing it just two hours before those in pursuit of him reached its banks. A heavy rain came on and fell all night, and by daybreak the river was so swollen as to be impassable." Here Greene came to the aid of Morgan, and, by skillful maneuvering, reached the fords of the Dan, and crossed the river as the British appeared on the opposite bank. Cornwallis then gave up the pursuit ; but Greene recrossed the Dan and advanced to Guilford (*ghil-ford*) Court House. There he was attacked by Cornwallis (March 15) and forced to retreat ; but the British suffered so severely in the battle that the result was almost as good as a victory to the Americans. Cornwallis " could not hold the ground he had so bravely won, and was obliged to retreat from the scene of triumph."

Cornwallis
pursues
Morgan.

Battle
of Guilford
Court House.

87. Greene now boldly advanced into South Carolina, while Cornwallis, with a portion of his forces, moved northward into Virginia. At Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden, Greene was attacked by Lord Rawdon, and defeated ; but the battle was so stoutly contested by Greene that the enemy were too much cut up to make any use of their victory (April 25). Being obliged to abandon Camden, the British set it on fire. Few posts now remained in the possession of the British ; for the South Carolina partisan leaders had kept up a harassing warfare against them. To make this more effective, Greene had detached Colonel Henry Lee with a small body of troops, which was called " Lee's Legion." The last battle in the South was fought at Eutaw Springs (Sept. 8). It was a desperate conflict ; but the result

Battle
of Eutaw
Springs.

was so doubtful that both parties claimed the victory. Throughout this campaign, Greene had shown splendid ability as a general, although he had met with no positive success. To use his own language, he would "fight, get beaten, and fight again."

88. After his treason Arnold was as active in the service of the king as he had previously been in that of his country. He endeavored to do his countrymen all the harm he could. In

**Arnold's
expedition
against
Virginia.**

command of a force of British and refugee troops, and boasting that he would give the Americans a blow "that would make the whole continent shake," he sailed up the James river, and at Richmond set fire to stores, workshops, and other buildings. His work of destruction being completed at that place, he descended the river, making landings from time to time, to burn, plunder, and destroy (1781). It is related that, to one of the prisoners captured by the British, Arnold put the question: "If the Americans should catch me, what would they do with me?" The prompt reply was: "They would cut off your leg that was wounded at Saratoga and bury it with the honors of war, but the rest of you they would hang."

89. The closing event of the war was now at hand. Washington, having the aid of a French army under Rochambeau (*ro-sham-bo'*), had threatened New York; but hearing that

**Siege
of Yorktown.** a French fleet, under De Grasse (*grass*), had arrived in the Chesapeake, he suddenly changed his plan, and proceeded rapidly to Yorktown, where Cornwallis had taken position. It was too late for Clinton to intercept the march of the Americans;¹ and the British fleet had been

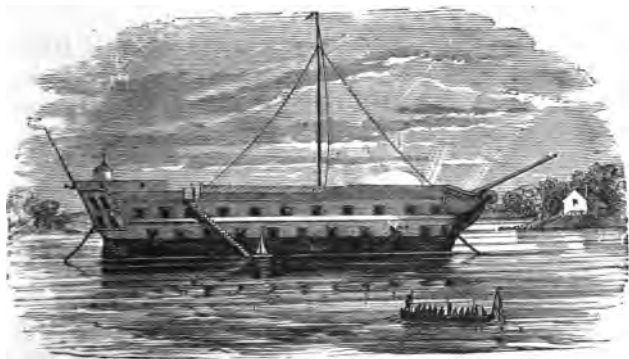


¹ When Clinton found it was too late to send troops to Jamestown for the relief of Cornwallis, he undertook to recall Washington by sending Arnold, who was then in New York, against Connecticut. Arnold plundered and burned New London; and Colonel Eyre (*ire*), his associate officer, having taken Fort Griswold, barbarously massacred half of the garrison after they had surrendered. Colonel Ledyard, the American commandant, was delivering up his sword, when a tory officer, seizing it, plunged it into his breast, killing him on the spot (Sept. 6th).

foiled by De Grasse. Cornwallis, attacked by sea and land, was therefore compelled to surrender his whole army prisoners of war. (Oct. 19.)

90. "At about twelve o'clock, the combined army was drawn up in two lines, more than a mile in length—the Americans on the right side of the road, the French on the left. Washington, mounted on a noble steed and attended by his staff, was in front of the former ; the Count de Rochambeau and his suite were in front of the latter. The French troops, in complete uniform and well equipped, made a brilliant appearance, and had

Surrender
of
Cornwallis.



THE JERSEY PRISON-SHIP.¹

marched to the ground with a band of music playing, which was a novelty in the American service. The concourse of spectators from the country seemed equal in number to the military, yet silence and order prevailed. In passing through the line formed by the allied troops, the march of the British

¹ The patriots who had the misfortune to become prisoners of war during the long struggle for freedom, were treated with every possible insult and outrage. Many of them were confined in loathsome dungeons on prison-ships, where they received such inhuman treatment that thousands died. Of these floating hulks, the most noted was the Jersey, which was anchored in a small bay off the Long Island shore, opposite the city of New York, and used as a prison-ship until the close of the war.

troops was careless and irregular, and their aspect sullen. The order to 'ground arms' was given by their officers with a tone of deep chagrin, and many of the soldiers threw down their muskets with a violence sufficient to break them."

91. The surrender of Cornwallis was a death-blow to the hope that England would ever regain her colonies. When the prime minister, Lord North, heard of it, he acted as if "a ball had entered his breast." He threw up his arms, and walked wildly up and down the room, exclaiming from time to time: "It is all over! It is all over!" Public opinion in England demanded peace, but stubborn King George would not yield at once. The clamor out-of-doors against the war increasing, a new ministry was formed; and a treaty was made at Paris (Sept. 3, 1783), by which Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the United States, agreed to the great lakes on the north and the Mississippi as boundaries, and conceded the right to fish on the banks of Newfoundland.

92. At the close of the war the people, although they had gained their independence, had a great many troubles to contend with. There was no money, for all had been spent in the war. There was very little wealth in the country, for its commerce had been ruined, its agriculture and manufactures very much neglected, and a great deal of its property destroyed. Its currency had been so reduced in value as to be almost worthless. Congress had no means to pay the army, and the troops, not realizing the difficulties, became dissatisfied, considering themselves treated with injustice and ingratitude. Some of the officers were so indignant that they were ready to enter into a secret combination to make Washington king, thinking that thus they could acquire a recompense for their toils and sufferings. When, however, they made the proposal to him, he rejected it with indignation, and rebuked them for their selfishness and want of patriotism.

93. On the 25th of November, 1783, "Evacuation Day,"

the British army left New York, while Washington, and Governor Clinton at the head of a body of soldiers and citizens, marched into the city and took possession. A scene of public festivity and rejoicing followed, closing, in the evening, with a grand display of fireworks.

94. In the course of a few days Washington prepared to depart for Annapolis, to resign his command to Congress. On the eve of his departure from New York, "the principal officers were assembled, when their beloved command-
er entered the room. His emotions were too ^{Washington's} strong to be concealed. Turning to them he said, ^{farewell to} 'With a heart full of love and gratitude I now take leave of you. I most devoutly wish that your latter days may be as prosperous and happy as your former ones have been glorious and honorable;' adding, 'I cannot come to each of you to take my leave, but shall be obliged if each of you will come and take me by the hand.' General Knox, being nearest turned to him. . Washington, incapable of utterance, grasped his hand and embraced him. In the same affectionate manner he took leave of each succeeding officer. The tear of manly sensibility was in every eye; and not a word was spoken to interrupt the dignified silence and the tenderness of the scene. Leaving the room, he passed through the corps of light infantry, and walked to White Hall ferry, where a barge was in waiting to convey him across the river. The whole company followed in mute procession, with dejected countenances, testifying feelings of delicious melancholy which no language can describe."

95. Everywhere as he rode through New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Maryland, Washington was greeted with joy and enthusiasm by the people. At Annapolis, in the presence of the members of Congress and of a large assem-
blage of ladies and civil and military officers, he ^{Resigns} resigned to Congress the trust that had been com-
mitted to him as commander-in-chief. His modest and dig-
nified address delivered while doing so, and the reply which ^{his} ^{command.}

it called forth from the president of Congress, made a very deep impression upon all. "Few tragedies ever drew so many tears from so many eyes. The very next morning Washington left Annapolis, and hastened to his beloved Mount Vernon, where he arrived the same day, on Christmas Eve, in a frame of mind suited to enjoy the sacred and genial festival."

96. The States had been held together by a compact known as the Articles of Confederation ;¹ but it was soon discovered that these articles gave too little power to the general government to enable it to pay the debts incurred during the war. Congress could not levy taxes : it could only call upon the States to raise money. This the States were backward in doing, either because the people were too poor to pay taxes, or from jealousy of Congress. In Massachusetts two thousand men, under a leader named Daniel Shays, rose in arms to demand that the collection of taxes should be suspended, but the rebellion was suppressed without bloodshed (1787).

97. It was seen that a stronger government was necessary, or the tie which bound the thirteen States would be severed. Accordingly, a convention, to revise the Articles of Confederation, met in Philadelphia, in May, 1787. Among the wise men who composed this memorable council were Washington, who was elected its president ; Dr. Franklin, now more than eighty years of age ; and Alexander Hamilton, who had taken an active part in the Revolutionary struggle. After about four months' deliberation, the Articles being set aside, a constitution was framed, and sent forth to receive the assent of the individual States. Though it met with considerable opposition, it was finally adopted.

98. "Neither the intrinsic merits of the Constitution, nor

¹ As early as 1776 a form of government for the thirteen States was proposed, consisting of twenty articles, known as the Articles of Confederation ; but these were not adopted by Congress till the next year, nor did they go into effect before the 1st of March, 1781. The cause of the delay was in the tardiness of the States to ratify the articles. Delaware did not do it till 1779 ; and Maryland, the last, till 1781.

the imposing weight of character by which it was supported, gave assurance to its friends that it would be ultimately adopted" by the States. As before stated, a great many persons were opposed to it, and exerted their influence to have it rejected. "Under these circumstances, Hamilton and Jay conceived the plan of publishing, through the newspaper press of New York city, a series of essays, for the purpose of explaining and defending the Constitution; and they invited Mr. Madison—whose peculiar qualifications for the task both of them knew—to co-operate with them in the work. In the commencement, these articles were addressed to the people of New York, under the signature of 'A Citizen' of that State; but the general interest and importance of the subject soon induced the writers to address their reflections to the people of the United States; and, after the association of Madison in the work, the signature of 'A Citizen of New York' was exchanged for that of 'Publius.' Such was the origin of a series of papers which, collected and published under the title of the *FEDERALIST*, have come to be recognized as one of the political classics of the age and language in which they were written, and will endure, possibly, even longer than the Constitution which they were intended to elucidate and defend."

99. "Before the Constitution was adopted by the several States, the country became divided into two political parties—the friends and the enemies of that Constitution. The former, being in favor of the establishment of a federal government, according to the plan marked out in the Constitution, naturally took the name of Federalists. Those who were opposed to the Constitution and the form of government which it contained, as naturally took the name of Anti-federalists. Under these titles, when the Constitution had been adopted, and was about to commence its operations, these parties took the field, and arrayed themselves, both in Congress and the country, under their several banners." (See Appendix, p. 5.)

SUMMARY.

- CAUSES OF THE REVOLUTION.**—The measures on the part of England to monopolize all trade with her colonies, to stifle all manufacturing in them, and to impose taxes upon them without their consent were the primary causes of the Revolution. The immediate causes were the "Stamp Act" and the "Tea Tax." The "Boston Massacre" (1770), the "Boston Tea Party" (1773), the "Boston Port Bill" (1774), and the "First Continental Congress" (1774), were the principal preliminary incidents.
- 1775.** The battle of Lexington, the capture of Ticonderoga, the election of Washington to the command of the army, the battle of Bunker Hill, and Montgomery's defeat in Canada, were the principal events of the first year of the war.
- 1776.** The evacuation of Boston by the British, their defeat before Charleston, the Declaration of Independence, the battle of Long Island with its disastrous consequences, and Washington's success at Trenton, were the events of the second year.
- 1777.** Washington's success at Princeton, Burgoyne's invasion with its checks at Bennington and on the Mohawk, and his final surrender, Washington's defeat at Brandywine, and the British occupation of Philadelphia, were the events of the third year.
- 1778.** The acknowledgment by France of the independence of the United States, the British evacuation of Philadelphia, the battle of Monmouth, the "Massacre of Wyoming," and the British capture of Savannah, were the events of the fourth year.
- 1779.** Wayne's capture of Stony Point, Sullivan's expedition against the Indians, Paul Jones's victory, and the repulse of the Americans at Savannah, were the events of the fifth year.
- 1780.** The loss of Charleston, Gates's defeat in South Carolina, and "Arnold's Treason," were the events of the sixth year.
- 1781.** Morgan's victory at the Cowpens, the contest between Greene and Cornwallis in the Carolinas, and the surrender of Cornwallis, were the events of the seventh year.
- 1783.** The treaty of peace; the British evacuation of Savannah, New York, and Charleston; and Washington's resignation of his command, were the closing events of the war.

MODEL FOR A WRITTEN EXERCISE, NO. 2.

(The date of an important event may be taken as a turning-point. Then arrange on the one side of it the train of cause-events, and on the other the train of result-events).

THE SURRENDER OF BURGOYNE.

Causes.	Burgoyne invades New York.
	He captures Crown Point and Ticonderoga.
	His expeditions against Fort Schuyler and Bennington end in failure.
	He is defeated in the two battles of Stillwater.
Results.	1777. BURGOYNE SURRENDERS TO GATES (OCT. 17).
	Ticonderoga, with all the northern part of New York, is recovered by the Americans.
	France acknowledges the independence of and forms an alliance with the United States, etc.

TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

(See the hints and directions, p. 49.)

BIOGRAPHICAL.

Benj. Franklin. (See Bigelow's Life of Franklin, also Parton's.)	115-161
John Adams. (See Life and Times of John Adams by his grandson, Charles Francis Adams.)	131, 139, 146
Benedict Arnold. (See Sparks's Life of Arnold.)	141-174
Gen. Israel Putnam. (See Tarbox's Life of Putnam, also Peabody's in Sparks's "American Biography.")	135, 138
Gen. Joseph Warren. (See A. H. Everett's Life of Warren in Sparks's "American Biography;" also Frothingham's.)	129, 132, 138
Gen. Richard Montgomery. (See Armstrong's Life of Montgomery in Sparks's "American Biography.")	140, 141
Ethan Allen. (See Sparks's Life of Ethan Allen in his "American Biography.")	135, 141 (note).
John Hancock. (See Bancroft's History U. S.)	129, 132, 146, 147 (note).
Lafayette. (See Bancroft's History U. S.)	152-172
Gen. Nathaniel Greene. (See Life of Greene by his grandson, G. W. Greene.)	135, 151 (note)-174
Gen. Philip Schuyler. (See Lossing's Life of Schuyler.)	140-159
Gen. John Stark. (See Edward Everett's Life of Stark in Sparks's "American Biography.")	135-158
Gen. Horatio Gates was born in England.	159-172
Paul Jones. (See Parton's Life of Franklin, Vol. II.; also Sherburne's Life of Paul Jones; also Miss Taylor's.)	165, 166
Gen. Anthony Wayne. (See Armstrong's Life of Wayne in Sparks's "American Biography.")	154 (note), 165
Gen. Marion. (See Simms's Life of Marion.)	143, 167
Patrick Henry. (See Wirt's Life of Henry.)	126, 131, 138

GEOGRAPHICAL.

New York City.	126-177	Princeton.	152
Philadelphia.	128-178	Germantown.	153, 154
Boston.	128-142	Valley Forge.	155
Concord.	131-134	Bennington.	158
Lexington.	132-134	Saratoga.	159
Ticonderoga.	135, 156	Wyoming.	163
Quebec.	140-142	Savannah.	164, 165
Charleston.	128, 142-166	West Point.	169
Brooklyn.	147, 148	Yorktown.	174, 175
Camden, S. C.	167-173	Mount Vernon.	177

HISTORICAL.

Causes of the Revolution.	125-131	Exp'n against Philadelphia	153, 154
Boston Tea Party.	128-130	Surrender of Burgoyne.	159, 160
Continental Congress.	130, 139	Treaty with France.	160
Battle of Lexington.	132-134	Massacre of Wyoming.	163, 164
Battle of Bunker Hill.	135-138	Treason of Arnold.	168-172
Expedition against Canada.	140, 141	Surrender of Cornwallis.	175
Declaration of Independence	144-147	History of the Constitution.	178, 179
Battle of Long Island.	147, 148	Washington's movements	
Battle of Trenton.	150, 151	during the war.	181-178

SECTION IV.

THE CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD.

Washington's Administration.

1. THE first Congress, under the Constitution, ought to have met at New York on the 4th of March, 1789 ; but

**The first
president.**

in consequence of
delay in the ar-
rival of its mem-

bers, the most of whom had to make their way on horseback or by sea, a quorum was not secured before the 30th. On counting the votes which had been cast by the state electors, it was found that all of them had been given for Washington. He was consequently declared



WASHINGTON.

the president elect of the United States, and a message was at once sent to Mount Vernon to inform him of his election.¹

2. "Washington desired to proceed to New York in the most quiet manner, but the flow of veneration and gratitude could not be suppressed." In Maryland and Pennsylvania he

¹ "Washington received sixty-nine votes, that being the whole number of electors voting. John Adams received thirty-four votes in all, not a majority, but sufficient, as the Constitution then stood, being the second highest number, to make him vice-president."

was publicly welcomed and entertained. "Ascending the left bank of the Delaware, he crossed into New Jersey. The people of Trenton remembered the battles fought in their neighborhood twelve years before, and if his reception at other places was more splendid, nowhere was it so graceful and touching. On the bridge across the river which flows through the town into the Delaware, the same bridge across which Washington had retreated before Cornwallis's army on the eve of the battle of Princeton, a triumphal arch had been erected, supported on thirteen pillars, twined with evergreens, flowers, and laurel. Beneath this arch, which bore for inscription 'The Defender of the Mothers will be the Protector of the Daughters,' were assembled a party of matrons, mixed with young girls dressed in white, who were holding baskets of flowers in their hands. As Washington approached they began to sing a little ode prepared for the occasion, and, suiting the action to the words, they ended the chant in strewing their flowers before him.

3. As the new Federal Hall in New York was not yet finished, a week elapsed before preparations were completed for administering to the president elect the oath of office. The place selected for that purpose was the outer gallery or balcony of the Senate Chamber, visible for a long distance down Broad Street, which it fronted, thus affording opportunity to witness the ceremony to a large number of eager spectators. At nine o'clock all the churches in the city were opened for prayer and religious services. A little after noon the president elect left his house escorted by the city cavalry, and followed by a long procession of citizens.

4. Having entered the Senate Chamber, where the two houses were assembled to receive him, he was conducted to an elevated seat at the head of the room. After a momentary silence, all being seated, the vice-president, John Adams, rose and stated to the president elect that all was ready for the administration of the oath, whenever he was prepared to

receive it. Upon this intimation Washington proceeded to the balcony, followed by the senators and representatives. The oath was administered by the Chancellor of New York, Robert R. Livingston. As he finished the ceremony he exclaimed aloud, 'Long live George Washington, President of the United States!' to which the assembled multitude responded in long and enthusiastic shouts, and all the bells in the city rang out a joyful peal (April 30)."

5. On assuming the duties of president, Washington called to his aid, as his cabinet, or body of advisers, the ablest men in the country that he could select. Thomas Jefferson was chosen Secretary of State; Alexander Hamilton, **The first measures.** Secretary of the Treasury; and Henry Knox, Secretary of War. Edmund Randolph was also appointed Attorney-General. The first great difficulty was to provide for the payment of the debts incurred in carrying on the late war. A plan was proposed by Hamilton, who, said Daniel Webster, many years after, "smote the rock of the national resources, and abundant streams of revenue gushed forth. He touched the dead corpse of the public credit, and it sprang upon its feet." All the war debts of the States were assumed by the general government. Ample provision was made for the payment of all just claims. Commerce began to flourish. The American flag was soon seen on every sea. A national bank and mint were established (1791). The Ship of State was fairly launched.

6. North Carolina and Rhode Island were the last to adopt the Constitution. The first admission to the Union was of Vermont. The people of that part of our country had been **The 14th State.** long knocking at the door of Congress for admission, but New York objected. The Vermont territory had been claimed by both New York and New Hampshire; but, as the governors of the latter in colonial times had disposed of a large portion of the land in numerous tracts, known as the "New Hampshire Grants," and, as New York's claim had been confirmed by the crown, what was left to

New Hampshire of property in the soil was supposed to be of little value. Finally, however, the payment of thirty thousand dollars to New York secured the consent of that claimant, and the "Green Mountain Boys" took their seat in the great family of States (1791).

7. Treaties had been made with most of the Indian tribes within the territorial limits of the United States, but those north of the Ohio river became dissatisfied with the boundaries which had been assigned them, and showed their dissatisfaction by numerous hostile acts. **Indian war.** They waylaid the boats in which emigrants were proceeding, attacked settlements, and committed many murders. Washington sent a force under General Harmar to subdue them, but he was defeated. A force under St. Clair was next surprised and defeated with heavy loss ; and it was not until 1794 that the savages were overcome. In that year they were defeated by General Wayne, "the Mad Anthony of the Revolution," in a desperate battle fought on the banks of the Maumee river. This victory, followed up by severe measures, compelled the Indians to sue for peace, and at Greenville, where eleven hundred warriors had assembled, a treaty was made by which a large tract of territory was ceded to the United States (1795).

8. The French, being at war with England, expected to receive aid from this country ; and many of the American people, grateful to their old allies, were desirous of giving it. Washington, however, believing that such a course **Foreign affairs.** would imperil the liberties of the United States, recommended a neutral policy. The French Minister here tried to involve the people in the war by fitting out privateers in American ports ; but at Washington's request he was recalled. Difficulties had also arisen with England, growing out of violations of the treaty of 1783 ; but these were disposed of by a new treaty negotiated by John Jay, Chief Justice, who had been sent to England as a special envoy for the purpose. A large number of persons, including those who de

sired to aid the French, regarded this treaty with decided aversion. They thought it favored the English too much. Still it was ratified by the Senate, though in the face of a determined opposition on the part of many Senators, and was approved by Washington (1795).

9. "This, one of the wise statesmen of the Revolution, who survived to perform services of inestimable value to the new

John Jay. constitutional government was a man whose character needs no apologists. Webster finely said that 'the spotless ermine of the judicial robe, when it fell on the shoulders of John Jay, touched nothing not as spotless as itself.' His integrity ran down into the roots of his moral being, and honesty was in him a passion as well as a principle. The celebrated treaty with Great Britain which he negotiated as the Minister of the United States occasioned an outburst of wrath such as few American diplomatists have ever been called upon to face; but in all the fury of opposition to it, few opponents were foolish enough to assail his integrity in assailing his judgment and general views of public policy."



JOHN JAY.

10. "In the fall of 1792, Eli Whitney, of Massachusetts,

Whisky Insurrection. In 1791 Congress imposed a duty on domestic liquors. This caused great discontent in several quarters, but particularly in western Pennsylvania, where, in 1794, the people rose in rebellion, and declared they would not pay the tax. Upon the approach of a body of militia sent by Washington, the insurgents changed their minds and yielded.

¹ John Jay was born in New York City in 1745. He was a member of the "First Continental Congress;" with Franklin, John Adams, and Henry Laurens, negotiated the treaty of 1783 at Paris (see p. 176); rendered important aid in favor of the adoption of the Constitution (see p. 179), and was the first Chief Justice of the United States, which office he resigned on his return from England, in 1795.

made an engagement with a Mr. B., from Georgia, to go to that State and reside in his employer's family as a private teacher. On his way thither he had as a travelling companion Mrs. Greene, widow of the eminent Revolutionary general, who was returning with her children to Savannah, after spending the summer at the North. Mr. Whitney's health being infirm on his arrival at Savannah, Mrs. Greene kindly invited him to the hospitalities of her residence until he should become fully restored. At that time she happened to be engaged in embroidering on a peculiar frame known as a tambour. It was badly constructed, so that it injured the fabric, while it impeded its production. Whitney eagerly volunteered to make her a better one, and did so on a plan wholly new, to her great delight and that of her children.

*Invention
of the
cotton-gin.*

11. A large party of Georgians, from Augusta and the plantations above, soon after paid Mrs. G. a visit. Among the topics discussed by them around her fireside was the depressed state of agriculture, and the impossibility of profitably extending the culture of cotton, because of the trouble and expense incurred in separating the seed from the fiber. These representations impelled Mrs. Greene to say: 'Gentlemen, apply to my young friend, Mr. Whitney—he can make any thing.' She thereupon took them into an adjacent room, where she showed them her tambour-frame, and several ingenious toys which Mr. W. had made for the gratification of her children. She then introduced them to Whitney himself, extolling his genius and commending him to their confidence and friendship.

12. Mr. Whitney promised nothing and gave little encouragement, but went to work. No cotton in the seed being at hand, he went to Savannah and searched there among warehouses and boats until he found a small parcel. This he carried home and secluded with himself in a basement room, where he set himself at work to devise and construct the implement required. Tools being few and rude, he was con-

strained to make better—drawing his own wire, because none could, at that time, be bought in the city of Savannah. His mysterious hammering and tinkering in that solitary cell were subjects of infinite curiosity, marvel, and ridicule among the younger members of the family. But he did not interfere with their merriment, nor allow them to interfere with his enterprise; and before the close of the winter his machine was so nearly perfected that its success was no longer doubtful. Mrs. Greene, too eager to realize and enjoy her friend's triumph, invited an assemblage at her house of leading gentlemen from various parts of the State, and, on the first day after their meeting, conducted them to a temporary building, erected for the machine, in which they saw, with astonishment and delight, that one man with Whitney's invention, could separate more cotton from the seed in a single day than he could without it by the labor of months."

13. When the cotton-gin was invented the whole business in the interior of the Southern States was in a languishing condition; and for want of employment the inhabitants were leaving. This invention at once set the country in motion. To planters and others, who were depressed with poverty, it opened the way to employment, wealth and respectability. Cotton soon began to supplant wool, flax, silk, and even fur. By means of this machine the annual production of cotton in the Southern States alone was increased from five thousand bales to over five million bales, or one million tons, in value equal to seven-eighths of all the cotton produced on the face of the earth. Then "cotton was King, and his majesty on his throne did not seem to be aware of the influence which surrounded his cradle."

14. The Atlantic States were the chief seat from which issued the migration destined to people the west. "An ax, a couple of horses, and a heavy rifle, with store of ammunition, were all that were considered necessary for the equipment of the man who, with his family,

removed to the new State ; assured that, in that land of exuberant fertility, he could not fail to provide amply for all his wants. To have witnessed the industry and perseverance of these emigrants must at once have proved the vigor of their minds. Regardless of the fatigue attending every movement which they made, they pushed through an unexplored region of dark and tangled forests, guiding themselves by the sun alone, and reposing at night on the bare ground. They had to cross numberless streams on rafts, with their wives and children, their cattle, and their luggage, often drifting to considerable distances before they could effect a landing on the opposite shores. To these troubles add the constantly impending danger of being murdered, while asleep in their encampments, by the prowling and ruthless Indians. Others, perhaps encumbered with too much luggage, preferred descending the stream.¹ They prepared arks pierced with port-holes, and glided on the gentle current.

15. Many travelers have described these boats, formerly called arks, but now named flat-boats ; but have they told you that in those times a boat thirty or forty feet in length, by ten or twelve in breadth, was considered a stupendous fabric ? —that this boat contained men, women, and children, huddled together with horses, cattle, hogs, and poultry for their companions, while the remaining portion was crammed with vegetables and packages of seed ? The roof or deck of the boat was not unlike a farm-yard, being covered with hay, ploughs, carts, wagons, and various agricultural implements, together with numerous other things, among which the spinning-wheels of the matrons were conspicuous. Have they told you that these boats contained the little all of each family of venturous emigrants, who, fearful of being discovered by the Indians, moved about in darkness when night came on,

¹ The particular stream referred to here is the Ohio river, and the emigrants were going to the new State of Kentucky ; but the description will apply to the western emigrations that took place, not only then, but in succeeding years, and even to recent times.

groping their way from one part to another of their floating habitations, and denying themselves the comforts of fire or light, lest the foe that watched them from the shore should rush upon them and destroy them?"

16. The western portion of several of the States extended to the Mississippi river, their colonial charters being the basis for such possession. One after another these States surrendered the control of their western lands to the general government, and the region north of the 15th and 16th States. Ohio was organized under the name of the Northwest Territory (1787). From the region south of the Ohio, two States were formed during the administration of Washington,—Kentucky,¹ previously a part of Virginia (1792), and Tennessee, previously a part of North Carolina (1796).

17. Washington had now served nearly eight years, having been unanimously re-elected for a second term. In 1796 he was again urged to be a candidate for a third time, but he positively declined. The country, being at peace with the world and in a prosperous condition, could, he believed, dispense with his services. In that year he put forth to his countrymen his memorable "Farewell Address," the closing portion of which is herewith given :

18. "In reviewing the incidents of my administration, I am unconscious of intentional error, yet I am nevertheless too sensible of my own defects, not to think it probable that I may have committed many errors. Whatever they may be, I fervently beseech the

¹ Daniel Boone, the pioneer in the settlement of Kentucky, was born in Pennsylvania in 1735, and died in Missouri in 1820. At the age of eighteen, he went with his father's family to North Carolina, where, a few years later, he was married. After making several hunting excursions, he set out, in 1769, with five companions, to explore the Kentucky country. During the next twenty-five years, his life, as an explorer, pioneer, hunter, guide, and settler, was the most prominent one in the history of that region. He had many encounters with the Indians, and was three times captured, but in each case effected his escape. In 1775, he built a fort on the Kentucky river, around which grew up the settlement and village of Boonsboro'. After Kentucky was admitted into the Union, Boone removed to Missouri.

Almighty to avert or mitigate the evils to which they may tend. I shall also carry with me the hope that my country will never cease to view them with indulgence ; and that after forty-five years of my life dedicated to its service, with an upright zeal, the faults of incompetent abilities will be consigned to oblivion, as myself must soon be to the mansions of rest. Relying on its kindness in this as in other things, and actuated by that fervent love toward it, which is so natural to a man who views in it the native soil of himself and his progenitors for several generations ; I anticipate with pleasing expectation that retreat in which I promise myself to realize, without alloy, the sweet enjoyment of partaking, in the midst of my fellow-citizens, the benign influence of good laws under a free government—the ever favorite object of my heart, and the happy reward, as I trust, of our mutual cares, labors, and dangers.”

John Adams's Administration.

1. John Adams, who had been the vice-president during the whole period of Washington's administration, was now chosen president; and Thomas Jefferson was ^{Inauguration of Adams.} elected vice-president.



JOHN ADAMS.

Both gentlemen repaired to Philadelphia, then the capital, where, in the presence of the two houses of Congress, of Washington, and other spectators, including a large number of ladies, the inauguration of the new president took place (March 4, 1797).

2. The neutral position taken by the United States in the wars between England and France, deeply offended the latter power, and the ratification of Jay's Treaty by the American

Senate greatly increased the unfriendly feeling. The hostility of the French soon showed itself in various ways.

Hostilities of France. Their vessels at first insulted the United States flag, then, growing bolder, captured our merchant ships. At the capital of France, the envoys sent by

our government were insultingly met by the French Directory, and informed that nothing would be accomplished until a present of money was made. It being intimated that the penalty of a refusal would be war, Cha's C. Pinckney, one of the envoys, replied : " War be it then ! Millions for defence, but not a cent for tribute ;" and this became the universal cry of the American people. Congress adopted measures to protect the country and its commerce ; and Washington was once more called upon to take the command of the land forces. Again sacrificing the comforts of retirement, he accepted ; but the army was never raised, for the French government was soon afterward overturned, and peace was made with Napoleon Bonaparte, the head of the new government (1800).¹

3. " Washington did not live to witness the restoration of peace. On Friday morning (Dec. 1799), while attending to some improvements upon his estate, he was exposed to a light rain, by which his neck and hair became

Death of Washington.

wet. Not apprehending danger from this circumstance, he passed the afternoon in his usual manner ; but, in the night, was seized with an inflammatory affection of the windpipe. The disease commenced with a

¹ Two acts of Congress, known as the " Alien and Sedition Laws," were intended to counteract the schemes of the French Directory, whose emissaries in this country abused the freedom of the press by defaming the administration and exciting the people against it. The president, by the " Alien Act," was authorized to banish such foreigners as in his opinion were dangerous to the peace and safety of the country. The " Sedition Act" provided for the punishment of all persons found guilty of abusing the freedom of speech or of the press. Both acts were denounced by the enemies of the administration as tyrannical, and their unpopularity, it was generally believed, contributed more than any other cause to the overthrow of the Federal party. They expired by their own limitation.

violent ague, accompanied with pain in his throat, a sense of stricture in the same part, and a cough, which were soon succeeded by fever and a quick and laborious respiration. . . . Believing at the commencement of his complaint, as well as through every succeeding stage of it, that its conclusion would be mortal, he submitted to the exertions made for his recovery, rather as a duty than from any expectation of their efficacy. Some hours before his death, after repeated efforts to be understood, he succeeded in expressing a desire that he might be permitted to die without interruption. After it became impossible to get anything down his throat he undressed himself and went to bed, there to die. To his friend and physician, Doctor Craik, who sat on his bed and took his head in his lap, he said with difficulty : ‘ Doctor, I am dying, and have been dying for a long time, but I am not afraid to die.’ At half-past eleven on Saturday night, when retaining the full possession of his intellect, he expired without a struggle (Dec. 14, 1799).”

4. “ Though a hundred crooked paths may conduct to a temporary success, the one plain and straight path of public and private virtue can alone lead to a pure and lasting fame and the blessings of posterity. Born beneath an humble but virtuous roof, brought up at the knees of a mother not unworthy to be named with the noblest matrons of Rome or Israel, the *good boy*, as she delighted to call him, passed uncorrupted through the temptations of the solitary frontier, the camp, and the gay world, and grew up into the good man. . . . I cast my eyes along the far-stretching galleries of history, still echoing to the footsteps of the mighty dead. I behold with admiration the images and the statues of the great and good men with which they are adorned ; I see many who deserved well of their country in civil and military life, on the throne, in the council-chamber, on the battle-field, while they lived, wreathed with well-worn laurels and scarred with honest wounds. Hampden and William of Orange, Robert Bruce

Character of
Washington.

and King Alfred ; and, in the olden times, Cato, and Tully, and Demosthenes, and Ti-mo'-le-on, and E-pam-i-non'-das ; but I behold, in the long line, no other Washington."



MOUNT VERNON.

5. The sorrowful news was conveyed to all parts of the land. Every heart was sad. In Congress, fitting honors were paid to the memory of the man who, in the language of

the oration pronounced by Henry Lee, of Virginia, was "first **A nation** in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his **mourns.** countrymen." His mortal remains rest at Mount Vernon ;¹ and to this day the steamers that ply upon the Potomac strike mournful notes upon their bells as they pass the spot where Washington spent the happiest days of his life, and where he died and was buried.

Jefferson's Administration.

1. Adams was president only four years. Towards the close of his term a fierce struggle took place between the two great political parties of the day, the Federalists and the Republicans, which resulted finally in the choice of Thomas

¹ Mount Vernon is situated on the western bank of the Potomac, fifteen miles from Washington city. The place, comprising the mansion, the tomb, and two hundred acres of the original estate, was sold by a nephew of George Washington to the "Ladies' Mount Vernon Association" for two hundred thousand dollars. It is the design of the Association to hold it forever as a place of public resort and pilgrimage.

Jefferson for president, and Aaron Burr for vice-president.¹



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

Jefferson was anxious that the ceremonies of his inauguration should be few and simple. ^{Inauguration of Jefferson.}

An English gentleman who was present thus wrote of his appearance on the occasion: "His dress was of plain cloth, and he rode on horseback to the Capitol, dismounted without assistance, and hitched the bridle of his horse to the palisades." The inauguration took place in the city of Washington, the nation's new capital (March 4, 1801), to which place the public offices

had been removed the year before.

2. As previously stated, the region north of the Ohio river was organized under the name of the Northwest Territory. The south-eastern part of this territory was the first that was set apart for State purposes, and, in 1803, it was ^{The} admitted into the Union as the State of Ohio. A ^{17th State.} large portion of the land so set apart, along and near Lake Erie, and known as the Western or Connecticut Reserve, had previously belonged to Connecticut.² This (in

¹ There was no choice by the electors, and consequently the election went to the House of Representatives, where, after a week's contest, Jefferson finally succeeded in obtaining a majority of the States in his favor. Jefferson and Burr were Republican candidates. Under the original clause of the Constitution providing for the election of president and vice-president, the electors voted for two persons, without naming their choice for the higher position, "the person having the greatest number of votes" being declared president, and the next, vice-president. John Adams was a candidate of the Federalists for a second term.

² "The charter of Connecticut was derived from the Plymouth Company. This grant was made in 1621, in the most ample form, covering the country west of Connecticut, to the extent of its breadth, from sea to sea. New Netherlands, being then a Dutch possession, could not be claimed as a portion of this munificent grant, if for no other reason, for the very good and substantial one that in the grant to the Plymouth Company an exception was made of all such portions of the territory as were 'then actually possessed or inhabited by any other Christian prince or State.'"—*Stone's History of Wyoming*.

1795) was sold to a company of speculators, and, at the time of Ohio's admission to the Union, more than a thousand settlers were already established on the Reserve. The money so received by Connecticut was the original capital of her school fund.

3. In the spring of 1803, while Jefferson was preparing to send an expedition under Lewis and Clarke, to explore the Missouri river and its head branches, and thence to find a water communication across the continent to the

**Purchase
of Louisiana.**

Pacific, if such existed, the news reached this country that France, for fifteen millions of dollars, had ceded the whole of the Louisiana territory to the United States. "The Missouri and the Mississippi rivers, with their hundred tributaries, give to the great central basin of our continent its character and destiny. The outlet of this mighty system lies through the State of Louisiana. The ancient province so called, the proudest monument of the mighty monarch whose name it bears, passed from the jurisdiction of France to that of Spain in 1763. Spain coveted it, not that she might fill it with prosperous colonies and rising states, but that it might stretch as a broad waste barrier, infested with warlike tribes, between the Anglo-American power and the silver mines of the West. With the independence of the United States, the fear of a still more dangerous neighbor grew upon Spain, and in the insane expectation of checking the progress of the Union westward, she threatened, and at times attempted, to close the mouth of the Mississippi, on the rapidly increasing trade of the West.

4. The bare suggestion of such a policy roused the population upon the banks of the Ohio, then inconsiderable, as one man. This subject was for years the turning point of the politics of the West, and it was perfectly well understood, that, sooner or later, she would be content with nothing less than the sovereign control of the mighty stream from its head spring to its outlet in the Gulf. So stood affairs at the close of the last century, when the colos-

sal power of the first Napoleon burst upon the world. In the vast recesses of his Titanic ambition, he cherished as a leading object of his policy, to acquire for France a colonial empire which should balance that of England. In pursuit of this policy, he fixed his eye on the ancient regal colony which Louis XIV. had founded in the heart of North America, and he tempted Spain by the paltry bribe of creating a kingdom for a Bourbon prince, to give back to France the then boundless waste of the territory of Louisiana. The cession was made by the secret treaty of 1800, of which one sentence only has ever been published, but that sentence gave away half a continent.

5. The youthful conqueror then concentrated all the resources of his mighty genius on the accomplishment of his vast project. If successful, it would have established the French power at the mouth and on the right bank of the Mississippi, and would have opposed the most formidable barrier to the expansion of the United States. The peace of Amiens (*am'-e-enz*), at this juncture, relieved Napoleon from the pressure of the war with England, and every thing seemed propitious to the success of the great enterprise. The fate of America trembled for a moment in a doubtful balance, and five hundred thousand citizens in that region felt the danger and sounded the alarm. But in another moment the aspect of affairs was changed by a stroke of policy, grand, unexpected, and fruitful of consequences perhaps without a parallel in history.

6. The short-lived truce of Amiens was about to end, the renewal of war was inevitable. Napoleon saw that before he could take possession of Louisiana it would be wrested from him by England, who commanded the seas, and he determined at once, not merely to deprive her of this magnificent conquest, but to contribute, as far as in him lay, to build up a great rival maritime power in the West. The government of the United States, not less sagacious, seized the golden moment—a moment such as does not happen twice in a thou-

sand years. Mr. Jefferson perceived that, unless acquired by the United States, Louisiana would in a short time belong to France or to England, and with equal wisdom and courage he determined that it should belong to neither. True, he held the acquisition to be unconstitutional, but he threw to the winds the resolutions which had just brought him into power; he broke the Constitution and he gained an empire."¹

7. In the same year (1803), an expedition was sent to the Mediterranean to repress the piracies of the Barbary States, which powers constantly sent out armed vessels to capture the merchant ships of other nations, and make slaves

**War with
the Barbary
States.**

of their crews. It was a common custom for nations to pay tribute to these states to obtain freedom from their attacks. This, however, did not restrain their hostility and insolence; and a fleet under Commodore Preble (*preb'-el*) was sent against them. Preble first entered the port of Morocco, and, after exacting terms of the emperor, sailed for Tripoli (*trip'-o-le*); but, before his arrival, a serious accident had occurred.

8. One of his ships, the frigate "Philadelphia, proceeding to Tripoli, while standing close in shore under a heavy press of sail, in pursuit of a vessel attempting to enter the harbor, ran with terrific force upon a sunken rock, upon which, in spite of all efforts to set her free, she remained fixed. While her crew were engaged in attempts to get her off, she was attacked by a flotilla of Tripolitan gun-

¹ A careful examination of the treaties between France and Spain, and France and the United States, and of all the diplomatic correspondence and congressional debates, with reference to the western limits of the "Louisiana Purchase," leads us to the conclusion which Mr. Greenhow had previously reached, and had expressed in his "History of Oregon and California." His book, be it remembered, was published under the authority of the United States Senate. Mr. Greenhow says: "How far Louisiana extended westward when it was ceded by France to Spain, history offers no means of determining. In the absence of all light on the subject from history, we are forced to regard the boundaries indicated by nature, namely, the highlands separating the waters of the Mississippi from those flowing into the Pacific, as the true western boundaries of the Louisiana ceded to the United States by France in 1803."

boats. Most of her guns were thrown overboard, and her anchors and foremast were cut away, but still she remained fast. Holes were then bored in her bottom and her pumps choked, after which, having stood the fire of the gunboats all day, her commander submitted to the disagreeable necessity of striking his flag. The Tripolitans, after great exertions, no American cruiser being there to molest them, succeeded in getting the Philadelphia off and towing her into the harbor (Oct. 31, 1803)."

9. The Tripolitans soon began to fit out for sea their valu-

able prize. A plan for her destruction was therefore resolved upon, but more than

three months passed before it could be put

*Exploit
of Lieutenant
Decatur.*

into execution. Lieutenant (afterward Commodore) "Decatur undertook the task, and the capture of a small Tripolitan vessel bound to Constantinople with a present of female slaves for the sultan, gave him the first facility. The captured vessel was taken into service, and named



DECATUR.

the Intrepid. Manned by volunteers, the Intrepid, as evening came on, favored by a light breeze, stood directly into the harbor. About midnight she began to approach the Philadelphia, directly towards which she steered, all except two or three of her crew lying flat upon the deck.

10. So far all had passed without exciting the slightest suspicion; but just as the Intrepid touched the side of the Philadelphia, an alarm was raised by the Turks. The Americans, however, boarded in an instant, and the frigate's guard, after a moment's resistance, were driven over her opposite side, a few being killed, but most of them jumping into the water. With equal promptitude, combustibles,

already prepared, were hurried on board, and in less than half an hour the frigate was in a blaze. The burning ship lighted up the whole harbor like day ; and as the heat increased, her guns, which were loaded and shotted, began to explode. But the Intrepid swept on unharmed till she reached the mouth of the harbor, where she found boats ready to aid in towing her off (Feb. 1, 1804)." A treaty was soon afterward made with the bashaw.

11. A political quarrel between the vice-president, Burr, and Alexander Hamilton, that had its roots in a long strife between the two men, led to a

**Death of
Hamilton in
a Duel.**

duel. They met, with their seconds, at a secluded spot on the west bank of the Hudson, opposite New York City. "The word was given. Burr raised his pistol, took aim, and fired. Hamilton sprang upon his toes with a convulsive movement, reeled a little, involuntarily discharged his pistol, and then fell forward headlong upon his face." Next day he died.



HAMILTON.

12. "On the day of Hamilton's funeral, the whole city of New York was in mourning. The procession which followed him to the grave comprised men of every degree, without distinction of parties. The minute-guns from the batteries were answered by the French and British ships-of-war in the harbor. On the steps of Trinity Church, Gouverneur Morris, with the four sons of the deceased by his side, pronounced a solemn oration in memory of his slaughtered friend ; and when they had laid him in the earth, and the parting volley had been fired over his remains, the vast crowd dispersed in silence, and each man carried to his home the impression of a profound grief (1804)."

13. Burr, of course, lost all his political influence. Two

years after the duel, he became engaged in organizing a secret expedition at the West, which was suspected of being of a treasonable character.



AARON BURR.

He was arrested and ^{Trial} of Burr for ^{Treason.} tried, but though acquitted of the charge of treason, it was generally believed that he was guilty of an intention to dismember the Union by separating the Western from the Atlantic States, and founding an independent empire beyond the Alleghany mountains, over which he might bear rule.

14. In 1807, the little steamboat Clermont was constructed under the direction of Robert Fulton. John

Fitch and James Rumsey, both Americans, had already made successful experiments in steamboat building, but this boat, the Clermont, was destined to be historic. ^{Fulton's first} Fulton, in giving an account of his labors, said : ^{steamboat.}

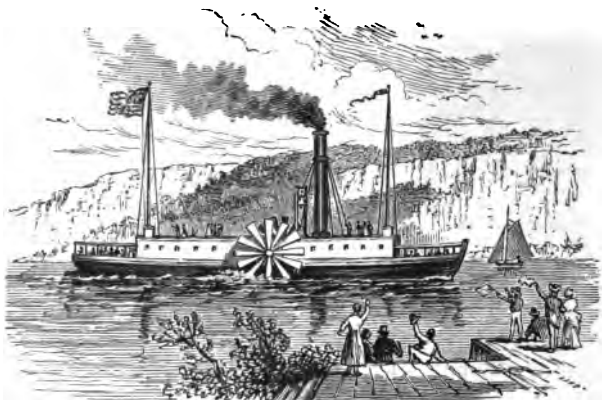
“ When I was building my first steamboat at New York, the project was viewed by the public critics with indifference, or with contempt, as a visionary scheme. My friends, indeed, were civil, but they were shy. As I had occasion to pass daily to and from the building-yard while my boat was in progress, I have often loitered unknown near the idle groups of strangers, gathered in little circles, and heard various inquiries as to the object of this new vehicle. The language was uniformly that of scorn, or sneer, or ridicule. The loud laugh often rose at my expense. The dry



ROBERT FULTON.

jest, the wise calculation of losses and expenditures, and the dull repetition of the 'Fulton folly,' seemed to have no end. Never did a single encouraging remark, a bright hope, or a warm wish, cross my path. Silence itself was but politeness, veiling its doubts or hiding its reproaches.

15. At length the day arrived when the experiment was to be put into operation. To me it was a most trying occasion. The moment came in which the word was to be given



FULTON'S FIRST STEAMBOAT.

for the vessel to move. My friends were in groups on the deck. There was anxiety mixed with fear among them. They were silent, and sad, and weary. I read in their looks nothing but disaster, and almost repented of my efforts. The signal was given, and the boat moved a short distance, and then stopped. To the silence of the preceding moment now succeeded murmurs of discontent, and agitations, and whispers, and shrugs. I could hear distinctly repeated, 'I told you it would be so—it is a foolish scheme—I wish we were well out of it.'

16. I elevated myself upon a platform and addressed the assembly. I stated that I knew what was the matter; and if they would be quiet, and indulge me for a half-hour, I

would either go on or abandon the voyage for that time. This short respite was conceded. I went below, and examined the machinery, and discovered that the cause was a slight maladjustment of some of the work. In a short period it was obviated. The boat was again put in motion. She continued to move on, but all my friends were still incredulous. None seemed willing to trust the evidence of their own senses."

17. "She had the most terrific appearance, from other vessels which were navigating the river. The first steamboats used dry pine wood for fuel, which sends forth a column of ignited vapor many feet above the flue, and whenever the fire is stirred a galaxy of sparks fly off, and ^{How the} ~~Clermont was~~ ^{regarded.} in the night have a very brilliant and beautiful appearance. This light of the Clermont first attracted the attention of the crews of other vessels. Notwithstanding the wind and tide were adverse to its approach, they saw with astonishment that it was rapidly coming towards them; and when it came so near that the noise of the machinery and paddles was heard, the crews (if what was said in the newspapers of the time be true) in some instances shrunk beneath their decks from the terrific sight, others deserting their vessels escaped to the shore, while others prostrated themselves and besought Providence to protect them from the approaches of the horrible monster which was marching on the tides and lighting its path by the fires which it vomited." The trip, from the city of New York to Albany, was completed in thirty-six hours. "Even then it was doubted whether it could be made again, or, if it could, whether it would be of any great value."

18. England and France were at war at this time; and while they were making prizes of each other's vessels, the American ships were finding full employment in carrying merchandise to the ports of both nations. To completely destroy the commerce of France, the ^{British} ~~British~~ ^{aggressions.} government declared the ports of France to be in a state of blockade. Napoleon Bonaparte, who was

at the head of the French government, declared a blockade of the British islands. These decrees, in effect, closed Europe against American commerce. Our vessels were captured, and our merchants consequently suffered grievous losses.

19. A still greater grievance of the Americans was the so-called "right of search," by which Great Britain claimed the right to search American vessels on the ocean, and take from them all sailors of English birth, for the purpose of impressing them—that is, compelling them to serve in the British navy. This claim was based upon the doctrine that a person born on English soil is always an English subject. He may go to the country of another nation, he may reside there many years,—even to the end of his days,—still he is a British subject. The United States, on the other hand, have always held to the doctrine that men may give up the citizenship which they inherited, and transfer their allegiance to other countries.

20. As these doctrines were in conflict, it followed that when the news reached the United States that British ships-of-war had stopped American merchantmen on the high seas and impressed their seamen, a war-spirit broke out. The cry of "Free Trade and Sailors' Rights" resounded in every American port. As fresh outrages were perpetrated,¹ this spirit grew stronger and more determined, and spread to every part of the country. "In passing from town to town, the traveler saw groups of angry men discussing and denouncing the tyranny of England." It was known that more than six thousand American sailors had been seized by British war-ships, and pressed into the hated service of a hated nation.

¹ In the summer of 1807, an event occurred which greatly increased the popular excitement against England. The British frigate *Leopard*, cruising in American waters, demanded permission to search the American frigate *Chesapeake*, then off the coast of Virginia, alleging that there were British deserters on board. As this was refused, she fired into the *Chesapeake*, and the latter, being unprepared for action, struck her colors, after having twenty-one of her crew killed or wounded. Four persons, asserted to be deserters, were then carried on board the *Leopard*, but three of them, as was afterwards proved, were native Americans.

21. Our government remonstrated, but in vain. It then undertook to retaliate by laying an embargo upon American vessels—that is, prohibiting them from sailing to foreign ports. The law also prohibited all foreign ships from carrying cargoes from American ports. **The Embargo.** This sudden suspension of commerce, while it inflicted damage on France and England, especially the latter, inflicted greater damage upon the United States, for “the embargo shut ourselves out from the trade of the whole world. It only cut off England from that of the United States. The loud outcries from the opponents of the measure, especially from New England,” made the administration unpopular, the act was repealed, and a non-intercourse law, prohibiting all commerce with France and England, substituted.

Madison's Administration.

1. Jefferson served two terms. Towards the end of the second, in imitation of the example set by Washington, he declined to be a candidate again, and was succeeded by James Madison, of Virginia, the candidate of the Anti-Federalists, or, as they were then called, the Republicans. This was the same party, in most part, that had elected and supported Jefferson. The new president's administration began on the 4th of March, 1809.¹



MADISON.

2. As the British still continued their unjust claims and measures, Congress

¹ Before Madison became president, the Indians on the western frontier, influenced by British emissaries, and led on by their great chief Tecumseh, began to form a confederacy against the United States. To check their hostilities, General Harrison was sent to the West, and in the important battle of Tippecanoe in the western part of Indiana, while Tecumseh was absent, defeated them with great loss (1811).

declared war against Great Britain in June, 1812. General Hull, the governor of Michigan Territory, who had served with credit in the war of the Revolution, was at the time marching with a force of less than two thousand men from Ohio to Detroit. His

**War declared
—Invasion
of Canada.**



object was to defend the northwestern frontier from the Indians. While on the march he received news of the declaration of war. Arriving at Detroit, which then contained about eight hundred inhabitants, he crossed the river and thus invaded Canada. After some operations of little importance, he recrossed the river and took post at Detroit. Here he was besieged by a large force

of British and Indians, and, though his troops felt confident of victory in the expected battle, he ordered a white flag to be hoisted, and gave up the place without striking a single blow.¹

3. During the first year of the war the Americans met with nothing but disaster in their operations on the land. On the ocean, however, several brilliant victories cheered them. England, with her thousand ships, despised the enemy who came against her with less than twenty. At sea, England felt herself omnipotent, but it was there

¹ Two years after, Hull was tried by a court-martial, pronounced guilty of cowardice, and sentenced to be shot; but, on account of his Revolutionary services, which were many and heroic, he was pardoned. It is believed at the present day by those who are well acquainted with the facts in the case, that Hull did only his duty, painful as it was, in making the surrender, and that, consequently, the sentence was unjust.

disaster overtook her. Five desperate encounters took place, five victories remained with the Americans, five English war ships were taken or destroyed.¹ England's sovereignty of the sea had received a rude shock.

4. One of these encounters took place near the Gulf of St. Lawrence, between the American frigate *Constitution*, familiarly known as "Old Ironsides," commanded by Captain Hull (nephew of the general who had surrendered Detroit to the British), and the British frigate *Guerriere* (*gà-re-e-dre'*), Captain Dacres. ^{Capture of the *Guerriere*.} "The English vessel was well known, for she had at one of her mast-heads a flag proudly flying with her name in large letters upon it. The *Guerriere* opened fire and kept it up steadily for nearly an hour, to which the *Constitution* replied with only an occasional gun. The *Constitution* then drew slowly ahead, and the moment her bows began to lap the quarters of the *Guerriere*, her forward guns opened, and, in a few minute after, the welcome orders were received to pour in broadside after broadside as rapidly as possible. When she was fairly abeam, the broadsides were fired with a rapidity and power that astonished the enemy. As the old ship forged slowly ahead with her greater way, she seemed to be moving in flame. The mizzen-mast of the enemy soon fell with a crash, while her hull was riddled with shot.

5. As Hull passed his antagonist he wheeled short around her bows to prevent a raking fire, but in doing this he came dead into the wind, and his sails were taken aback. As the *Constitution* rolled away on the heavy swell, the foremast of the *Guerriere* fell back against the mainmast, carrying that down in its descent, and leaving the frigate a helpless wreck. Dacres had fought his ship well, and, when every spar in her was down, gallantly nailed the jack to the stump of the mizzen-mast. But further resistance was impossible, and he

¹ Decatur, commanding the frigate *United States*, captured the British frigate *Macedonian*; and Bainbridge, commanding the *Constitution*, captured the British frigate *Java*.

therefore struck her flag." The captured vessel had been so much injured it was found impossible to keep her afloat. She was consequently set on fire, and soon only a few floating planks were all that was left to tell where that proud vessel had sunk. "The first English frigate that ever struck its flag to an American ship-of-war, had gone down to the bottom of the ocean. The sea never rolled over a vessel whose fate so startled the world. It disappeared forever, but it left its outline on the deep, never to be effaced till England and America shall be no more (Aug. 19, 1812)."

6. Madison, though earnestly opposed by the Federalists, who condemned the war, was chosen for a second term; and it was then resolved to prosecute hostilities with vigor.

Don't give up the ship. But while the gallantry of the American seamen still continued to be the theme of admiration, they were not always successful; and English sailors were burning with eagerness to wipe out the unlooked-for disgrace, as they regarded it, which had fallen upon their flag. They blockaded American ports, and, while doing so, watched for opportunities to retrieve the honor of the service. One was presented on the first of June, 1813. The frigate *Chesapeake*, Captain Lawrence, sailed out of the harbor of Boston, and was met by the British frigate *Shannon*.

7. "For a few minutes the cannonading was terrific, but some of the rigging of the *Chesapeake* being cut to pieces, one of the sails got loose and blew out, which brought the ship into the wind. Then, backing on her enemy, and the rigging and an anchor becoming entangled, she could not get off. This, of course, exposed her to a raking fire, which swept her decks." Lawrence fell, mortally wounded. Carried below, his last words were, "Don't give up the ship." All his superior officers were killed or wounded. Over decks covered with the slain and slippery with blood, the Englishmen sprang upon the yielding foe. The American flag was pulled down, and, for the first time since the declaration of war,

the British flag was hoisted on a vessel of the American nation. So, exultingly thought England, "the naval superiority of the English was restored."

8. Lake Erie at that time was in the possession of a British fleet, but during the summer a competing fleet was fitted out



COMMODORE PERRY.

with much effort by Captain (afterward Commodore) Perry. "Per-

ry was then a mere youth, of twenty-seven years of age, but ardent, chivalrous, and full of energy and resource. On the morning of the 10th of September it was announced that the British fleet was coming out of Malden, and Perry, whose fleet was anchored in

**Perry's
victory.**

Put-in-Bay, a haven of one of the islands in the western part of the lake, immediately set sail to meet it. The American squadron consisted of three brigs—the Lawrence, Niagara, and Caledonia—a sloop, and five schooners, carrying in all fifty-four guns. That of the British was composed of six vessels, mounting sixty-three guns. It was a beautiful morning, and the light breeze scarcely ruffled the surface of the water as the two squadrons, with all sails set, slowly approached each other.

9. The shore was lined with spectators, gazing on the exciting spectacle, and watching with intense anxiety the movements of the American squadron. Not a cloud dimmed the clear blue sky, and the lake lay like a mirror, reflecting its beauty and its purity. Perry, in the Lawrence, led the line. Taking out the flag which had been previously prepared, and mounting a gun-slide, he called the crew about him and said: 'My brave lads, this flag contains the last words of Captain Lawrence. Shall I hoist it?' 'Aye, aye, sir,' was the cheerful response. Up went the flag with a will, and as it swayed to the breeze it was greeted with loud cheers from the deck. As the rest of the squadron beheld the flag floating from the mainmast of their commander's vessel, and

saw that '*Don't give up the ship!*' was to be the signal for action, a long, loud cheer rolled down the line.

10. A single gun, whose shot went skipping past the Lawrence, first uttered its stern challenge, and in a few minutes all the long guns of the enemy began to play on the American fleet. Being a mile and a half distant, Perry could not use his carronades, and he was exposed to this fire for half an hour before he could get within range. Steering straight for the Detroit, a vessel a fourth larger than his own, he gave orders to have the schooners close up within half cable's length. These orders were passed by trumpet from vessel to vessel, but before the Lawrence could get near enough to open with her carronades, the fire of three vessels was directed upon her. Enveloped in flame and smoke, Perry strove desperately for two hours in this unequal contest. The balls crashed incessantly through the sides of the ship, until at length, with 'every brace and bow-line shot away,' she lay an unmanageable wreck on the water. But still through the smoke her colors were seen flying, and still gleamed forth in the sunlight that glorious motto, '*Don't give up the ship!*'

11. Looking through the smoke, Perry saw the Niagara, apparently uncrippled. Leaping into a boat with his young brother, he said to his remaining officer, 'If a victory is to be gained, I will gain it,' and standing erect, told the sailors to give way with a will. The enemy observed the movement and immediately directed their fire upon the boat. Oars were splintered in the rowers' hands by musket balls, and the men themselves were covered with spray from the round shot and grape that smote the water on every side. Passing swiftly through the iron storm, Perry reached the Niagara in safety, and as the survivors of the Lawrence saw him climb up the vessel's side, they gave a hearty cheer.

12. Finding the Niagara sound and whole, Perry backed his main-topsail, and flung out his signal for close action. From vessel to vessel the answering signal went up in the sunlight, and three cheers rang over the water. He then gave his sails to

the wind and bore steadily down on the centre of the enemy's line. Reserving his fire as he advanced, he passed along through the hostile fleet, within close pistol range, wrapt in flames as he swept on. Delivering his broadsides right and left, and rounding to as he passed the line, he laid his vessel close to two of the enemy's ships and poured in his rapid fire. The other vessels of his fleet having come up, the conflict at once became general.

13. An action so close and murderous could not last long, and it was soon apparent that victory inclined to the Americans, for while the enemy's fire sensibly slackened, the signal for close action was still flying from the Niagara; and from every American vessel the answering signal floated proudly in the wind. In fifteen minutes from the time the first signal was made the battle was over. A white handkerchief, waved from the taffrail of the Queen Charlotte, announced the surrender. The firing ceased, and the smoke slowly cleared away, revealing the two fleets commingled, shattered, and torn!"

14. This great victory gave the Americans the possession of Michigan, as well as of Lake Erie. Perry's laconic account of it is memorable. He wrote: "We have met the enemy and they are ours."¹ He suddenly found **Harrison's** himself in the front rank of heroes. **victory.** Harrison crossed the lake to Canada, and with swift and eager pursuit followed a large force of the enemy—British and Indians—overtaking them at the Thames river. The Americans charged, broke the lines of the British, and compelled them to surrender; but the contest with the Indians was obstinate. At length their chief, the celebrated Tecumseh,² fell and they fled. The war on the western frontier was ended (Oct., 1813).

¹ This dispatch ranks with the celebrated one, *I came, I saw, I conquered*, sent by the great Roman general, Cæsar, after a great victory.

² Tecumseh had, several months before, visited the Creek Indians, at the South, and incited them to take up arms against the whites. Fifteen hundred of their warriors surprised Fort Mims, in Alabama, and massacred nearly three hundred persons (August 1813). General Jackson attacked them at To-ho-pe'-ka, completely routed them, and thus ended the war (March, 1814).

15. Two campaigns from New York against Canada had been put into execution, but they ended in failure.¹ A third was placed under the command of General Brown. The

Invasion of Canada. Americans crossed the Niagara river, captured Fort Erie without a struggle, and at Chippewa (*chip'-pe-waw*) gained a brilliant victory (July 5, 1814). About three weeks later, while advancing from Chippewa, they were attacked at Lundy's Lane. Lieutenant (after-

ward General) Scott, who led the advance, bravely contended against superior numbers until the arrival of the main body. It soon became evident that a battery which the enemy held on a height, and which swept all parts of the field, must be captured, or the Americans be defeated. Brown, turning to Colonel Miller, asked him if he could take it. "I will try, sir," was the brief reply of the fearless soldier as he



scanned the frowning hill. He did try, and, amid fearful havoc, was successful. Three times the enemy attempted to retake their lost battery, but they were repulsed at every assault. Finally, at midnight, they withdrew; and thus was ended the most obstinate battle of the war—one more death-

¹ Toward the latter part of April, 1813, General Dearborn crossed Lake Ontario, and proceeded to attack York. The troops landed, led by General Pike, and were carrying everything before them, when the enemy's magazine exploded, mortally wounding Pike, and making sad havoc among his men. After a moment's panic they moved on, and were soon in possession of the town. "Pike was carried on board one of the ships, and the last act of his life was to make a sign that the British flag, which had been brought to him, should be placed under his head. America mourned the loss of a gallant officer, a pure patriot, and a noble man."

dealing, in proportion to the numbers engaged, than had ever been fought on the American continent (July 25).

16. Another victory was in reserve for the Americans. A large British army from Canada marched against Plattsburg, and, at the same time, their fleet on Lake Champlain, sailed to attack the American fleet, under Commodore Mac-Donough. While the enemy, from their batteries, commenced the land attack, their fleet engaged **Plattsburg and Lake Champlain.** MacDonough's vessels, which were at anchor in the bay of Plattsburg. In a little more than two hours MacDonough gained a complete victory. The fire from the land batteries then slackened, and, at nightfall, the invading army made a rapid and silent retreat (Sept. 11, 1814).

17. While these successes at the North were gladdening the hearts of the Americans, a British squadron entered Chesapeake bay, and landed five thousand men commanded by General Ross. Meeting with very little opposition on their march, the troops entered the city of **Washington in flames.** Washington. "The night that followed was one of dismay to the inhabitants. The streets were crowded with men, women, and children, horses, carriages, and carts loaded with household furniture—all hastening towards a wooden bridge which crosses the Potomac." In the capitol, chairs, desks, and books were piled together by the vandal troops of "his gracious majesty" King George the third, and the torch was applied to the heap. The flames, passing from room to room, soon wrapped the noble library, and, bursting from the windows, leaped to the roof, enveloping the edifice in a fire that illuminated the country for miles around. To the president's mansion and other buildings the torch was also applied, and indiscriminate pillage closed the scene (Aug. 24).

18. In fear of an uprising of the people, Ross, on the following day, made a hasty retreat to the ships. His next design was against Baltimore; but on his march **Attack on Baltimore.** thither, he was slain in a skirmish. His forces, checked for a short time by the militia, encamped near the de-

fenses of the city, prepared to co-operate with the fleet, which had ascended the Patapsco. Fort McHenry, about two miles from Baltimore, stood in the way of the fleet's advance. The vessels, forming in a semicircle, commenced to bombard the fort on the morning of September 13th, and continued their fire until near the following morning. No serious impression, however, was made by the incessant shower of rockets and shells; and the British, hopeless of success, withdrew.¹

19. Florida was then a Spanish possession, but the inhabitants, instead of being neutral, gave aid to the British by allowing them to fit out expeditions in

New Orleans the port of Pensacola. Jackson saved.

son, the hero of the Creek war, remonstrating in vain, left Mobile, where the British had been repulsed from the fort at the entrance of the harbor, and boldly marched to Pensacola, and by seizing it compelled the British to leave the town (1814). Soon after, learning that an invasion of Louisiana was threatened, he hastened to New Orleans to put that city in a state of defense.



20. Sir Edward Pakenham, one of the great heroes of the British army, fresh from the victorious fields of Spain, commanded the invading force. Jackson's line of defense extended more than a mile. The Mississippi covered his right flank, an impassable jungle and swamp secured his left. Along his front ran a rampart of earth and a deep ditch. The British, six thousand strong, made an attack; but volley after volley was poured upon them with such terrible effect

¹ It was during this bombardment that the incident occurred which inspired the composition of the "Star-spangled Banner." This national ode was written by Francis S. Key, an American detained on board one of the bombarding vessels. He had watched with painful anxiety during the day the national flag as it floated above the ramparts of the fort; and during the night, the glare of the "bombs bursting in air," showed the stars and stripes still waving in triumph. The song expresses his exultation at beholding, "by the dawn's early light," that the flag still floated over the fort.

that they were compelled to flee. Pakenham was slain, and two thousand of his men were killed, wounded, or made prisoners (Jan. 8, 1815).¹

21. A large number of citizens of the United States, mostly residents of New England, as previously stated, were opposed to the war, which they regarded as entirely unnecessary. "Many town-meetings were held in Massachusetts, and, with great unanimity, addresses and memorials were sent to the General Court of that State; but as commissioners had been sent to Europe for the purpose of negotiating a treaty of peace, it was judged advisable not to have any action upon them till the result of the negotiations should be known. But during the summer of 1814 no news of peace arrived; and, the distresses of the country increasing, and the sea-coast remaining defenseless, the governor summoned a special meeting of the legislature, in which the petitions of the towns were taken into consideration, and a resolve was passed appointing delegates to a convention to be held in Hartford, Connecticut.

**The
Hartford
Convention.**

22. The measure of resorting to a convention for the purpose of arresting the evils of the administration roused the jealousy of the advocates of the war, and called forth the bitterest invectives. The convention, composed of delegates from all the New England States, was represented as a treasonable combination, originating in Boston, for the purpose of dissolving the Union.² But citizens of Boston had no concern in originating the proposal for a convention. It was wholly the project of people in old Hampshire county, Massachusetts—as respectable and patriotic Republicans as ever trod the soil of a free country; and all the stories which have been circulated respecting the evil designs of that convention, I know to be the foulest misrepresentations." A

¹ The frigate *Essex*, Captain Porter, after a successful cruise, was attacked in the harbor of Valparaiso by two British vessels. Porter made a desperate defense, but at last was forced to surrender (1814).

² Dr. Webster is slightly in error. Only three States sent delegates to the convention. Two from New Hampshire and one from Vermont were from counties.

report, recommending several amendments to the Constitution, was adopted ; and, after three weeks of secret session, the convention adjourned.

23. About a month after the defeat of the British at New Orleans—alas ! there was no Atlantic telegraph to stop the

End of the war. carnage of that day !—the joyful tidings reached the United States that a treaty of peace had been signed at Ghent (*gent*), on the 24th of December, of the preceding year. “No victory ever so electrified the nation as the news of this peace. The ship that bore the glad intelligence reached New York on a Saturday evening, an hour after dark. In half an hour after, Broadway was one

How the news was received. living sea of shouting, rejoicing people. ‘Peace ! peace ! peace !’ was the deep, harmonious, universal anthem. The whole spectacle was enlivened by a sudden inspiration. Somebody came with a torch ; the bright idea passed into a thousand brains. In a few minutes thousands and tens of thousands of people were marching about with candles, lamps, and torches, making the jubilant street appear like a gay and gorgeous procession. The whole night Broadway sang its song of peace ; and the next day, Sunday, all the churches sent up hymns of thanksgiving for the joyous tidings.” Expresses were sent off north and south with the news. On Monday morning, after the greatest efforts of speed, the rider dashed into the city of Boston, where the news was also received with clamorous rejoicings. “All the bells were at once set to ringing, and the schools received a holiday. At night the city flamed far and wide, telling the glorious tale even to Cape Cod.”

24. “Just as the late war had broken out, the Dey of Algiers, taking offense at not having received from America the precise articles in the way of tribute demanded, dismissed

War with Algiers. our consul, declared war, and captured an American vessel reducing her crew to slavery. Immediately after the ratification of the treaty with England, this declaration of war was reciprocated. Efforts were at once

made to fit out ships, new and old, and before many weeks Decatur sailed from New York with a fleet of ten vessels. Two days after passing Gibraltar, he fell in with and captured an Algerian frigate, after a running fight of twenty-five minutes. A day or two later, an Algerian brig was chased into shoal water and also captured (1815)."

25. "On the 28th of June, the squadron rode at anchor in the bay of Algiers. It may be supposed that its formidable appearance awakened both surprise and apprehension in the breast of the Dey. He saw its power, but he had not yet heard of its successes. Little did he ^{Treaty} ~~with Algiers.~~ imagine that his favorite admiral was killed and his best ship was a prize. The captain of the port and the Swedish consul came on board. To them Decatur delivered a letter from President Madison for the Dey, in which complaints were made of the faithless violations of the former treaty. The letter further expressed the hope of an amicable adjustment of difficulties without a continuance of the war. The captain of the port was also now first informed of the captures, the account of which was confirmed to his satisfaction by the prisoners on board.

26. The letter, the force which was on hand to sustain its doctrines, and the losses already experienced and keenly felt, soon induced in the Dey a more humble and conciliatory spirit and demeanor than he was accustomed to manifest toward the representatives of foreign powers. He sent an invitation to the commissioners whom President Madison had appointed to negotiate a treaty, to visit him at his palace, and there to make arrangements for a settlement. His policy was to enter into a protracted course of negotiations, in order to gain time, during which he might take advantage of some more favorable change in his affairs. Such delay Decatur wisely determined to avoid. The commissioners, after consultation, refused to go on shore, and declared that negotiations must be conducted on board Decatur's flagship. They also presented the draft of a treaty, to which

they declared the Dey must assent. In fine, they would have his majesty understand that they were to dictate the terms of peace, and not he. This was high ground to take in treating with these (the Barbary) states ; but it could be, and was maintained.

27. The captain of the port now desired that at least hostilities should cease while negotiations were going on. To this request Decatur promptly replied : ' Not a minute : if your squadron appears in sight before the treaty is signed by the Dey and sent off with the prisoners, ours will capture it.' After further discussion and some slight alterations in the terms, the agents of the Dey carried the treaty on shore to obtain his consent and signature. In the mean time a corsair hove in sight, coming in toward the harbor close under the shore. True to his word, Decatur made signal for the squadron to chase. This movement of the fleet hastened matters on shore, for soon the boat, with a white flag, was seen coming off. It had been agreed that this should be the signal that the treaty was really signed. When, then, the boat was discovered making all haste toward Decatur's ship, that commander felt obliged to order the chase to be relinquished.

28. This treaty secured for the Americans advantages, in some points, over all other nations, and in all respects placed them on a footing with the most favored. Its principal articles provided that no more tribute should be paid, and that no Americans should evermore be enslaved." Then, proceeding to Tunis and Tripoli, Decatur obtained from both powers " indemnity for American vessels captured under the guns of their forts by British cruisers during the late war."

29. Two States were admitted to the Union during the administration of Madison. Soon after the " Louisiana Province" had become the property of the United States, ^{The} ^{18th and 19th} its southern portion was made the Territory of ^{States.} Orleans, and this portion, in 1812, was admitted as a State, with the name of Louisiana. The Northwest Ter-

ritory, after Ohio had been taken out, became the Territory of Indiana, and the southeastern part of this was admitted as the State of Indiana, in 1816.

Monroe's Administration.

1. Madison, having served two terms and declining to be a candidate for a third, was succeeded by James Monroe, of Virginia, the nominee of the Republicans. "Shortly after his inauguration (March 4, 1817), Monroe, imitating the example of Washington, set out on a tour through the Eastern States. His declaration of principles in his inaugural address had been highly satisfactory to the Federalists, and at Boston, where the people were mostly of that party, he was received with most elaborate pomp. Embittered and hot-tempered leaders of parties, who for the last seven years had hardly deigned to speak to each other, or even to walk on the same side of the street, met now with smiling faces." The "era of good feeling" had come.

The fifth president.



JAMES MONROE.

2. Monroe's first trouble was with the Seminoles, of Florida, who, joined by other Indians, were committing serious depredations on the settlements of Georgia. Jackson, who had been sent to repress these outrages, finding that the Indians were encouraged by certain persons in Florida, invaded that territory, although at the time it belonged to Spain, with which country our government was at peace. He took the forts at St. Marks and Pensacola, and put to death two British traders, who, he believed, had supplied the Indians with arms and

The Seminole war and Florida.

incited them to hostilities. This bold measure at once threatened to involve the country in a war with Spain ; but the difficulties were finally settled by Spain agreeing to sell Florida to the United States for five millions of dollars. A treaty to that effect was signed by the Spanish minister at Washington in 1819. This was not, however, promptly ratified by the king of Spain, and, in consequence, Florida did not come into the possession of the United States before 1821.

3. During Monroe's administration the Union was enlarged by the admission of five new States. Georgia had claimed all the domain west of her present limits as far as the Mississippi river, but ceding it to the general government, it became the Mississippi Territory. The western portion of this was admitted into the Union as Mississippi (1817), and two years later the other part was admitted as Alabama (1819). The year before this last event, the Territory of Illinois, shorn of its northern portion, joined the Union family as the State of Illinois (1818). Maine was at that time what it had been all along from the colonial period, a District of Massachusetts, but the inhabitants of the district desired to have it set apart as a separate and independent State. They adopted a constitution and then made application to Congress for admission into the Union. An obstacle, very much to their surprise, just then presented itself. This was slavery, but not slavery in Maine ; it was slavery in Missouri. The Missourians, who had many slaves, also asked for admission to the Union, but they wanted to have their petition granted without any conditions being imposed against slavery. In Congress the two applications were joined in one bill ; but, after a long contest, were separated, and Maine became the twenty-third State of the Union (1820).

4. As the people of the North were opposed to any increase of the number and power of the slave States, their representatives in Congress endeavored to prevent the admission of Missouri with its constitution permitting slavery. The discussion was long and violent ;

**The
Missouri
Compromise.**

but, at length, the measure known as the "Missouri Compromise" was adopted (1820). By this it was provided that slavery should be prohibited in all the territory, except Missouri, lying north of the parallel $36^{\circ} 30'$, west of the Mississippi. After the adoption of this compromise, Missouri was admitted (1821).¹ (See Appendix, p. 12, 1st clause and note.)

5. Monroe was president two terms. Towards the close of his second, an interesting event took place in the visit made by Lafayette to this country. Accompanied by his son,



LAFAYETTE.

George Washington Lafayette's
Lafayette, he arrived visit.

at New York, where he met with a brilliant reception. Proceeding on a tour through the United States, he was everywhere received as "The Nation's Guest." For more than a year, his journey was a complete ovation—a perpetual and splendid pageant. "The people appeared delirious with joy and with anxiety to hail him,

grasp him by the hand, and shower attentions and honors upon him. As he passed through the country, every city, village, and hamlet, poured out its inhabitants to meet him. Celebrations, processions, dinners, illuminations, bonfires, parties, balls, serenades, and rejoicings of every description, attended his way."

6. "In June, 1825, he visited Boston, and on the 17th day

¹ **The Monroe Doctrine.**—An important event of Monroe's administration was the recognition of the South American republics, which had declared and maintained their independence for several years. This act of recognition had been urged in Congress with great ability by Henry Clay, of Kentucky. The next year (1823) President Monroe, in his annual message, declared that, "as a principle, the American continents, by the free and independent position which they have assumed and maintained, are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power." This principle is known as the "Monroe Doctrine."

of the month, it being the anniversary of the battle of Bunker Hill, he participated in the ceremony of laying the corner-



BUNKER HILL MONUMENT.

stone of the monument in commemoration of that event, on the hill where the battle was fought, Daniel Webster being the orator of the occasion. The time for his departure drew near. "A new frigate, the *Brandywine*, named in honor of the gallant exploits of Lafayette at the battle of Brandywine, was provided by Congress to convey him to France." The farewell scene in the president's house, at Washington, President Adams being then its occupant, was deeply af-

fecting, and, amid the peals of artillery and the music of military bands, an immense procession accompanied the venerable chief to the banks of the Potomac (1825).

Administration of John Quincy Adams.

1. "The presidential campaign of 1824 was more spirited and exciting than any that had taken place since the first election of Jefferson. Strictly speaking, it could not be

^{The} called a party contest, for Monroe's wise and pru-
 10th national dent administration had obliterated party lines."
 election.

All the candidates, four in number—John Quincy Adams, Andrew Jackson, Henry Clay, and William H. Crawford,—agreed substantially to the same political creed. The struggle was therefore a personal and sectional one, more than of a party nature. As no one of the candidates received a majority of the electoral votes, it became the duty of the

House of Representatives to make a choice, and that choice fell upon John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts. It thus happened that Mr. Adams took the executive chair, March 4th, 1825, which, just twenty-eight years before, had been taken by his venerated father, and that father still lived, though his work was almost done, and it was not to be his privilege long to see his son in the enjoyment of this, the highest office in the gift of his country.



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

2. "The 4th of July, 1826, will long be memorable for one of the most remarkable coincidences that has ever taken place in the history of nations. It was the fiftieth anniversary—the 'Jubilee'—of American Independence. Preparations had been made throughout the Union to celebrate the day with unusual pomp and display. John Adams and Thomas Jefferson had both been invited to participate in the festivities of the occasion, at their several places of abode. But a higher summons awaited them! they were bidden to a 'jubilee' above, which shall have no end. On that half-century anniversary of American Independence, at nearly the same hour of the day, the spirits of Adams and Jefferson took their departure from earth. Amid the rejoicings of the people, the peals of artillery, the strains of music, the exultations of a great nation in the enjoyment of freedom, peace, and happiness, they were released from the toils of life, and allowed to enter on their rest.

Death
of Adams
and Jefferson.

3. The one virtually the mover, the other the framer, of the immortal Declaration of Independence—they had together shared the dangers and the honors of the revolution, had served their country in various important and responsible capacities, had both received the highest honors in the gift of

their fellow-citizens, had lived to see the nation to which they assisted in giving birth, assume a proud stand among the nations of the earth,—her free institutions framed, consolidated, tried, and matured, her commerce hovering over all seas, respected abroad, united, prosperous, happy at home,—what more on earth could there be in store for them? Together they had counselled, together they had dared the power of a proud and powerful government, together they had toiled to build up a great and prosperous people, together they rejoiced in the success with which a wise and good Providence had crowned their labors, and together, on their country's natal day, amid the loud-swelling acclamations of the 'national jubilee,' their freed spirits soared to light and glory above."

4. The subject of domestic manufactures engaged a large share of President Adams's attention. In 1828 a law was passed imposing heavy duties upon certain imported articles, the object being, not only to collect a revenue, but to encourage and protect the manufacture of such articles in this country. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, vice-president of the United States, had been the most active and the most zealous of the early advocates of this doctrine; while Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, was its leading opponent.



DANIEL WEBSTER.

5. Then the South began to manufacture the cotton it raised, instead of sending it to the North and thence having it transported to England in Yankee ships. A new vision unfolded itself to New England. If the South could prosper by running factories, why could not the North? Cotton-mills, accordingly, were planted in New England, and they flourished, for

the dull, unintelligent slave labor of the South could not compete with the skilful, enterprising free labor of the North. What followed is apparent. In a little while the North became the advocate of a protective tariff ; the South, the opponent. So, too, legislation changed ; and we have had since the day when the first protective tariff was called into existence (1816) to the present time (1879), numerous tariffs, some having for their special object protection, others, revenue ; and still, with all our varied experience we have not reached a definite, permanent policy on this subject.

6. Adams was the friend and promoter of internal improvements ; and during his administration more was done, aided by the general government, to promote these objects than in all the previous administrations. “ More than ^{Internal} one million of dollars were expended in enlarg- ~~improvements~~ ing and maintaining the light-house establishment, half a million in completing the public buildings, two millions in erecting arsenals, barracks, and furnishing armories ; upwards of three millions in fortifying the sea-coast ; and more than four millions in improving the internal communications between different parts of the country, and in procuring information, by scientific surveys, concerning its capacity for further improvement.”

7. In addition to all this, “ more than five millions of dollars were appropriated to solace the declining years of the surviving soldiers of the Revolution ; and a million and a half expended in extinguishing the Indian title to lands, and defraying the expense of the removal beyond the Mississippi of such tribes as were unqualified for a residence near civilized communities, and in promoting the civilization of those, who, relying on the faith of the United States, preferred to remain on the lands which were the abodes of their fathers. At the same time the interest on the public debt was punctually paid, and the debt itself was in a constant course of reduction.”

8. On the 4th of July, 1828, Adams, accompanied by an

immense number of persons,—members of Congress, foreign ministers, and others—was present at the ceremony of “breaking ground” on the Chesapeake and Ohio canal. The year before, Edward Everett, in an address said : “ A system of internal improvement has been commenced, which will have the effect, when a little further developed, of crowding within a few years the progress of generations. Already Lake Champlain from the north, and Lake Erie from the west, have been connected with Albany. Delaware and Chesapeake bays have been united. A canal is nearly finished in the upper part of New Jersey, from the Delaware to the Hudson, by which coal is dispatched to our market. Another route is laid out, across the same State, to connect New York by a railroad with Philadelphia. A water communication has been opened, by canals, half-way from Philadelphia to Pittsburg. A canal of sixty miles in length is open from Cincinnati to Dayton, in the State of Ohio ; and another, of more than three hundred miles in extent, to connect Lake Erie with the Ohio, is two-thirds completed.”

Jackson's Administration.

1. The presidential contest of 1828 was more exciting than any that had preceded it. There were two parties contending for the prize. Adams was the candidate of one, which was a union of Republicans with most of the old Federalists. Jackson was the candidate of the other, which was made up in most part of Republicans. The members of this party took the name of Democrats. The contest was exceedingly bitter and personal ; not only the public acts, but even the pri-



ANDREW JACKSON.

vate lives of the two candidates were closely scanned. Jackson was successful by a very large majority, and was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1829. Calhoun was a second time chosen vice-president.

2. Adams, like his predecessors, had refused to make office-holding depend upon politics; but Jackson believed in the doctrine, formulated at a later day, that "to the victor belongs the spoils." He, therefore, commenced the practice called "rotation in office," by which government officials are removed from their positions and the **Rotation in office.** political friends of the president appointed to the offices. Jackson's course provoked protest and abuse, but it was firmly persisted in, and has been followed to a greater or less extent by all his successors.

3. In his first annual message to Congress, Jackson took ground against the renewal of the charter of the United States Bank; and when, notwithstanding his objections, a bill was passed to renew it, he vetoed the measure (1832). The next year he withdrew the government deposits from the bank, and caused them to be placed in several of the State banks, which, because they were thus favored, were thence spoken of as "Pet Banks." This act caused great excitement; and a resolution of the Senate declared the act unconstitutional, and censured the president. The State banks which had received the government funds, increased their loans to the merchants, and money became so abundant that the price of everything was advanced. This led to speculation, all hoping to become suddenly rich. Farms were laid out for cities, and cut up into building lots, which sold at fabulous prices, although those who bought them were unable to build upon them, or

¹ In 1791, during Washington's administration, the first bank of the United States was established by Congress, for a period of twenty years. Its charter was not renewed. In 1816, the second bank of the United States was established, to exist till the 3d of March, 1836, when it ceased to act under the charter granted by Congress.

even to pay for them. The ruinous consequences of this state of things were experienced not long afterward.

4. The tariff law of 1828 grew every year more unsatisfactory to the cotton-growing States ; and, though an act was passed removing some of the duties on foreign goods, they were still discontented. South Carolina took the **Nullification** lead in opposition to the law, or, rather, was the only member of the Union that assumed State hostility to it. A convention, elected by its voters, met and ordained that the tariff law was null and void, that no duties should be paid in the State, no appeal should be permitted to be made to the Supreme Court of the United States, and that should the general government attempt to enforce the law by collecting the duties, the State of South Carolina would secede from the Union (1832).

5. "The State resounded with the noise of warlike preparations. Blue cockades, with a palmetto button in the centre, appeared upon thousands of hats, bonnets, and bosoms. Medals were struck ere long, bearing this inscription : 'John C. Calhoun, First President of the Southern Confederacy.' The legislature proceeded to fill the vacancy created in the Senate of the United States by the election of Mr. Hayne to the governorship. John C. Calhoun, vice-president of the United States, was the person selected, and he accepted the seat. He resigned the vice-presidency, and began his journey to Washington, leaving his State in the wildest ferment."



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

6. Jackson acted with promptness and firmness. He sent General Scott to Charleston, a naval force was anchored off the city, and all the military posts in South Carolina were occupied by United States

troops. Then Jackson issued his celebrated proclamation (December 11th, 1832), announcing his determination to enforce the law. "Argument, warning, and entreaty were blended in its composition." "The Union," he said, "must and shall be preserved." These prompt and decisive measures had the desired effect. The nullifiers, as they were called, were restrained; and, not long afterward, a "compromise bill," providing for the gradual reduction of the duties, was offered

by Henry Clay, accepted by Calhoun and the other South Carolina leaders, and passed by Congress. Thus quiet was restored.



HENRY CLAY.

7. The election campaign in 1832 came on while the bank and nullification troubles were at their height. It was a decidedly ear-

**Jackson's
2d election.**

nest one. The country was very much excited and party spirit ran high. Jackson, who was again the candidate of the

Democrats, was lauded as "the hero of New Orleans," the "old Roman," and, in allusion to his toughness as a soldier, "Old Hickory." Hickory poles, these being hickory trees trimmed so as to leave no limbs except at the top, were raised at the great out-door meetings. Every city-ward, every town, village, and hamlet had its hickory pole at the head-quarters of the party. On one occasion of a hickory-pole raising in New York city, there was a Democratic procession, says a French traveler who described it, "nearly a mile long." Jackson was again successful. Martin Van Buren, of New York, was chosen vice-president.

8. Two States were added to the Union while Jackson was president. The first, Arkansas, formed from the territory known as the "Louisiana Purchase," was admitted in 1836. The second, Michigan, formerly a

New States.

part of the Northwest Territory, was admitted in the early part of 1837, about a month before the expiration of Jackson's term of office. The Union then consisted of twenty-six States.

Van Buren's Administration.

1. The presidential election in the fall of 1836, resulted in the success of Martin Van Buren, whom Jackson had favored. This was another triumph of the Democratic party, the party

opposed to rechar-
 The 13th national election. tering the Bank of the United States and to a high tariff. The policy of Jackson's administration was thus continued. The candidate of the other great political body, the Whig party, was General William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, the "hero of Tippecanoe and the Thames." Colonel Richard M. Johnson, was chosen vice-president.



MARTIN VAN BUREN.

He, like Van Buren, was a Democrat.¹

2. The beginning of Van Buren's administration was noted for the bursting forth of the great financial storm, the result of the wild speculations of the few preceding years. Mer-

¹ In 1832 the northwest frontier suffered from Indian hostilities. The savages were subdued, and their great chief, Black Hawk, and other warriors, being made prisoners, were conducted through some of the principal cities of the Union to convince them of the folly of contending against the whites. Towards the close of 1835, the Seminoles of Florida renewed their hostilities, because an attempt was made to remove them to lands west of the Mississippi, according to a treaty which had been previously made with some of their chiefs. Their principal warrior, Osceola, and others, did not consider this treaty binding, and refused to obey it. Osceola was imprisoned, because of his threatening language, but, promising submission, was set free. In revenge, he attacked the whites, but was again made prisoner. The Indians were defeated by Colonel Taylor (afterward President), yet they continued hostile till 1842.

chants were unable to pay their debts, and numerous failures were the consequence. The banks, of which there were about eight hundred in number, had three times as much paper money in circulation as they had coin in their vaults. They were therefore compelled to suspend the payment of their notes in specie, and gold and silver disappeared, for those who had any hoarded it for safety. Even the government was embarrassed, for its money was locked up in the suspended banks. This led to a measure, recommended by the president, by which the keeping of the government money was intrusted to Assistant Treasurers, in certain designated places, called Sub-Treasuries. This is now the established policy of the country.

**The panic
of 1837.**

3. In 1840, the number of slaves in the United States was 2,487,455. All the Northern States had either abolished slavery or had made provision for its gradual abolishment. At the date mentioned, there were sixty-four slaves still in Pennsylvania, five in Rhode Island, seventeen in Connecticut, and about five hundred in New Jersey. The South, in the early colonial times, had been opposed to slavery, and, in the first years of our existence as a nation, our prominent men—Washington, Franklin, Jefferson, Madison, Jay, Hamilton, and many others—regarded slavery as a great evil. Various causes—the difference in climate, and the invention of the cotton gin, by which slave labor was made more profitable in the South than the North, being the principal ones,—in the course of time effected a change of opinion; and slavery was at length advocated in the Southern States as right in itself and worthy of being extended.

**The
Slavery
agitation.**

4. It is thus seen that from the very foundation of the government there were many persons opposed to slavery. As early as 1775, an "Abolition Society" was formed in Pennsylvania, with Franklin for its president, having for its object the "removal of slavery from the American people" and the "discouraging of all traffic in the persons of our fellow-men." The formation of other "Abolition Societies"

followed. At a later period, too, there were published more than two thousand abolition journals, one of the first of these, "The Liberator," having been started in Boston on the first day of 1831, by William Lloyd Garrison. The mayor of that city having been asked by a Southern magistrate to stop the publication of Garrison's paper, replied that "it was not worth the trouble, for the office of the editor was an obscure hole, his only visible auxiliary a negro boy, and his supporters a very few insignificant persons of all colors."

5. The agitation against slavery during Van Buren's administration, was prosecuted with great determination ; and this, carried on by means of lectures, newspapers, tracts, public meetings, and petitions to Congress, aroused a violent spirit of resistance. In Boston, New York, Philadelphia, and other Northern cities, anti-slavery meetings were invaded and broken up ; the offices of anti-slavery newspapers were mobbed, and, in some instances, personal violence was inflicted—in one notable case, in Illinois, death—upon the abolitionists. Still the agitation went on.

6. The first railway in America, built in 1826 and known as the Quincy Railroad, was only two miles long. It was



FIRST RAILROAD CAR FOR PASSENGERS (1830).

designed for carrying granite from the quarries of Quincy, Massachusetts, to tide water. The cars were drawn by horses. The second railway was the Mauch(*mauk*)

Chunk, which, with its turnouts and branches, in all thirteen miles long, was constructed for the transportation of coal from

the mines of that place to the Lehigh river in Pennsylvania (1827). "The Baltimore and Ohio was the first passenger railway in America, fifteen miles being opened in 1830, the cars being drawn by horses till the next year, when a locomotive was put on the track." During the same year (1830) a small locomotive, weighing not more than a ton, was built in Baltimore by Peter Cooper (afterward of New York). "It was the first locomotive for railroad purposes ever built in America. So great was the enterprise throughout the United States from 1832 to 1837 in the projection and construction of railroads, that at the end of that period the contemplated lines exceeded in number and aggregate length those of any other country."

7. We have spoken of the Clermont, Fulton's first steamboat (see p. 201). As many as six steamboats were afterward built for Fulton. The first boat of the kind on the Mississippi, was the Orleans, in 1811. She went from Pittsburg to New Orleans in fourteen days. Eight years later, the Savannah, an American steamer, crossed the Atlantic from Savannah, Georgia. In this vessel both sails and steam were used. The arrival of the first two steamers,—the Sirius and the Great Western,—at New York from Liverpool, in 1838, caused a great sensation throughout the country; and when the Great Western took her departure from New York "a fleet of steamers, decorated with flags, filled with passengers, and each having a band of music on board, accompanied her down the bay. The wharves were densely crowded with spectators, and even the house-tops were covered" with thousands of persons. Cheers went up from the excited people as a parting God-speed.

Administrations of Harrison and Tyler.

1. The depression in business affairs was attributed to the want of wisdom in Van Buren's administration, and, although he received the nomination of the Democratic party for a

second term, and was still pledged to tread in "the footsteps of his illustrious predecessor," he found it impossible to carry with him the popularity of "Old Hickory," as Jackson was affectionately called. Besides, a great many persons were disposed to try "a change of policy," thinking that it could not be for the worse. Again the Whigs nominated William Henry Harrison, who,



WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.

like Jackson enjoyed a military fame. He had fought the Indians; and the battle of Tippecanoe, though of small account compared with the battle of New Orleans, gave the Whigs a great amount of campaign capital. "Tippecanoe and Tyler too" became their rallying cry.

2. The Whigs also derived great advantage in the contest from the fact that some "thoughtless Democrat" had tauntingly alluded to their candidate as having dwelt in a "log cabin" and used "hard cider" as a beverage. The expressions, the "log-cabin candidate," and the "hard-cider campaign," at once came into popular use, and with such furor, that all the arts of the "little magician," as Van Buren was called by his political opponents, were unable to counteract its effects. Log cabins, with the "latch-string hanging out," and decorated with coon skins, were drawn on wagons in political processions, and were also made to give effect to the mass meetings, which were often composed of "acres of men." The result was the election of Harrison, and, with it, the elevation of John Tyler, of Virginia, to the office of vice-president.

3. Before he came to Washington, Harrison had lived in a plain and simple way, taking his breakfast at seven or eight, his dinner at noon, and retiring early. In the White House,

he took his breakfast at nine, dined at six, retired after midnight, and rose at five. He was then sixty-nine years of age. "Can it be a cause of wonder that his system gave way, refusing to bear this heavy and unaccustomed tax?" He was taken sick, and, just one month after his inauguration, he died (April 4th, 1841). "His death was an astounding shock to the country. He was the first president who had died in office. All the public buildings, most of the private dwellings, and even the lowliest tenements, in Washington, were draped in black; and business was suspended."

Death
of the
President.

4. John Tyler, the vice-president, being called to Washington, took the oath of office and assumed the title of president; but the course he pursued sadly disappointed the Whigs, by

whom he had been elected. They had expected to establish

Tyler
becomes
President.



JOHN TYLER.

a National Bank "for the relief of the country," but he vetoed two bank bills passed by Congress, though one of them had been previously approved by him. All the members of his Cabinet—except Daniel Webster, the Secretary of State—resigned, and he was denounced by his former political friends. Web-

ster remained at his post long enough to make what is commonly known as the Webster-Ashburton treaty, by which long-standing differences between England and the United States respecting the North-eastern boundary were settled, and provision was made for determining the entire northern boundary line to the Rocky mountains.¹

¹ In 1842 serious difficulties occurred in Rhode Island, growing out of a movement to substitute a constitution extending the right of suffrage, in place of the charter granted by Charles II., in 1663, and which had

5. A proposition for the admission of Texas into the Union caused an excited discussion throughout the country during the closing months of Tyler's administration. Texas had been **Annexation of Texas.** a province of Mexico, but the inhabitants had revolted, achieved their independence, and set up a republican government of their own. Hence, Texas was called, at this time, "The Lone Star State," one star only being on her flag. The annexation of Texas was favored by the South, because slavery existed there, but the measure was opposed by a large party in the North, who were greatly averse to any increase of the slave power in the United States. Many, too, foresaw that the annexation of Texas would produce a war with Mexico. The discussion in Congress was finally ended by the passage of a resolution in favor of the annexation, and to this Tyler gave his approval three days before he went out of office (1845).

6. The demand for the rapid communication of intelligence was by no means supplied by the locomotive and railroad. To Professor Morse is due high honor for the man-

ner in which he availed himself of scientific discoveries, previously made by others in the department of electro-magnetism, for many discoveries of his own, and especially for his perseverance in bringing his system into use for the benefit of mankind. His telegraph was first so made available in 1837. "He had completed his telegraph line from Washington to Baltimore just previous to the sitting of the Democratic convention for the

**The
magnetic
telegraph.**



MORSE.

been the "fundamental law of the land" the greater part of two centuries. The "suffrage party" attempted to effect the change without regard to existing laws, even resorting to force; but the legitimate power prevailed. A constitution, the one under which the State is now governed, was soon after adopted.

nomination of a presidential candidate, and was ready to report its proceedings every fifteen minutes. The terminus of the line in Washington was in a room adjoining the Supreme Court room, under the Senate-chamber, now the Supreme Court room.

7. Here he received and communicated dispatches during the sitting of the convention, and read them to the large crowd assembled around the window, manifesting the most intense interest in the proceedings at Baltimore, as they were from time to time received and read aloud. It was a novelty. Every few minutes it would be reported that Mr. So-and-so had made such a motion, and in a minute or two, 'the motion has failed,' or, 'has carried,' as the case might be. Again, 'A ballot is being taken for president.' 'Mr. Polk has been proposed, and a vote is being taken; such a State has voted for Mr. Polk,—such and such and such States have voted for him: he has received two-thirds, and is nominated.' This talking with Baltimore was something so novel, so strange, so extraordinary, and upon a matter of such intense interest, that we could hardly realize the fact. It seemed like enchantment, or a delusion, or a dream."

Polk's Administration.

1. The presidential contest in the fall of 1844 turned largely upon the question of the annexation of Texas. The candidate of those favoring the measure—the Democratic party,—was James K. Polk, of Tennessee. Henry Clay, ^{The} "The Mill-Boy of the Slashes,"¹ who was and ^{15th national} had been all his life, the great champion of ^{election.} "The American System," that is protection to American labor and American manufactures, was again the candidate of the Whigs, but was again defeated, for "he was not

¹ This term was applied to Clay by his political friends, in allusion to the fact that, when a boy, he was often sent on errands to a place near his home called "the Slashes," where there was a mill.

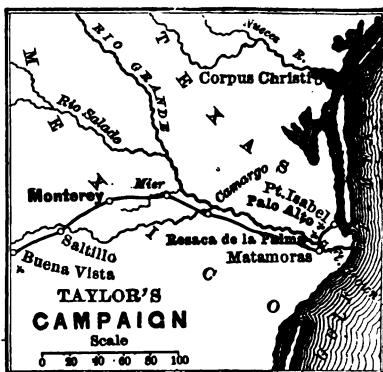
pro-slavery enough for the South, nor anti-slavery enough for the North." The Abolitionists voted for James G. Birney, who, though he did not get a single electoral vote, received sixty-five thousand of the people's ballots. Polk's inauguration took place on the 4th of March, 1845.



JAMES KNOX POLK.

2. Texas, having assented to the annexation act in the form in which it had passed Congress, the "Lone Star State" was merged in the constellation of the Union (1845). As anticipated by many, this led to a war with Mexico, for that country still claimed with Mexico. Texas as a part of her own territory. Hostilities commenced in 1846, near the Rio Grande (*re'-o grahn'-da*), to which river General Taylor had been sent to protect the new State from a threatened invasion by the Mexicans.¹

3. The Mexicans made an attack upon a small party of American dragoons, and this led to two engagements, one at Palo Alto (*pah'-lo ahl'-to*) and the other at Resaca de la Palma (*ra-sah'-kah da lah pahl-mah*), in both of which the Mexicans were defeated



¹ The United States, by the annexation of Texas, claimed the Rio Grande as their boundary, while Mexico alleged that the western limits of the province never extended beyond the Nueces river. The crossing of the latter river into the disputed territory by Taylor, was, therefore, considered by the Mexicans as the commencement of active war, and they consequently made the attack.

with severe loss (May, 1846). In a few days Taylor took the town of Matamoras, and then marching to the fortified city of Monterey (*mon-ta-ra*), after a series of assaults compelled it to capitulate (Sept. 24). These victories were gained with a force far inferior to that of the Mexicans. Taylor's last engagement in Mexico was the battle of Buena Vista (*bwa'-nah vess'-tah*). At this place, his small force, of less than five thousand troops, was attacked by Santa Anna with an army of nearly four times that number of men;¹ but after a determined contest which lasted from morning till night, the Mexicans were driven in disorder from the field (Feb. 23, 1847).

4. In the mean time, General Kearny had marched with a small force into New Mexico and taken possession of that province; while Captain Fremont, "the Pathfinder of the Rocky mountains," who had ^{Conquest of New Mexico and California.} (before the breaking out of the war) been sent to make western explorations, entered California; and, the settlers flocking to his standard, he defeated the Mexicans in several skirmishes. The conquest of California was completed by means of the American fleet under Commodores Slote and Stockton, assisted by Fremont and



JOHN C. FREMONT.

Kearny (1847).

5. It having been decided by the authorities in Washington, that, in order "to conquer a peace," the Mexican capital must be captured, this task was assigned to General Scott,

¹ Santa Anna had been made Dictator, and was the commander-in-chief of the Mexican army. He had been so sure of victory, that he sent his cavalry to intercept the retreat of the Americans. The American general, summoned to surrender, replied, "General Taylor never surrenders." In the midst of this dreadful battle he remained perfectly cool, calling out to his artillery officer at one time, "A little more grape, Captain Bragg!" The battle of Buena Vista entirely broke up Santa Anna's splendid army of twenty thousand men.

the hero of Lundy's Lane. Landing his army near the city of Vera Cruz, which was defended by a powerful ^{Scott's} ~~fortress~~ ^{campaign.} fortress that had frowned upon the waters of the gulf more than a hundred years, he opened a tremendous fire upon the city and fortress, continuing the bombardment five days, until both were compelled to surrender (March, 1847). The march to the enemy's capital was not an easy one. The Mexican army was large and commanded by the wily Santa Anna. The Americans were mainly volunteers who had never seen war before. At the mountain pass of Cerro (*sār'-ro*) Gordo, the enemy, twelve thousand in number, waited behind strong fortifications. The Americans cut a way round the mountains and assailed the fortifications. The Mexicans fled in confusion, and with so much hurry that Santa Anna, to escape capture, was obliged to leave behind his wooden leg (April). Other successes followed, and the invading army entered and occupied the ancient and populous city of Puebla (*poo-ā'-blah*). Here, Scott, having sent home a large number of his troops, because their term of enlistment had expired, waited three months for reinforcements. On their arrival he resumed his march.

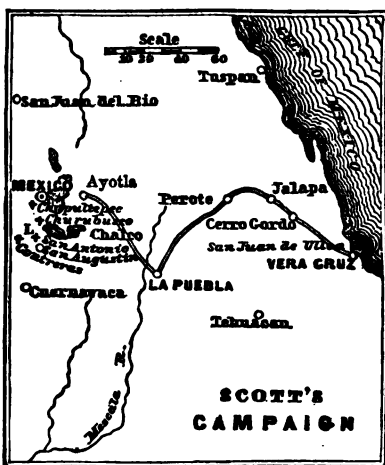


GENERAL SCOTT.

6. Finding that the direct route to the Mexican capital was strongly fortified, Scott turned southward, and encamped about ten miles from the city. The approaches to the capital were guarded by powerful batteries ; but these were all taken after severe conflicts, in which the American troops showed the greatest determination and daring. The last of these places was carried by assault on the 13th of September ; and Santa Anna and his army, being unable to make

any further resistance, fled from the city during the succeeding night. The next morning, General Scott, at the head of the American army, made a triumphal entry into the city. At first the victorious troops were attacked from the house-tops by the Mexican populace, but this opposition was soon quieted.

7. "Mexico, the capital of the ancient Aztecs, the seat of the Spanish-American empire in America—had passed from Aztec and from Spaniard to the Anglo-American—the Northman of the Goths, the Saxon of Germany, the English-



man of America—the same bold, hardy, energetic, ingenious, invincible, ambitious, and adventurous being, whose genius the forms of civilization cannot confine, and to whose dominion continents are inadequate. In what hour of time, or limit of space, shall this man of the moderns—this conqueror over land and seas, nations and governments—find rest, in the completion of his mighty progress? Commencing his march in the cold regions of Scandinavia, no ice chilled his blood—no wilderness delayed his steps—no labor wearied his industry—no armies arrested his march—no empire subdued his power. Over armies and over empires—over lands and over seas—in heat, and cold, and wilderness, and flood—amidst the desolations of death and the decays of disease—this Northman has moved on in might and majesty, steady as the footsteps of Time, and fixed as the decrees of Fate!

8. How singular—how romantically strange is this—his

wild adventure and marvellous conquest in the valley of valleys ! How came the Northman and the Moorish Celt here to meet, and here to battle, in this North-American valley ? Look at it ! Inquire ! Ask yourself how they came here ! Are they the citizens, by nature, of this continent ? Are they the aborigines of these wild and wonderful forests ? Never ! How came they, then, to be contending for the lands and groves of those whose children they are not ? In the beginning of the sixteenth century, Cortez landed on the coast of Mexico, and, at the head of Spanish troops, marched on to the conquest of Mexico, over whose effeminate inhabitants the Spaniard has, for three hundred years, held undivided dominion. Not many years after, the Anglo-Saxon landed on the coasts of the northern Atlantic. He, too, marched on to conquest. The native citizens of the forest disappeared before him. Forests, mountains, and Indians, were ineffectual to oppose him. From the banks of the St. Lawrence to the Sabine of Texas, he is a conqueror over nature. And now, this Spaniard and this Northman meet, in battle panoply, in this valley of volcanoes, by the ancient graves of unknown nations, on the lava-covered soil where nature once poured forth her awe-inspiring flames. Three centuries since, these warrior-nations had left their homes beyond the wide Atlantic. Two thousand miles from each other, they had planted the seats of their empire ; and now, as if time, in the moral world, had completed another of its grand revolutions, they have met in mortal conflict."

9. The capture of the city of Mexico by the American army virtually ended the war. A treaty of peace was signed by which Mexico agreed to the Rio Grande as a boundary

Treaty of peace. between the two republics, and surrendered to the United States a vast territory between Texas and the Pacific ocean, including all the present State of California. On the part of the United States it was agreed that the sum of fifteen millions of dollars should be paid for the territory thus acquired, and that debts due from Mexi-

[illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible]

co to American citizens, to the amount of three millions of dollars, should be assumed.¹ Five years later, the United States, desiring a more southern boundary for a portion of their new territory, secured what is known as the "Gadsden Purchase," by paying the additional sum of ten millions of dollars.

10. Peace was no sooner concluded than "it was discovered that the soil of California was richly endowed with gold."² On one of the tributaries of the Sacramento river an old settler was peacefully digging a trench,—caring little, it may be supposed, about the change in citizenship which he had undergone, nor dreaming that the next stroke of his spade was to influence the history not merely of California but of the world. Among the sand which he lifted were certain shining particles. His wondering eye considered them with attention. They were

Discovery
of gold in
California.

¹ The treaty was made by commissioners who met at Guadalupe Hidalgo, a small town about four miles from the city of Mexico; but the boundary between the two countries soon became a subject of dispute, which was not settled till 1853, when the United States purchased the *Mesilla Valley*, or, as it was called, the *Gadsden Purchase*, General Gadsden having been the agent employed by the United States in transacting the affair. The map on the opposite page shows the extent, not only of the territory acquired from Mexico, but of the territory possessed by the United States at the close of the Revolutionary war, as well as of all the tracts since acquired. So much of it as relates to Louisiana and Oregon is based upon the conclusions stated in Greenhow's "History of Oregon and California," an official work published under the direction of the United States Senate. The map inserted in Vol. 1 of the Ninth Census Report, is not in accord with Greenhow's conclusions, as it extends Louisiana to the Pacific ocean.

² Before 1779, eight establishments, missionary and military, were formed by the Spaniards on the Pacific coast of North America, the most southern being San Diego, the most northern, San Francisco; and during the five years preceding that date, three exploring voyages were made by order of the Spanish Government, in which the coast was examined as far north as the sixtieth parallel. (See page 37, note.) By the year 1800, as many as sixteen Spanish missions had been established in various parts of Upper California. Here the Indians were gathered, and the Catholic missionaries taught them the arts of civilized life, and imparted to them the truths of Christianity. After Mexico had become independent, the mission lands, comprising several million acres, were occupied by the Mexican government, and the missions were gradually abandoned.

gold ! Gold was everywhere—in the soil, in the river-sand, in the mountain-rock ; gold in dust, gold in pellets, gold in lumps ! It was the land of old fairy tale, where wealth could be had by him who chose to stoop down and gather ! Fast as the mails could carry it the bewildering news thrilled the heart of America.

11. The journey to the land of promise was full of toil and danger. There were over two thousand miles of unexplored wilderness to traverse. There were mountain ranges to surmount, lofty and rugged as the Alps themselves. There were great desolate plains, unwatered and without vegetation, Indians, whose dispositions there was reason to question, beset the path. But danger was unconsidered. That season thirty thousand Americans crossed the plains, climbed the mountains, forded the streams, bore without shrinking all that want, exposure, and fatigue could inflict. Cholera broke out among them, and four thousand left their bones in the wilderness. The rest plodded on undismayed. Fifty thousand came by sea. From all countries they came—from quiet English villages, from the crowded cities of China. Before the year was out California had gained an addition of eighty thousand to her population."

12. Florida became a State the day before the last of Tyler's term of office (1845). At a later period of the year, during Polk's administration, Texas became a State, as previously stated. Iowa, the twenty-ninth State, was admitted in 1846. It originally was a part of the "Louisiana Purchase." The admission of Wisconsin took place in 1848, from what, in part, was soon after the Revolution, the Northwest Territory.

New States.

Taylor's Administration.

1. As slavery in Mexico had been abolished more than twenty years, the territory ceded by her to the United States was "free soil." In anticipation of this acquisition, Mr.

Wilmot, of Pennsylvania, acting for himself and other members of Congress from the free States, had offered an addition to the Mexican treaty, which after-^{The} 16th national^{election.} ward became known as the "Wilmot Proviso,"



ZACHARY TAYLOR.

and which may be considered as the foundation stone of the Free Soil Party. The object of the proviso was to preserve for ever as "free soil" the territory to be acquired from Mexico. It, however, did not pass both Houses of Congress; but it greatly helped to bring into existence the new political party, and consequently three parties contended for the presidency in the fall of 1848.

2. The candidate of the Democrats was General Lewis Cass, of Michigan; of the Whigs, General Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana; and of the Free Soilers, whose party cry was "Free Soil, Free Speech, Free Labor, and Free Men," was ex-president Van Buren, of New York. General Taylor started in the canvass with a decided advantage over his competitors. In the Mexican war he had won great laurels as a soldier; and by his simplicity, directness, and indomitable daring in that contest had acquired the popular favor. His soldiers used to call him "Old Rough and Ready." His laconic expressions at Buena Vista—"General Taylor never surrenders," and "A little more grape, Captain Bragg"—were often quoted during the presidential campaign, which resulted in his election. He was inaugurated on the 5th of March, 1849, the 4th being Sunday.

3. It was during the early excitement of the "gold fever" that President Polk's term of office expired and Taylor's began. "The 'fever' was raging like an epidemic in every direction. High and low, rich and poor took it. From the fall of 1849 to the fall of 1850 was the tent era of California,

the strange flush times of the young State. Property was changing hands, fortunes changing favorites, with astonishing rapidity. The poor man of yesterday was the rich man of to-day. The servant, running away from his master, tarried a month or two in the mines, and returned with gold enough to buy his master out. The average wages made by miners in 1849 were, perhaps, twenty or thirty dollars a day; yet in rich diggings an average of from three hundred to five hundred dollars a week was not uncommon for weeks together.

**Mining
Life in
California.**

4. The abundance of gold in the hands of people not used to it made them lavish. There was very little sitting down and calculating how to economize; and there was no 'Poor Richard' pleading frugality and pointing out the penury that must follow thriftlessness. If there was any shrewd Yankee still following the precepts of his early education, and in an open-handed generation trying to remember that it is not what a man makes, but what he saves, that determines him rich or poor, his daily memorandum of expenses must have seemed very shocking. If he took breakfast at a restaurant in San Francisco, he had a dollar to pay for a beef steak and a cup of coffee. For fresh eggs he must pay from seventy-five cents to a dollar each. His dinner would cost him from a dollar and a half to five dollars, according to his appetite. Washing was eight dollars for a dozen pieces: it even happened, they say, that some sent their dirty clothes to China to be washed.

5. On landing at San Francisco, which early became the principal port of debarkation, or on arriving over the mountains, almost all dashed first into the mines. Placer mining could be learned in a day: any one who could shovel dirt, stand up to his knees in running water, and shake a pan, knew the art. . . . The currency was gold-dust, that is, small scales, globules, or nuggets of gold. At first they rudely measured it; then as rudely weighed it—a silver dollar's weight, the weight of a jackknife, or the weight of an ounce avoirdupois. Then they began to smelt the dust into

bars, ingots, or slugs, stamping the initials of the assayer to give credit to its designated weight where scales were not accessible. Not till 1854, when the United States gave them a Branch Mint at San Francisco, was the currency regulated with any satisfaction."

6. In September, 1849, there was a sufficient number of settlers in California to form a State; and "the youthful queen of the Pacific, in her robes of freedom inlaid with gold," made application to Congress for admission to the Union. As the constitution which California had adopted excluded slavery from her territory, another violent agitation of the "slave question" followed, "Calhoun, the great leader and champion of the cause of slavery," and the other friends of the slave power, opposing the admission of California as a free State. Before the question was decided, Taylor died (July 9th, 1850), and was "quietly succeeded without show or parade" by the vice-president, Millard Fillmore, of New York.

Slavery
agitation
revived.

Fillmore's Administration.

1. Other subjects, besides the admission of California, but all growing out of the slavery question, had been introduced into Congress at this time; and so violent was



MILLARD FILLMORE.

the controversy between the opposing parties that the safety of the Union was menaced. The great orator and statesman, Henry Clay, by his fervid eloquence, did much to allay this strife, and finally a compromise was effected by which California was admitted as a free State (1850). At the same time, New Mexico and Utah were organized as territories; the slave trade was abolished in the District of Columbia; and the "Fugi-

The
Compromise
of 1850.

tive Slave Law," which provided for the return to their owners of slaves escaping to a free State, was passed. Daniel Webster, a member of the United States Senate, contributed his aid in effecting this compromise, which, though it allayed the excitement between the two sections of the country, gave great offence to a large party in the North who were opposed to all concessions to the slave power.

2. "The vast region known as Utah was then in the possession of the Indians and the Mormons, or Latter-Day Saints, a religious sect founded by Joseph Smith, a native of Vermont. In 1832, Smith had twelve hundred followers, when the whole sect removed to Missouri. As they professed to be the true saints, by virtue of which they were to become the inheritors of the western country, they became objects of distrust to the Missourians. The militia were called out, but the Mormons avoided a conflict by crossing the Mississippi to Illinois. They prepared to make that State their home. On a bluff, overlooking the Mississippi, they founded a city, Nauvoo (*naw'-voo*), and erected an imposing temple (1840). Thefts and robberies were numerous in the vicinity, and these crimes were attributed to the Mormons, some of whom were arrested.

3. At length the Prophet, Smith, and his brother Hyrum, were arrested and thrown into prison in the town of Carthage. A mob collected a few days after, and in the mêlée the brothers were slain. The spirit aroused against the Mormons was so violent that they could find safety alone in flight, and the following year they sold their possessions, left their beautiful city, which contained ten thousand inhabitants, and under chosen elders emigrated away across the plains and over the Rocky Mountains, and finally found a resting-place in the Great Basin (1844). As they were now upon the soil of Mexico, they hoped their troubles were at an end. They significantly called their new home, Deseret—the land of the Honey Bee; and, to recruit their numbers, they sent missionaries to every quarter of the globe.

4. Meantime they labored with great zeal in founding a city on the shores of the Great Salt Lake. It is on ground four thousand three hundred feet above the level of the ocean, and planned on a large scale ; its streets are eight rods wide, and every house is surrounded by a garden. Presently came the war with Mexico, and the ceding of all that region to the United States. The Mormons were the first to organize themselves as a territory, under the name of Deseret, but Congress saw proper to change the name to Utah. President Fillmore appointed Brigham Young, their leading elder, the first governor."

Pierce's Administration.

1. Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, succeeded to the presidency on the 4th of March, 1853. The next year the agitation of the "slavery question" was again revived by the passage of a law by Congress organizing the territories of Kansas and Nebraska. This law re-
**Repeal
of the
Missouri
Compromise.**
pealed the Missouri Compromise, which had excluded slavery from the entire region, and substituted what was called by some persons, "Squatter Sovereignty" or "Popular Sovereignty," that is, the right of the people in each territory to decide whether they would have slaves or not. The "Compromise of 1820" had been regarded as a sacred compact between the South and the North, and as such, for the third of a century had received the sanction of all parties. An intense excitement was again produced, especially in the Northern States.



FRANKLIN PIERCE.

2. Now came the struggle again on the "slavery issue" between the North and the South, both making great exer-

tions to send settlers to the new territory of Kansas. The

**Civil
war in
Kansas.**

South was first in the field, Missouri, a slave State, being near, and her citizens leading the way. But the North, resolute to win Kansas for freedom, poured a steady tide of emigration into the territory, and soon the Northern settlers outnumbered their competitors. Civil war ensued; for those in the minority would not submit to be outvoted, and the peaceful citizens were resolved to defend their rights. This state of things for a considerable time rendered Kansas a scene of lawlessness and bloodshed (see page 253).

3. "The acquisition of California made the importance of commercial treaties with the nations of eastern Asia more and more important. During Fillmore's term, Commodore Perry, brother of the hero of Lake Erie, was sent with a **Treaty with Japan.** squadron to open communication with the empire of Japan. The inhabitants of those islands from time immemorial had excluded foreigners. The authorities there were greatly astonished at the boldness of the commodore when he appeared with his steamers—the first that ever floated on those waters—in the bay of Jeddo (or Yedo, now Tokio). He was ordered to depart; but he declined, and insisted on seeing the proper authorities and making known to them the object of his friendly visit.

4. At length a Japanese officer appeared, who promised to lay the matter before the emperor. The 14th of July (1853), was the day named to receive the letter from the American President. The commodore, escorted by a company of marines, landed. He was received with the pomp of an oriental pageant, and an answer to the letter promised the following spring. The answer was duly received, and a treaty concluded. The merchants of the United States obtained permission to trade in two specified ports, and also for the residence of American citizens and consuls at the two ports, as well as to visit without molestation in the interior, ten or twelve miles" (1854).

SUMMARY.

Washington's Administration. The adoption of Hamilton's financial measures; the war with the Indians north of the Ohio; the making of "Jay's Treaty;" the admission of Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee into the Union; and the invention of the cotton-gin, were the principal events during this administration (1789-1797).*

John Adams's. The hostilities with France, the death of Washington, and the removal of the national capitol to the city of Washington (1797-1801).

Jefferson's. The admission of Ohio into the Union, the purchase of the Louisiana territory, the war with the Barbary States, the duel between Hamilton and Burr, the trial of Burr for treason, and Fulton's steamboat invention (1801-1809).

Madison's. The second war with England—of which Hull's surrender of Detroit, Perry's victory on Lake Erie, Harrison's successes, Brown's invasion of Canada, MacDonough's victory on Lake Champlain, the capture by the British of the city of Washington, the British repulse before Baltimore, and Jackson's defense of New Orleans, were the principal events—marks this administration. The Hartford Convention, the war with Algiers, and the admission of Louisiana and Indiana into the Union, were also important (1809-1817).

Monroe's. The Seminole war; the purchase of Florida; the admission of Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, Maine, and Missouri into the Union; the adoption of the "Missouri Compromise;" and Lafayette's visit, were the important events (1817-1825).

John Quincy Adams's. The death of John Adams and of Jefferson occurred. Great progress was made in the work of internal improvements (1825-1829).

Jackson's. Jackson's war against the United States Bank, the "nullification" movement of South Carolina, and the admission of Arkansas and Michigan into the Union (1829-1837).

Van Buren's. "The Panic of 1837," and the formation of "Abolition Societies" (1837-1841).

Harrison and Tyler's. The death of Harrison, Morse's magnetic-telegraph invention, the preliminary measures for the annexation of Texas, and the admission of Florida into the Union (1841-1845).

Polk's. The war with Mexico, of which the campaigns of Taylor and Scott were the principal features, and the acquisition of California and other territory the result, marks this administration. The discovery of gold in California; and the admission of Texas, Iowa, and Wisconsin into the Union, were also important (1845-1849).

Taylor and Fillmore's. The death of Taylor, the adoption of the "Compromise of 1850," and the admission of California into the Union (1849-1853).

Pierce's. The repeal of the "Missouri Compromise," the civil war in Kansas, and the treaty with Japan, were the principal events of this administration (1853-1857).

* For a history of the Constitution of the United States and explanations of its language, and information respecting important features of laws enacted under it, including a history of the District of Columbia, see the Appendix.

TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

(See the hints and directions, p. 49.)

BIOGRAPHICAL.

- Washington.** (Let the account be from his inauguration, and include an estimate of his character and influence.) - 182-194
- John Adams.** (See *Life and Works of John Adams*, by his grandson, Charles Francis Adams.) - 146-223
- Thomas Jefferson.** (See *Randall's Life of Jefferson*; also *Parton's*, and *Tucker's*.) - 145-223
- Alexander Hamilton.** (See *Life of Hamilton*, by his son, J. C. Hamilton; also *Morse's Life of Hamilton*.) - 179-200
- Aaron Burr.** (See *Parton's Life of Burr*.) - 141-201
- John Jay.** (See *Life of John Jay*, by his son William Jay.) 179, 185, 186
- James Madison.** (See *Rives's Life of Madison*.) - 179-219
- James Monroe.** (See *Lossing's Lives of the Presidents*.) - 219-222
- John Q. Adams.** (See *Seward's Life of J. Q. Adams*; also *Josiah Quincy's*.) - 222-227
- Andrew Jackson.** (See *Parton's Life of Jackson*; also *Benton's "Thirty Years' View"*.) - 211 (note)-230
- John C. Calhoun.** (See *Jenkins's Life of Calhoun*.) - 224-247
- Martin Van Buren.** (See *Holland's Life of Van Buren*.) - 230-245
- William H. Harrison.** (Dawson's "*Memoirs of Harrison*.") 205 (note)-235
- John Tyler.** (See *Lossing's Lives of the Presidents*.) - 234-236
- Daniel Webster.** (See *Edward Everett's Life of Webster*; also *Curtis's*; also *Lanman's*.) - 147-248
- James K. Polk.** (Jenkins's "*History of Polk's Administration*.") 237-245
- Henry Clay.** (See *Epes Sargent's Life of Clay*; also *Colton's*.) - 222-247
- Zachary Taylor.** (See *Powell's Life of Taylor*.) - 230 (note)-247
- Millard Fillmore.** (See *Barre's Life of Fillmore*.) - 247-249
- Franklin Pierce.** (See *Hawthorne's Life of Pierce*.) - 249, 250

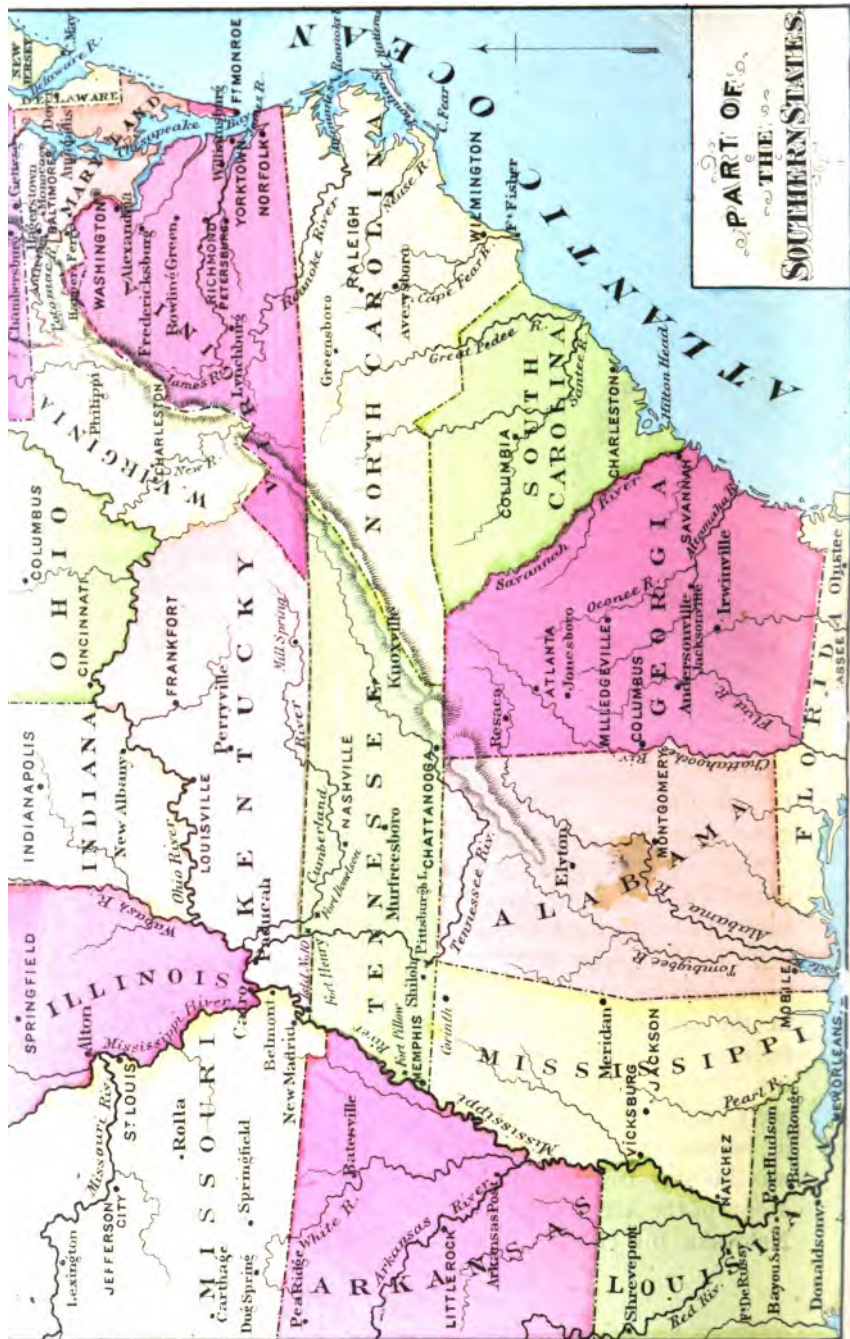
GEOGRAPHICAL.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| Trenton..... | 151-183 | Hartford..... | 69, 215 |
| New York..... | 148-233 | Pensacola..... | 214, 219 |
| Philadelphia..... | 139-191 | Boston..... | 127-221 |
| New Orleans..... | 46, 214 | Charleston..... | 142-228 |
| Detroit..... | 111, 206, 211 | Monterey..... | 239 |
| Lake Erie..... | 209-211 | Buena Vista..... | 239 |
| Niagara river..... | 107, 111, 212 | City of Mexico..... | 239-241 |
| Lundy's Lane..... | 212, 213 | Vera Cruz..... | 240 |
| Plattsburg..... | 213 | Sacramento river..... | 243 |
| Washington..... | 195-213, 247 | San Francisco..... | 39, 246, 247 |
| Baltimore..... | 213, 214 | Great Salt Lake..... | 249 |

HISTORICAL.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------|
| Washington's inauguration 183, 184 | Missouri Compromise..... | 220-249 |
| Vermont..... | Lafayette's visit..... | 221 |
| The cotton-gin..... | United States Bank..... | 184-227 |
| The Louisiana Purchase..... | Nullification..... | 228, 229 |
| Barbary States Wars..... | Slavery 58, 112, 114, 188, 220, 231, | |
| Duel—Hamilton and Burr... 200 | 236, 247, 249 | |
| Fulton's first steamboat... 201-203 | Railroads..... | 232, 233 |
| Second War with England. 205-216 | War with Mexico..... | 236-243 |
| Seminole Wars and Florida | Magnetic Telegraph..... | 236, 237 |
| 219-230 (note). | Gold in California..... | 243-247 |





Buchanan's Administration.

1. As the time for the presidential election approached, three candidates were put in nomination. A party, known as the American party, their leading principle being oppo-



JAMES BUCHANAN.

sition to "foreign influence," and their motto, "Americans should rule America," presented ex-President Fillmore. A new party, the outgrowth of the "Free Soil" movement, composed principally of Whigs and Democrats who were opposed to the extension of slavery into free territory, nominated John C. Fremont, "the Pathfinder of the Rocky Mountains," who had

rendered important service in the conquest of California during the Mexican war. The Democratic party, holding that Congress ought not to interfere with the extension of slavery "wherever it found its way by the people's choice," nominated James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, and succeeded in electing him. The inauguration took place on the 4th of March, 1857.

2. The slavery question continued to be the prominent topic of discussion; and John Brown's Raid, which occurred in the fall of 1859, still further increased the bitterness of feeling then existing between the two sections of the country. "Old John Brown," as he was often called, "had early conceived a fanatical hatred against slavery, and it became the master passion of his life. It was his day-dream that he should become the Moses of the African race." After the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill (1854), his four elder sons went from Ohio to

Kansas for the purpose of aiding in making the latter a free State. They went unarmed, but coming into conflict with the pro-slavery men from Missouri, wrote to their father to forward them some rifles. Instead, however, of sending the rifles, he carried them himself, and with such boldness and determination did he oppose the designs of those who wished to make Kansas a slave State, that he was both hated and feared by them. Near the town of Os-sa-wat'-o-mie, with less than twenty men he made an obstinate and successful defense against an attack of five hundred Missourians, and finally effected a retreat in safety. "This encounter gave him a sort of national reputation, and the sobriquet of 'Ossawatomie Brown' clung to him until his death."

3. Leaving Kansas, he and twenty-one associates seized the arsenal at Harper's Ferry, Virginia, for the purpose of making it a rendezvous, his object being to liberate slaves (1859). But he greatly miscalculated as to the encouragement he would receive from the slaves and the resistance he would meet from the authorities, and the movement ended in total failure. Those engaged in it were overpowered by Virginia troops assisted by the national forces; thirteen of their number were killed, two escaped, and the rest, including Brown, were tried, and, under the laws of Virginia, were executed.¹

4. The eighth census report showed a population in the United States of thirty-one and a half millions, of whom four millions were slaves. "This great population was assisted in its toils by six millions of horses and two millions of Condition of the country working oxen. It owned eight millions of cows, in 1860. fifteen millions of other cattle, twenty-two mil-

¹ The famous "Dred Scott Decision," increased the hostile feeling at the North against the slave power. Dred Scott and his wife were slaves, who had been carried by their master into Illinois, but were afterwards taken into Missouri. They claimed that having been carried into free territory by their master, they had been made free; but Chief-Justice Taney decided that slave masters could, under the Constitution of the United States, take their slaves into any State without any forfeiture of their property in them, just as they could take their horses or cattle. This decision, it was asserted by the Republicans, changed slavery from a local to a national institution; and they resisted it accordingly.

lions of sheep, and thirty-three millions of hogs. The products of the soil were enormous. The cotton crop of that year was close upon one million tons. The grain crop was twelve hundred millions of bushels—figures so large as to pass beyond our comprehension. Tobacco had more than doubled since 1850, until now America actually yielded a supply of five hundred millions of pounds. The textile manufactures reached the annual value of two hundred millions of dollars. There were five thousand miles of canals, and thirty thousand of railroads. Provision had been made for the education of the children by erecting one hundred and thirteen thousand schools and colleges, and employing one hundred and fifty thousand teachers. The educational institutions enjoyed revenues amounting to nearly thirty-five millions of dollars ; and the daily history of the world was supplied by four thousand newspapers, which circulated annually one thousand millions of copies.”

5. As Buchanan’s term of office drew towards its close, no less than four candidates were nominated to succeed him.¹ Of these, Abraham Lincoln, the candidate of the Republicans, was successful, although the Southern leaders had threatened that, if he should be elected, the States of the South would secede, that is, would withdraw from the Union, as they claimed the right to do. When, therefore, it became known that Lincoln, the candidate of the party opposed to the further extension of slavery, would be the next President, the secession movement began. Public meetings were held in South Carolina ; and, on the 20th of December, 1860, an ordinance was passed by a State convention, held in Charleston, which formally declared that the “ Union now subsist-

¹ The extreme pro-slavery party nominated John C. Breckenridge, who had been Vice-President under Buchanan ; the “ Squatter Sovereignty ” party nominated Stephen A. Douglass. These two candidates divided the Democratic party. The American party, now known as the “ Constitutional Union,” nominated John Bell, of Tennessee, with the simple party platform, “ The Union, the Constitution, and the Enforcement of the Laws.”

ing between South Carolina and other States, under the name of the United States of America, is hereby dissolved."

6. Six days afterward, Major Anderson, of the national army, commanding at Fort Moultrie, withdrew the garrison of eighty men from that fort, and removed

to Fort
Sumter,
a place
of greater security.

This being regarded by the South Carolinians as a hostile act, they at once

seized the custom-house at Charleston, as well as other property belonging to the general government, and commenced operations to drive Anderson from his new position. (See map, p. 143.)

7. Six other States—Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas—following the lead of South Carolina, passed secession ordinances in the early part of 1861. In February a Congress of delegates from all these States, except

Texas, met at Montgomery, and formed a government called *The Confederate States of America*. Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, was elected by the Congress President of the Confederacy; and, Texas being then represented, was duly inaugurated.

8. A steamer, sent from New York with supplies and reinforcements for Fort Sumter, arrived off Charleston, but being fired upon by the batteries which had been erected by the Confederates, was compelled to put back.



FORT SUMTER, IN 1860.



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

Thus South Carolina commenced the war by firing at the American flag ; and " the frantic tumult spread along every river and over every mountain in the slave States from Chesapeake bay to the Mexican frontier." Forts, arsenals, navy-yards, and other property of the nation, were seized by State authority for the Confederacy. Fort Pickens, near Pensacola, Fort Sumter, and the forts at the southern extremity of Florida, were all that remained to the general government within the limits of the seceded States. General Dix, Secretary of the National Treasury, ordered two revenue cutters, stationed at New Orleans, to be taken to New York, New Orleans being at the time in virtual possession of the secessionists ; but the captain of one of the cutters refusing to obey, he sent a telegram to the lieutenant, ordering the arrest of the captain and closing with the command, "*If any one attempts to haul down the American flag, shoot him on the spot.*"

9. Three States were admitted to the Union during the administration of Buchanan. Minnesota, admitted in 1858, though of recent settlement, had long been the seat of traffic with the Indians. Catholic missionaries had also established stations at an early date. The eastern portion of the State, that east of the Mississippi, was originally a part of the Northwest Territory ; the other portion, embracing more than two thirds of the area of the State, was originally a part of the " Louisiana Purchase." Oregon, admitted in 1859, was first occupied in 1811, when a fur-trading post was established by John Jacob Astor, a wealthy merchant of New York, at the mouth of the Columbia river, and called Astoria. The river had been entered, for the first time, twenty years before, by the ship Columbia, Captain Gray, from Boston. The report made by Gray led President Jefferson to send the expedition, conducted by Lewis & Clarke, which, ascending the Missouri river and descending the head branches of the Columbia and the Columbia itself, reached the Pacific ocean (see page 196). Kansas, after six years of angry agitation, was quietly admitted into the Union in 1861.

Lincoln's Administration.

1. The affairs of the country, when Lincoln entered upon the office of President, March 4th, 1861, were in a sadly distracted condition. "Menaces that the President-elect would never

be permitted to take ~~inauguration~~ the oath of office had been freely and loudly made ;" consequently General Scott took every precaution, and the "inauguration took place amid a greater display of military than had ever before been witnessed on such an occasion." In his address, which was mild and conciliatory, the President declared, with special emphasis, that he had no purpose or inclination to interfere with slavery where it already existed, further declaring that he had "no lawful right to do so."



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

2. This assurance, however, had no effect whatever upon the Southern leaders. Avowing their duty to their States as more binding upon them than their obligations to the general

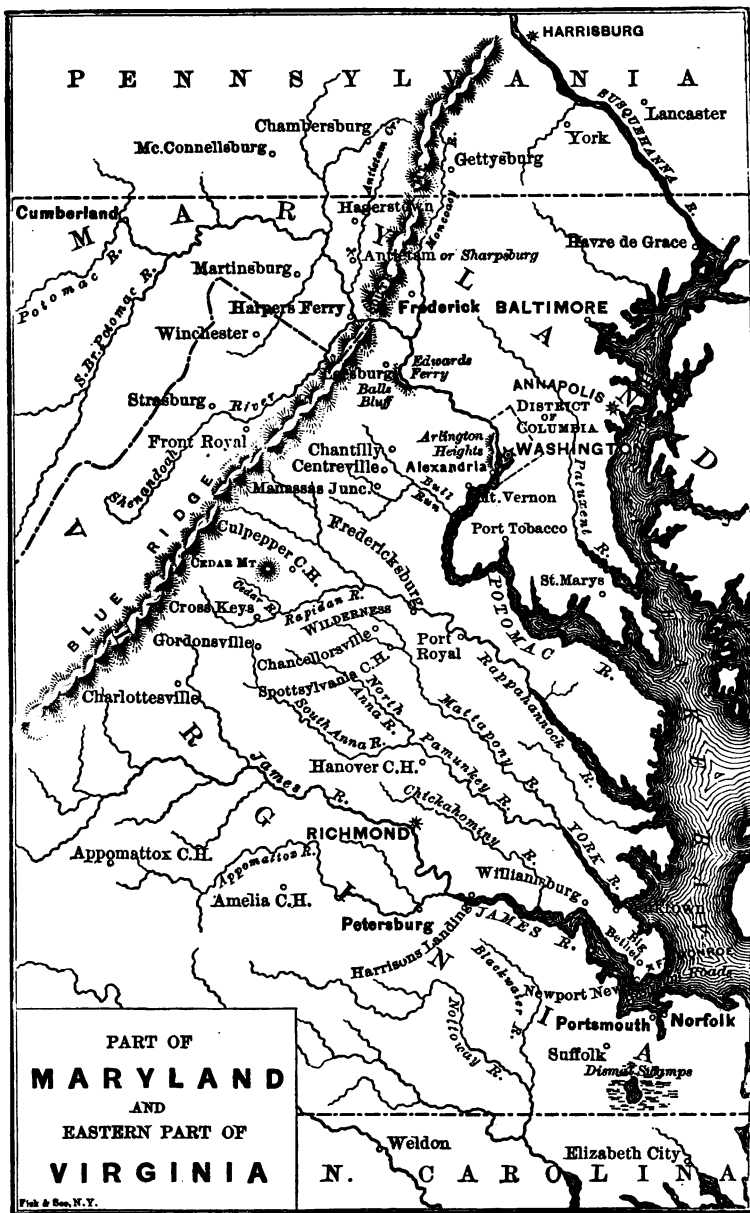
Fall of government, they continued to prepare for war. **Fort Sumter.** A force of several thousand men was put under the command of General Beauregard (*bo'-re-gard*), who was ordered to reduce Fort Sumter ; and, accordingly, "the roar of a mortar quickly followed by the rushing shriek of a shell, gave notice to the world that the era of compromise and diplomacy was ended" (April 12, 1861). Soon all the guns of the assailants were in operation, and in the course of thirty-four hours, more than three thousand shot and shell struck the works. The defense was feeble, owing to the smallness of the garrison and the scanty supply of ammunition. In his report to the Secretary of War, Anderson said: "Having defended Fort Sumter until the quarters were en-

tirely burned, the main gates destroyed by fire, the gorge wall seriously injured, the magazine surrounded by flames, and its door closed from the effects of the heat, four barrels and three cartridges of powder only being available, and no provisions but pork remaining, I accepted the terms of evacuation offered by General Beauregard, and marched out of the fort on Sunday afternoon, the 14th inst." On the following day Anderson sailed with his command for New York.

3. "The welcome event," said a Southern writer, "was instantly announced in every part of Charleston by the ringing of bells, the pealing of cannon, the shouts of couriers dashing through the streets, and by every indication of general rejoicing." "It was regarded as ^{How} the greatest day in the history of South Carolina. ^{the news was received.}" While exultation prevailed at the South, the news that the national flag had been fired upon and that Fort Sumter had fallen produced an intense feeling of indignation at the North. Thousands of northern men who had previously been in sympathy with the South, now declared themselves in favor of the Union; and President Lincoln's call for seventy-five thousand troops met with a hearty and favorable response from all the free States.¹ Political differences were forgotten in the impulse to defend the national government. Two days after Lincoln's call for troops, Davis issued a proclamation inviting privateers to prey upon the commerce of the United States; and this was followed by one from Lincoln, declaring the ports of the Confederate States to be in a state of blockade (April, 1861).

4. With the exception of Delaware, not one of the slave States arranged itself promptly and decidedly on the side of the Union. Lincoln's call for troops had been addressed to all

¹ A Massachusetts regiment, on its way to the defense of the capital, was attacked, April 19th, in the streets of Baltimore by a mob of Southern sympathizers. Bricks, stones, and pieces of iron were thrown from the upper windows of houses, and two of the soldiers were killed. Thus the anniversary of the battle of Lexington was signalized by the commencement of bloodshed in the Great Civil War.



the States that had not passed secession ordinances, but four of them—Virginia, Arkansas, Tennessee, and North Carolina—sent back defiant replies, and soon joined the Confederacy. Virginians marched to attack Harper's Ferry, "but the officer in charge of that establishment having become aware of what was intended, blew up or set on fire the various workshops and the arsenal, and effected a safe retreat. At the same time another party of Virginians prepared to seize the great naval station, the navy-yard near Norfolk. It contained founderies, ship-yards, docks, and machine shops. There were in it at least two thousand cannon, magazines containing more than a quarter of a million pounds of gunpowder, and great quantities of shot and shell. There were also twelve war ships." A part of this immense property, valued at ten millions of dollars, was destroyed by the Union officers, who then fled, but the Confederates secured a vast amount and were thus armed, and provided with means for carrying on the war.

5. It can hardly be said that the national government made any offensive movement before the 24th of May. Then, General Scott, commanding the Union army, sent a force into Virginia, which occupied Arlington Heights, opposite the city of Washington, and Alexandria. General Butler, commanding at Fortress Monroe, "the largest and most powerful military work in the republic," sent an expedition to drive the Confederates from two positions which they occupied a few miles from the fortress; but it resulted in disaster (June 10th). In West Virginia, however, the Union general, George B. McClellan, was victorious in several engagements.

6. After the secession of Virginia, Richmond became the capital of the Confederacy; and the Southern army, numbering a hundred thousand men, occupied a line through the State from Harper's Ferry to Norfolk. Of this army, a large force, under Beauregard, was at Manassas Junction, in front of which was the little stream of

Bull Run, in a narrow wooded valley. As the Union troops were raw and inexperienced, Scott hesitated to order a general advance, though the people of the North were very impatient because of the delay, and urged him to move "on to Richmond," and thus end the war. At length orders were given to General McDowell, who commanded a large part of the Union forces, to attack Beauregard. A desperate conflict ensued, in which more than forty thousand men were engaged. The advantage at first was upon the side of the Union army; but the Confederates, being largely re-enforced, at last prevailed, and the national troops, exhausted and panic-stricken, fled in disorder towards Washington (July 21st).

7. This great disaster taught the people of the North that the task they had undertaken was greater than they had supposed; but they did not waver. It stimulated them to greater

New exertions. Congress voted to raise more money and **war measures.** men. "Having chosen our course," said Lincoln, "without guile, and with good purpose, let us renew our trust in God, and go forward without fear and with manly hearts." McClellan, whose campaign in West Virginia had given him the reputation of an able commander, was called to Washington to be the head of the Army of the Potomac, the aged Scott, on account of his bodily infirmities, retiring from active service. Soon after, Scott, at his own request, having been placed on the retired list, McClellan was made commander-in-chief under the president; and the fortifications around Washington were strengthened so as to protect the capital from capture.

8. In the meantime civil war raged in Missouri; but the efforts of the se-

The war cessionists to take the State out of the Union were **in Missouri.** frustrated, mainly through the prompt action of General Lyon, aided by Colonel Sigel (*se'-gel*). Having



GENERAL M'CLELLAN.

been confronted by a vastly superior force, at Wilson's Creek, near Springfield, and fearing that a backward movement would be fatal to the cause, Lyon made an attack upon the Confederates, but was defeated and slain (Aug. 10th).¹ General Fremont, Lyon's successor in the command at the West, formed a large army to drive the Confederates from Missouri, but while marching against them was superseded in the command by the authorities at Washington (Nov.).

9. Events showed that, to complete the blockade, nearly six hundred vessels, most of them steamers, would be required. Already the increase in the navy had been very rapid, more than two hundred vessels having been added to the little fleet of about forty at the opening of the **Naval operations.** war. These were doing effective service, but still in the darkness of night fast-sailing steamers, called "blockade runners," would elude the vigilance of the watchers, and get away with their cargoes of cotton, and get back again from England with muskets, powder, and other supplies much needed by the Confederates. Every month, however, as the blockade fleet was increased, fewer vessels succeeded in getting out of the Southern ports. That the blockade was finally complete was shown by the destitution of the South, and the fact that there remained in the Southern States at the close of the war cotton of the value of three hundred millions of dollars in gold.²

10. A number of privateers were fitted out by the Confederates to roam over the sea and prey upon the merchant ships of the North. One of the most successful of these was the

¹ This was followed, a little more than a month later, by the surrender of Colonel Mulligan, after an heroic defense lasting through four days, to a Confederate force five times as large as his own. In November, a body of Union troops from Illinois, under General Grant, made a successful attack upon Belmont, Missouri, capturing the Confederate encampment there; but, on their way back to the river, suffered severe loss from fresh troops under General Polk.

² During the year 1861 the forts at the blockaded ports of Hatteras Inlet and Port Royal entrance were captured and converted into depots of supplies for the Union fleet.

steamer Sumter, Captain Semmes (*semz*), which succeeded in **Confederate** running the blockade of New Orleans in June. **privateers.** After capturing a number of vessels, she crossed the Atlantic to deceive the cruisers in pursuit, and entered the bay of Gibraltar, where she was overtaken by a United States gunboat, and not being able to escape, was sold. Semmes and her crew then went to England and obtained a faster vessel, which, under the name of the Alabama, afterwards became famous for its capture and destruction of American ships.

11. In the latter part of the year an event occurred which threatened to put an end to the peaceful relations existing between England and the United States. Mason and Slidell,

The Confederate ambassadors to England and France, **Trent affair.** had run the blockade, and taken passage at Havana in the English steamer Trent. Two hundred and fifty miles from port the Trent was intercepted by a war vessel of the United States, commanded by Captain Wilkes (*wilks*), and the two ambassadors were seized and held as prisoners. The people of the North heartily commended the conduct of the American captain, but Lincoln said: "Captain Wilkes undoubtedly meant well, but it will never do. This is the very thing the British captains used to do. They claimed the right of searching American ships and taking men out of them. That was the cause of the war of 1812. Now, we cannot abandon our own principles; we shall have to give these men up, and apologize for what we have done." The news produced a violent excitement in England, and preparations were at once made for war; but Lincoln's decision was carried out, and the demands of the British government were thus satisfied.¹

¹ A feeling of indignation existed in the North against Great Britain for having, in May, 1861, recognized the Confederacy as a belligerent power, setting an example which France and other European powers soon followed. The prompt surrender, however, of these Commissioners was an act of prudence; for, had war ensued with Great Britain, it would have greatly aided the secession cause. Mason and Slidell were confined in Fort Warren, Boston harbor, whence they were sent to England.

SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR.

12. The whole Union force in the field at the beginning of 1862 reached the enormous number of five hundred thousand men. The Confederate force was somewhat less. From a point on the Mississippi, a few miles below Cairo, the entire river to its mouth was in the possession of the Confederates, and great preparations were made by both parties, one to retain and the other to gain the mastery of the river.

13. In Kentucky, the Confederates were defeated at Mill Spring by General Thomas. Commodore (afterwards Admiral) Foote, commanding a fleet of gunboats, sailed up the Tennessee, and reduced Fort Henry. A few days later, General Grant, with the aid of the gunboats, made Union
successes. an attack upon Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland river. The garrison, fifteen thousand strong, made a desperate defense of four days; but the Confederate generals, Floyd and Pillow, when they found that the fort could no longer be held, fled in the darkness of night. When General Buckner, on whom the command of the fort devolved, the next morning asked Grant for an armistice to arrange terms of capitulation, the latter replied: "No terms other than an unconditional and immediate surrender can be accepted"¹ (Feb. 16th, 1862).

14. The capture of these two forts caused the evacuation of Columbus—the so-styled "Gibraltar of the West"—and of Nashville, the capital of Tennessee. A dispatch had been received at the latter place, congratulating its authorities "on a great Confederate victory won by the garrison of Fort Donelson. The city was in a delirium of delight; but on Sunday morning, while the people were at church engaged in returning thanks, news came that the fort had fallen. A scene of hideous confusion at once ensued. The congregations rushed into the streets. Every conveyance at hand was seized for the purpose of escaping from the place. Trunks

¹ This led to the title U(nconditional) S(urrender) Grant.

and valuables were thrown from upper windows ; women, in terror, fled away, and a mob hastened to plunder the abandoned Confederate stores." Foote, with his gunboats, descended the Mississippi, and, aided by General Pope, captured Island No. 10, one of the strongest of the Confederate posts. A short time after, Memphis was taken, the flotilla of gunboats for its protection having been defeated "in a contest resembling in many particulars the naval combats of ancient times." The successes of the Union fleet were stopped at Vicksburg, which was very strongly fortified.

15. Grant's army, after the victory at Fort Donelson, proceeded up the Tennessee river, by direction of General Halleck, the commander of the Western Department ; and Pittsburg Landing, a steamboat station on the west bank of the river, was occupied. The encampment extended along the road to Corinth, on the right and left of a little log building known as Shiloh Church. Here, on the morning of the 6th of April, Grant was attacked by a large force under General A. S. Johnston, and, after a contest which raged till near nightfall, the Union troops were driven to the river, where they were protected by the gunboats. Johnston was killed. The next day, reinforcements having arrived for Grant, the Confederates, commanded by Beauregard, were in turn driven from their position and compelled to retreat (April 7th, 1862).

16. The Union cause was also successful in Louisiana. A naval expedition, commanded by Captain (afterwards Commodore) Farragut, including a flotilla of armed steamers and mortar boats, under the orders of Captain Porter, sailed from the Atlantic coast and entered the Mississippi, the great object of the expedition being the capture of New Orleans. About thirty miles above the mouth of the river were two forts, which, in the estimation of the Confederates, were the main defense of the city. For six days the fleet poured an incessant fire upon these forts, which was responded to with vigor. "At last Farragut

resolved to run by them. It was a hazardous undertaking. As the fleet advanced in order, and approached the forts, each boat delivered a terrific fire, and shot and shell belched forth from scores of guns. A dozen thunder storms never roared more terrifically than did the peal of hostile cannon. Still the gallant fleet kept on and passed the forts. Just then it was attacked by more than a dozen Confederate steamers, and such a naval battle ensued as baffles all description. Suddenly the foremost Federal vessels were in the midst of the Confederate fleet. Some of the latter's boats were rams, and they came rushing down the stream at full speed, butting into the Union fleet, singling out boats which they designed to sink, and then dashing into them with fury. The noise was awful. The guns in the fleets and forts, belching forth at once, together with the explosion of boilers and magazines, and the shrieks of scalded and wounded men, made an appalling noise. And then, too, steamboats were ablaze; and a huge fire-raft, ploughing and cracking through the fleet, and setting fire to Farragut's flagship, added terror to the scene. It seemed as if both fleets must perish together in the deadly contest. But the victory was Farragut's, and he pushed on for New Orleans."¹

17. The people of that city were thrown into "a panic as soon as they learned that the Union fleet had passed the forts and destroyed their gunboats. They ran hither and thither in the streets, frantic with fright and madness; and sugar, molasses, cotton, and other articles of merchandise, were destroyed by them in large quantities. Gold and silver coin was taken from the banks and carried away. In the midst of a thunder storm, Farragut anchored his squadron off New Orleans" (April 25th), and, a few days later, General

¹ Meanwhile important successes attended the efforts of the Unionists on the Atlantic coast. A land and naval expedition captured Roanoke island. Elizabeth city was also captured, after a flotilla for its defense was destroyed; a victory was gained at Newbern; and Fort Pulaski, defending Savannah, was another Union trophy.

Butler, who had remained near the bombarded forts and completed their reduction, entered the city and placed it under martial law. Butler found it no easy task to govern the city, but "by severity he put down the mob. He cleaned the streets, enforced sanitary regulations, and kept out yellow fever."

18. While disaster was thus attending the Confederate cause in Louisiana, an event occurred at the east which gave new life to it. At the breaking out of the war, the steam

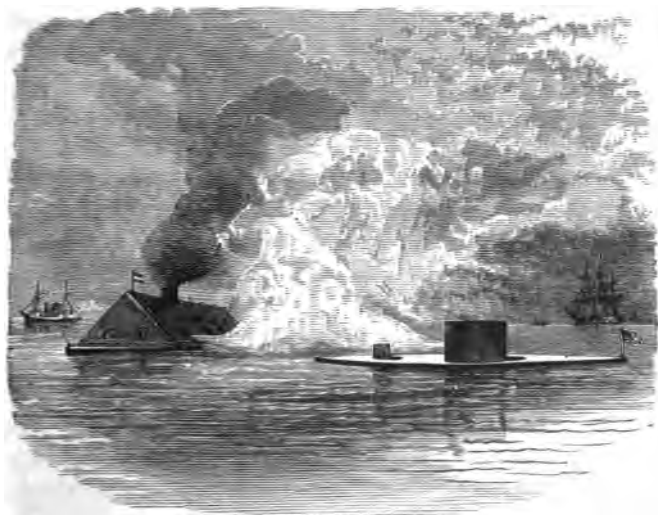
Attack of frigate Merrimac, one of the finest vessels in the **the Virginia.** American navy, costing more than a million of dollars, was lying in the harbor of Norfolk, Virginia. As elsewhere stated, the Union officers in charge there destroyed a large amount of property, in order to prevent its falling into the hands of the Confederates. They undertook to destroy the Merrimac, but only partially succeeded. The vessel was sunk, but her hull and machinery were not much injured. The Confederates, after taking possession of Norfolk and its navy yard, raised her without difficulty, cut down her hull almost to the water's edge, and covered it with a thick plating of iron. A new name was then given to her—the Virginia. This vessel, on the 8th of March, steamed out from Norfolk, and destroyed the Federal ships of war Cumberland and Congress, which, unprepared for an encounter with such vessels, could make no effectual resistance. Only the coming on of night prevented the destruction of the beautiful frigate Minnesota, and other national vessels; and it was anticipated that on the next day the iron-clad monster would complete her work.

19. In the early part of the night, however, a newly-invented floating battery, called the Monitor,¹ arrived from

¹ This vessel was designed and built at New York by Captain Ericsson. She was about one hundred and seventy feet long, and as, owing to the great weight of iron on her surface, she projected but slightly above the water, she looked like a raft bearing a round turret about twenty feet in diameter and nine feet high. She was covered with nine-inch plates of iron, and was worked by a steam-engine entirely protected from the assailant's shot.

New York. "In the bright morning of the following day, Sunday, the Virginia was seen rounding the point of land at the mouth of the Elizabeth river. She approached the Minnesota; but, lying near that vessel, which was still stranded and supposed to be doomed, was a curious object, which some of the crew of the Virginia, straining their eyes, compared to a prodigious 'cheese-box on a plank.' It was another iron-clad—an experiment in naval

**Battle
of the
iron ships.**



FIGHT BETWEEN THE VIRGINIA AND THE MONITOR.

architecture, which had come just in time to match the Confederate-curiosity in floating batteries. The new actor on the scene which had come in such a dramatic coincidence was a defensive structure, different in appearance from any vessel that had previously been used in war. Her deck, unprotected by any bulwark, rose about two feet above the water, whilst from it projected a turret about nine feet high, and a small box-looking place at the stern, used as a pilot-house. In the turret she carried her sole armament, two heavy guns.

20. The two strange combatants approached each other ; and when within about one hundred yards' distance the Monitor opened fire. The contest continued for the space of two hours, the distance between the two vessels varying from half a mile to close quarters, in which they were almost side to side, belching out their fire, the heavy blows on the iron sides of each being the only effect of the terrific cannonade. The strange-looking battery, with its black, revolving cupola, was more easily turned than the Virginia, and had the greater speed. The great length and draft of the Virginia rendered it exceedingly difficult to work her. Once, in changing her position, she got aground, but succeeded in getting off again, and, turning rapidly towards the Monitor, steamed directly at her, hoping with her terrible armed prow, to end the contest. But the blow was not fairly given, and merely scraped the iron plates of her antagonist." At last the Virginia, in a disabled condition, steamed back to Norfolk.

21. In the meantime, a vast army had been collected near Washington, under McClellan, the object of which was to capture the Confederate capital. Early in March an advance was ordered. McClellan embarked his troops for
The Peninsula campaign. Fortress Monroe, whence he commenced his march up the peninsula between the York and James rivers. "On to Richmond," was at that time, a war-cry of the northern-people, "not because Richmond was a source of strength to the Confederacy, not because it offered any historical recollections, not because it was the emblem of a nationality, but because it was in the eyes" of the people loyal to the Union, "a token of defiance to the" North. As McClellan's plan of operations would leave Washington without adequate protection, Lincoln detained an army corps, under McDowell, for its security. It was expected that McClellan would make a rapid march against Richmond ; but instead of this, the whole month of April was consumed in throwing up earthworks. The Confederates, having abandoned their works and fallen back, an advance column,

under General Hooker, overtook the rear guard of the retreating army at Williamsburg, where a battle took place. Towards the latter part of May, McClellan had advanced to within seven miles of Richmond. Meanwhile, General Wool, proceeding from Fortress Monroe, took possession of Norfolk, which had been abandoned by direction of the authorities at Richmond. In consequence of this loss, the Confederates, on the following day, destroyed their famous iron-clad, the Virginia.

22. At Fair Oaks, McClellan's army was attacked (May 31), and a bloody but indecisive battle ensued, lasting nearly two days. General Joseph E. Johnston, the Confederate general-in-chief, having been severely wounded, was relieved from duty, and General Lee appointed to the command. General Jackson, popularly known as "Stonewall Jackson," having defeated or eluded the Union armies in the Shenandoah valley,¹ joined Lee, and by a rapid movement threatened the communications of McClellan's army. After almost a month spent on the banks of the Chickahominy, McClellan, believing that the forces at his disposal were not sufficient to protect his lines, transferred his base of operations to the James river. While effecting this movement, he was attacked by the Confederates, and a series of destructive battles ensued, which continued during seven days (June 25-July 1). In the last of these engagements—at Malvern Hill—Lee was repulsed, and McClellan was then enabled to retire to Harrison's Landing, on



T. J. JACKSON (*Stonewall*).

¹ "He had been pursued in vain by three major-generals (Fremont, McDowell, and Banks), and turning had made good his retreat. He had diverted large re-enforcements from McClellan, had neutralized a national force of 60,000 men, and given to the Southern armies the prestige of victory."—*Draper*. The appellation Stonewall owed its origin to a remark made by one of Jackson's officers. The officer said that at the battle of Bull Run (July, 1861), Jackson "stood like a stone wall."

the James river. "Thus ended the great, the melancholy peninsula expedition." It was a terrible failure.

23. At this time there were three armies in the vicinity of Washington, one of which was under the command of Fremont, another, of Banks, and the third, of McDowell. These

Lee's first invasion of Virginia, and General Pope was called from the of the North. West and placed in command. Halleck was also called from the West, and appointed commander-in-chief, with his headquarters at Washington. As all thought of



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE

advancing against Richmond for the time being was abandoned, McClellan's army was ordered to join the new army under Pope, who proposed to march on Richmond by another route. Relieved from the immediate task of defending their capital, the Confederates moved northward to menace Washington. Jackson, commanding the advance, attacked the force under Banks at Cedar Mountain, and compelled its retreat. The main army, under Pope, encountered the entire Confederate army, and though the Union forces were inferior in numbers, not having been re-enforced to any considerable extent by McClellan's troops, the Confederates were long held at bay before Pope gave the order to retire. This contest is known as the Second Battle of Bull Run (Aug. 29, 30). Lee, taking advantage of his victory, crossed the Potomac into Maryland.

24. Pope, at his own request, having been relieved, McClellan was again intrusted with the command of the Federal forces in and around Washington. "The Confederate general had supposed that large re-enforcements would flock to

him in Maryland, but in this he was destined to disappointment." McClellan, following Lee, the invaders were overtaken at South mountain, and though they were defeated in the battle that ensued (Sept. 14), Harper's Ferry, with its garrison of more than eleven thousand men, and its vast munitions of war, was surrendered to a division of their army on the following morning. The captors of this important position hurried across the Potomac into Maryland, and joined Lee along the western bank of Antietam creek, a sluggish stream that flows into the Potomac. McClellan's army, coming up, the Confederates were attacked (Sept. 17). "Not by military, but by political reasons was Lee constrained to fight the battle. The South would never be satisfied with the barren laurels acquired from Pope, nor was it possible to give up the expedition to the North without a struggle." The Southern troops made a most gallant defense, but, though they were not the victors, the result was not as decisive as might have been expected from the superior number of the assailants.

25. "Long before the next day broke, the national troops, rising from their rest on the bare ground, made ready their coffee, and eating their simple breakfast, prepared for a renewal of the battle. They believed that Lee had no escape." The river was at his back. All that day passed and a second wearisome night, and "then there was news. Lee had given McClellan the slip. He had actually crossed the Potomac unmolested, and escaped into Virginia." Lee's army, though foiled and compelled to retreat, won commendation from foes as well as friends. "It had fought its way to the Potomac, crossed the stream, met the Union troops in two heavy engagements, fought the battle of Antietam—the greatest pitched battle of the war¹—and then recrossed the Potomac, back into Vir-

¹ "Stuart, commanding a portion of Lee's cavalry, recrossed the Potomac, and made a raid into Pennsylvania. He captured Chambersburg, destroying a large quantity of supplies. He made a complete circuit round McClellan's army, and returned into Virginia. The Confederates might truly boast that they had at length carried the war into the Free States."

ginia. During all this time, covering the full space of a month, these troops rested but four days. And let it be always remembered to their honor, that of the men who performed this wonderful achievement, one-fifth were bare-foot, one half in rags, and the whole half famished."

26. McClellan remained in Maryland till about the first of November, when he crossed the Potomac; but President Lincoln, dissatisfied with his inactivity, appointed General **Burnside's** Burnside in his stead. "Burnside, believing **campaign.** that the true line of operations against Richmond was the direct one," advanced to the Rappahannock, opposite Fredericksburg. Lee, anticipating Burnside's movement, had meanwhile marched along the south side of the river to Fredericksburg; and, while the Union troops were anxiously waiting for pontoons to enable them to cross the river, he improved the time by planting batteries on the hills in the rear of the city. The pontoons finally arrived and the river was crossed, but the heroic attempts to carry the batteries were repulsed with terrible loss. Thirteen thousand men of Burnside's army fell, and he was compelled to recross the river (Dec. 13-15).¹

27. "For once, a whole people was rich. Money was 'easy' enough to satisfy everybody, and everybody had it in unstinted measure. The financial system adopted by the **Confederate** Confederate Government was singularly simple. **money.** It consisted chiefly in the issue of treasury notes enough to meet all the expenses of the Government, and, in the present advanced state of the art of printing, there was

¹ In Mississippi, General Rosecrans, with a division of Grant's army, gained two important victories near Corinth. In Kentucky, General Bragg defeated the Union troops at Richmond, but at Perryville was himself defeated. Towards the close of the year a fierce struggle took place at Murfreesboro, Tennessee, between the armies of Rosecrans (who had succeeded to the command recently held by General Buell), and Bragg. On the 2d, day of the new year (1863), victory decided for the national cause. Five days afterward the Confederates lost Arkansas Post, Arkansas.

but one difficulty incident to this process ; namely, the impossibility of having the notes signed in the Treasury Department as fast as they were needed. There happened, however, to be several thousand young ladies in Richmond willing to accept light and remunerative employment at their homes, and as it was really a matter of small moment whose names the notes bore, they were given out in sheets to these young ladies, who signed and returned them for a consideration. * * *

28. Money was so easily got, and its value was so utterly uncertain, that we were never able to determine what was a fair price for anything. We fell into the habit of paying whatever was asked, knowing that to-morrow we should have to pay more. I bought coffee at forty dollars and tea at thirty dollars a pound on the same day. My dinner at a hotel cost me twenty dollars, and for some wretched tallow candles I paid ten dollars a pound. A facetious friend used to say 'prices were so high that nobody could see them. Before the war,' he said, 'I went to market with the money in my pocket and brought back my purchases in a basket ; but now I take the money in a basket and bring the things home in my pocket.' I believe the highest price, relatively, I ever saw paid, was for a pair of boots. A cavalry officer, entering a little country store, found there one pair of boots which fitted him. He inquired the price. 'Two hundred dollars,' said the merchant. A five hundred dollar bill was offered, but the merchant having no smaller bills could not change it. 'Never mind,' said the cavalier, 'I'll take the boots anyhow. Keep the change ; I never let a little matter of three hundred dollars stand in the way of a trade.' * * * The money was of so little value that we parted with it gladly whenever it would purchase anything desirable."

29. "A full treasury was necessary to defray the expenses of the war. The South had the means of making one in its cotton alone. But its government neglected those means, and limited its financial efforts to printing bank notes, with

which the country was soon flooded. The necessity of actual ~~Misapplication~~ money in the treasury and the mode of raising ~~of means.~~ it were generally understood. It was that the Government should take the cotton from the owners and send it to Europe as fast as possible to be sold there. The owners were willing to accept any terms that might be fixed ; and sending to Europe was easy in all the first year of the Confederacy's existence. Its government went into operation early in February (1861). The blockade of the Southern ports was proclaimed in May, but was not at all effective until the end of the following winter, so that there was a period of about twelve months for the operation of converting four or five million bales of cotton into money."

THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR.

30. President Lincoln had said : " My paramount object is to save the Union, and not either to save or to destroy slavery. If I could save the Union without freeing any slaves, I would do it ; if I could save it by freeing all the slaves, I would do it ; and if I could save it by freeing some, and leaving others alone, I would also do that." Events controlled him, and " desiring that all men everywhere should be free," on the 1st of January, 1863, he issued his memorable proclamation, by which the slaves in all the States and districts at war with the national government were declared to be forever free. Then " black regiments" began to be organized to fight in the national service, though colored troops had been previously employed in a few localities. At the close of the year about fifty thousand colored men were in actual service, and before the close of the following year the number had been more than doubled.

31. Burnside having, at his own request, been relieved of ~~Hooker's~~ the command of the army of the Potomac, General Hooker, who had gained a reputation for gallant conduct in the " peninsula," and other campaigns, and

who was popularly known by the title of "Fighting Joe," was appointed in his place. The army, re-enforced and in excellent condition, crossed the Rappahannock, to destroy Lee's army and march to Richmond. At Chancellorsville, eleven miles from Fredericksburg, it encountered the Confederate force, and after a terrible battle, was defeated with heavy loss (May 2d and 3d).¹ This was "the culmination of a series of national disasters which had occurred since the beginning of the year."

32. Encouraged by his success, Lee, whose army numbered a hundred thousand men, began a northward movement, followed by Hooker. The minds of the Northern people were greatly alarmed, for a large and splendid army had been defeated, and seemed to be powerless against the invaders. The two opposing ^{Lee's} ^{2d invasion} ^{of the North.} armies were now in Maryland, when Hooker resigned his command, which was at once transferred to General Meade. Militia forces were hurried to the seat of war, for the Confederate general, it was reported, had boasted that he would "water his horses at the Delaware and the Hudson, and dictate terms of peace at Philadelphia or New York." Pennsylvania was again invaded; and while Lee paused at Chambersburg, his advance was on the road to Harrisburg; but as Meade was in pursuit, he turned eastward to prevent his progress. At Gettysburg, "a town destined to enduring celebrity in American history," the two armies met, and one of the most terrible battles of the war was fought (July 1st, 2d, and 3d). Day after day, Lee advanced his troops against the

¹ The Confederates lost General Jackson, "who fell in the midst of the triumph won by his own hand." He was wounded during the night of the 2d, by the fire of his own men, who mistook his staff and escort for the enemy's cavalry. He bore patiently his great suffering. "If I live, it will be best," he said; "and if I die, it will be best. God knows and directs all things for the best." He died on the 10th. "Of all the generals in the Confederate armies, no one so completely commanded the devotion of his troops. It was felt throughout the South that his death more than counterbalanced the advantages, great as they were, of the victory." (See p. 271 and note.)

lines of the Unionists ; but all in vain, and at last, after losing more than a third of his grand army, he was compelled to retreat. This was probably the most important and decisive engagement of the war. "Freedom was master on the continent."¹

33. In November, a little more than four months after, a great concourse of men and women met on this battle field of Gettysburg to consecrate a part of it as a national cemetery for the remains of the brave soldiers who had fallen. Lincoln took part in the ceremony. "When the appointed funeral oration was completed, a low murmur ran through the audience and the careworn President, rising, bent reverently forward," and said :

Obligation to the patriot dead.
34. "Fourscore and seven years ago our fathers brought forth upon this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal. Now, we are engaged in a great civil war, testing whether that nation, or any nation so conceived and so dedicated, can long endure. We are met on a great battle field of that war. We have come to dedicate a portion of that field as a final resting place for those who here gave their lives that our nation might live. It is fitting that we should do this ; but, in a larger sense, we cannot hallow this ground. The brave men, living and dead, who struggled here, have consecrated it far beyond any thing we can do. The world will little note, nor long remember, what we *say* here ; but it can never forget what they *did* here. It is for us, the living, rather to dedicate ourselves to the unfinished work which they who fought here have thus far so nobly advanced ; to consecrate ourselves to the great task remaining ; and to gather from the graves of these honored dead increased devotion to that cause for which they gave their lives. Here let us resolve that they shall not have died in vain ; that this nation shall, under God, have a new birth of freedom ; and

¹ The losses were fearful, 23,210 national troops were killed, wounded, or missing. The Confederate loss was 36,000.

that government *of* the people, *by* the people, and *for* the people shall not perish forever from the earth."

35. The efforts put forth by the North to sustain the Union cause were not confined to the government and the army. The people actively showed their interest, and their sympathy with those who had engaged in it. **Organisations** Associations were formed to relieve the necessi- of mercy. ties of the soldiers. Of these, the Christian and Sanitary



PREPARED FOR THE BATTLE.

Commissions did the most extensive work. "The Sanitary Commission gathered supporters from all classes of the people—physicians, clergymen, lawyers, merchants, tradesmen, laborers, and—how was it possible that it could be otherwise?—conspicuously among all, very many women. The wealthy man gave lavishly of his means; the poor man a

portion, often not an inconsiderable portion, of his earnings ; the widow brought her mite. Soon the commission had an independent transportation of its own. It had hospitals, wagons, ambulances, cars. Ingenious men devised for it inventions of better litters, better stretchers, better ambulances. It secured comfortable transportation for the wounded soldier from the battle-field to the hospital. On the railroad it soon had its hospital cars, with kitchen, dispensary, and a surgeon's car in the midst.

36. To the Sanitary Commission the government gave a most earnest support ; the people gave it their hearts. They furnished it with more than three millions of dollars in money, of which one million came from the Pacific States ; they sent it nine millions' worth of supplies. From fairs held in its interest very large sums were derived. What country, what age of the world can show such a splendid example of 'organized mercy?'¹ The Christian Commission, emulating the noble conduct of the Sanitary Commission, aided the surgeon, helped the chaplain, followed the armies in their marches, went into the trenches and along the picket-line. Wherever there was a sick, a wounded, a dying man, an agent of the Commission was near by. It gave Christian burial whenever possible ; it marked the graves of the dead. It distributed nearly five millions of dollars in money and supplies."

37. We turn to the West once more. Farragut's capture of New Orleans opened the lower part of the Mississippi ; and the victory of Shiloh, with its consequences, resulted in opening all the rest that had been previously held by the Confederates, except the portion between Vicksburg and Port Hudson. It was Grant's object to complete the opening of the river throughout its en-

¹ "The Sanitary Commission was a genuine expression of the spirit of the people. It was to America in this century what the orders of chivalry were to Europe in their day."—*Carlyle*. "To the end of time it will stand in history as a worthy monument of the patriotism, the humanity, and the religion of a Christian democracy."—*North American Review*

tire length. His first point of attack was Vicksburg, which had been so strongly fortified that it was considered impregnable. It was held by a powerful army under General Pemberton.

38. By a series of skillful movements, Grant seized a position suitable for operations. A number of battles took place, every day Grant's hold on Vicksburg becoming more secure. At last, "on the 3d of July, Pemberton saw that he was ready to make a final and fatal assault. That afternoon he wrote to his besieger asking an armistice. To this Grant promptly replied, and an interview consequently took place between the two commanders beneath an old oak tree. Pemberton was irritable and indiscreet. Great and merciful, the conqueror bore, without an unkind remark, the petulance of his vanquished adversary, and returned him no railing reply." The next morning, July 4th, 1863, Vicksburg was surrendered.

39. "While Grant had been besieging Vicksburg, Banks had been besieging Port Hudson; and so closely had the operations been pressed that it was impossible for the place to hold out much longer. When, on the 6th of July, news came that Vicksburg had surrendered, it was needless and hopeless to continue the defense any longer." Port Hudson was accordingly surrendered on the 9th. "Thus the Western armies had accomplished their object, and the Mississippi was now open to the Gulf of Mexico. The Confederacy was cut asunder; its right zone was isolated."

40. An act of Congress empowered President Lincoln to recruit the army by drafting. As a call for three hundred thousand troops under this law was not fully responded to, a less number volunteering, it was found requisite to resort to a draft. This excited great opposition; and, in New York, a riot broke out while the draft was in progress, which lasted four days (July 13-16), and was only put down by the most determined efforts of the police and the military. Buildings were sacked and

Draft
riot in
New York.

burned, and a large number of persons killed. The colored population of the city, being an object of particular hatred to the rioters, suffered severely.

41. As before stated, Rosecrans gained an important victory over Bragg, at Murfreesboro. After a half year's inactivity, Rosecrans again advanced against Bragg, compelling him to evacuate Chattanooga. Meanwhile, Lee,

**The war
in Tennessee
and Georgia.**

having reached a secure position on the Rapidan, in Virginia, hurried re-enforcements to Bragg, who, enjoined by the Richmond government, then turned upon his pursuers. The two armies met near Chickamauga creek, and a battle of two days ensued, the result of which was that the Federal army was partially routed. "On Thomas, who, in allusion to the events of the struggle, is often justly called '*The Rock of Chickamauga*,' the weight of the battle now



GENERAL THOMAS.

fell. Every thing depended on his firmness. If he, too, should be swept away, there was nothing but a flight across the Tennessee. In this supreme moment Thomas proved equal to his task. Though more than half the army had abandoned him, with inflexible resolution he held his ground. One after another the Confederate regiments surged up against him, and broke at his feet like billows

of the sea. It was about sunset when they made their last charge. It was repelled, and they gave way to return no more (Sept. 19, 20)."

42. The Union forces, driven behind the intrenchments of Chattanooga, with the Confederates holding the surrounding hills—Lookout mountain and Missionary ridge—their position was critical indeed. They were also in danger of starvation; and "the mud was so deep," wrote one of the soldiers, "that we could not travel by the road, but we got along pretty well by stepping from mule to mule as they lay

dead from starvation by the way." Still Thomas telegraphed : " I will hold fast till we starve." It was evident that something must be done at once and quickly. Re-enforcements under Hooker were therefore rushed by rail to the aid of the troops, and Grant was ordered to take the command. General Sherman, who had distinguished himself under Grant at the West, was also called to Chattanooga.

43. On the morning after his arrival Grant decided upon a plan of action. Accordingly, while Sherman began the attack in the valley, Hooker and Thomas advanced to drive the Confederates from the mountains. " All day long there had been a misty rain. The clouds which had hovered over Lookout mountain during the morning, gradually settled into the valley ; and it was only from the roar of the battle, and the occasional glimpse that the troops in the valley could catch of the lines and standards that they knew of the strife and its progress. It was a battle above the clouds." All the strong positions of the Confederates were taken, and Bragg's army was completely routed (Nov. 23-25).¹

44. The people in the western counties of Virginia were, from the beginning of the war, entirely opposed to secession. They not only refused to obey the secession ordinance passed by their legislature, but they took early measures to effect a separation from the old State, and obtain admission as a State into the Union. Their efforts were crowned with success, the State being admitted in 1863, under the name of West Virginia. Nevada, the thirty-sixth member of the Union, was admitted the next year. This was originally a part of the territory acquired from Mexico by the treaty of 1848. Its mineral wealth led to its

¹ General Longstreet, who had been sent by Bragg against Knoxville, was repulsed by Burnside. In Missouri and Kansas, guerrilla bands, co-operating with the regular Confederate forces, carried on the work of plunder and destruction. A bold raid was made into Indiana and Ohio by the partisan ranger Morgan ; but he was pursued day and night for a distance of nearly seven hundred miles, and his band were killed, captured, or scattered. Morgan himself was taken prisoner.

rapid settlement and increase in population. It was named from the mountain range on its west, called the Sierra Nevada.

FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR.

45. Early in the year (1864), Sherman marched from Vicksburg across the State of Mississippi, and destroyed the railroad system centering at Meridian. On his return march, **Red river expedition.** crowds of fugitive slaves—from four to seven thousand in number—flocked to his army to make their escape. “They varied in age from one month to one hundred years. Some were on foot, some on horseback, some in ox-carts. Some were clad in their ‘Sunday best,’ the cast-off clothes of their masters. Of the women, some had bandana handkerchiefs twisted in turban fashion round their heads, or were decorated with scraps of ribbon and fantastic finery of every conceivable hue. These simple people believed that ‘the day of Jubilee,’ of which they had so often sung in their hymns and begged for in their prayers, had come at last.” Sherman’s troops were hurried to the aid of Banks, who, with the co-operation of Porter’s fleet, was preparing to conduct an expedition against Shreveport, on the Red river.¹ This, however, met with a series of disasters, which caused its entire failure. The vessels, in consequence of a fall in the river, were saved from capture and destruction only by the construction of a dam a mile long across the stream, by means of which the boats were enabled to go over the falls. The loss of men and material in this expedition was very great (March and April).²

¹ In February the Union forces sustained a disastrous defeat at Olustee, Florida. The absence of troops to aid Banks in the Red river expedition, induced the Confederates, under General Forrest, to make a raid into Tennessee and Kentucky. Union City was captured. An attack upon Fort Pillow (April 12th), was bravely resisted; but, at last, the place was carried by assault, and three hundred of its defenders, mostly colored troops, were massacred.

² Sherman, himself, took no part in the Red river expedition.

46. All eyes were now turned to Grant, as the best and most successful of the Union generals; and the President conferred on him the command of all the forces of the United States, under the title of Lieutenant-General.¹ **Final plan of operations.** This appointment produced several changes in the army. Sherman succeeded Grant in the command at Chattanooga; but Meade, under Grant, retained the command of the Army of the Potomac. Both these armies were to act in concert, the one against Atlanta,² the other against Richmond. "Every thing unimportant was to be abandoned, and the two centers of power—the army of Lee in Virginia and that of Johnston in Georgia—were to be assailed at the same time, and assailed incessantly, regardless of the seasons."

47. "On the 4th of May, the Army of the Potomac crossed the Rapidan, and Grant, sitting on a felled tree, telegraphed to Sherman to advance." Sherman's progress was disputed, but in vain. He won battles, outflanked his **Sherman's** opponent, drove him from one position after **campaign.** another, till, in July, he had nearly reached Atlanta. The Confederate government, becoming dissatisfied with, what was called, "Johnston's retreating policy," because he had "failed to arrest the advance of the enemy," put General Hood in command. This general, however, met with still greater disaster. His furious assaults upon the Union army were repulsed with heavy loss; and, at last, when Sherman began to surround Atlanta, and had again defeated a large division of his army, he abandoned the city. "Atlanta is

¹ An act of Congress was passed in February, 1864, providing for the appointment of a Lieutenant-General to command all the armies of the Union, an honor which had never previously been conferred on any other than Washington, Scott being only such by brevet. President Lincoln immediately nominated General Grant for the office, and the nomination was confirmed on the 3d of March.

² Atlanta was a great railroad center, and had immense magazines, workshops, and stores, all of the greatest importance to the Confederate government. Hence this city became one of the chief objective points of the war at this time.

ours, and fairly won," telegraphed Sherman to Washington, and Lincoln wrote him a letter of thanks (Sept. 2).

48. Finding that Hood had gone northward, with the design of destroying the communications of the Union army, instead of pursuing him, Sherman sent Thomas to defend Tennessee, while he, himself, resolved to march through Georgia to the coast. At Nash-

Battle of Nashville. ville, Hood was defeated by Thomas in a terrific battle of two days (Dec. 15, 16). The Confederate army was pursued day and night, and annihilated. Of Thomas it has been said: "He never lost a battle. He was believed to be very slow, but in Hood's army it was felt that he was fearfully sure."



GENERAL SHERMAN.

49. Breaking away entirely from his northern communications, Sherman commenced (Nov. 15) his ever memorable march to the sea-coast. Passing through Georgia, and living upon the country as he advanced, "which abounded in corn, sweet potatoes, and meats," he successively occupied the State capital and other large towns.

Sherman's march to the sea. "In a continuous line the army would have stretched over fifty miles, the wagon-train would have reached over thirty miles. At every halt the adjacent fields were covered with the horses, mules, and cattle. Nothing could be more picturesque than the bivouac in the majestic pine forests through which the march lay. Groups of soldiers flitting past the red, glaring watch-fires; some busy preparing supper; some dancing, singing, talking; and there was the low murmur of the vast host; the moaning of the wind as it swept through the tops of the trees; the neighing of horses, and the rustling

step of the picket-guard pacing his round, and outwatching the clear, cold night." Fort McAllister¹ was reached, and carried by assault, and, on the morning of the 21st of December, Sherman entered Savannah. In announcing his triumph to President Lincoln, he said: "I beg to present you a Christmas gift, the city of Savannah, with one hundred and fifty guns and plenty of ammunition, and also about twenty-five thousand bales of cotton." Halleck, rejoicing in Sherman's success, pronounced his march as "the greatest one of this great war." Grant congratulated Sherman on "the successful termination of this most brilliant campaign."

50. The campaign in Virginia was planned by Grant and conducted by him in person, Meade being second in command. On the 4th of May, when he telegraphed to Sherman to advance, his own army was crossing the Rapidan. On the following day he encountered Lee in a terrific contest, known as the battle of the Wilderness, which raged for two days, night putting an end to the struggle. "The dead lay thickly strewn among the trees—the Wilderness was throbbing with the wounded." Grant, determining to put his whole force between Lee and Richmond, with his large army was enabled to outflank the Confederates, who retreated and took a position at Spottsylvania Court House, where another destructive battle was fought. "Thwarted there, Grant repeated the attempt at the North Anna; thwarted there again, with inflexible determination he delivered an assault at Cold Harbor. 'I propose to fight it out on this line if it takes all summer,' he informed the Secretary of War." In this series of battles the Union loss was, probably, not less than fifty thousand men.

¹ In five weeks, the army marched more than three hundred miles. During this time, Sherman and his troops were unheard of at the North, and great anxiety was felt on their account. The first news of the success and safety of Sherman's army was brought by scouts who left it as it was approaching Savannah. Hiding in the rice swamps by day, and paddling down the river at night, they succeeded in passing Fort McAllister, near Savannah, and were picked up by the Union gunboats.

51. Butler, co-operating with Grant, sailed from Fortress Monroe, but was compelled to intrench himself on the south side of the James. About the middle of June, Grant effected a change of base by transferring his army to that side of the river, where his troops were confronted by the strong fortifications of Petersburg, which, in spite of every effort of the Union general, were held by the Confederates till the following spring.

52. In the meantime, the valley of the Shenandoah had been the scene of almost constant warfare. It was a part of Grant's plan that a movement, in co-operation with his own, should be made up the river, but it failed. Hunter was then put in command. ^{The} Shenandoah valley. The latter met with a success at Piedmont, but, fearing pursuit by a superior force, retreated across the mountains into West Virginia. The valley being thus open, Lee, secure for the time being behind his intrenchments at Petersburg and Richmond, detached twenty thousand men under General Early, to make an attempt to capture Washington.

53. Early crossed the Potomac into Maryland, and, at the Mo-noc'-a-cy river, with his overwhelming numbers, defeated a Union force from Baltimore. A part of his army advanced into Pennsylvania and set fire to Chambersburg, but being overtaken and defeated, escaped to the mountains. Grant



MAJOR-GENERAL SHERIDAN.

hurried off troops for the defense of Washington, and Hunter desiring to be relieved, the command was given to General Sheridan. Sheridan attacked and routed Early at Winchester (Sept. 19th), and, three days after, met and routed him again. "In a week he had destroyed or captured half of Early's army, and driven the rest southward." The next month, during the absence of Sheridan, his army was suddenly attacked at Cedar Creek, and driven in disorder

from its position. While the Confederates were plundering the captured camps, Sheridan, who had heard the firing, came up at full speed. He at once rallied his men, formed them in line, charged the Confederates, and, for the third time, utterly routed them. Early's army was destroyed, and the campaign in the Shenandoah valley was ended.

54. The Confederates, by means of English-built privateers sailing under the Confederate flag, succeeded in destroying a large number of American merchantmen. Semmes, in the Alabama, by far the most important ship built for the Confederates, resumed his career of destruction, luring his prey by hoisting the British flag, and then burning or bonding his victim. In June he entered the harbor of Cherbourg (*sher'-boorg*), France, where he was found by Captain Winslow of the national ship of war Kearsarge (*keer'-sary*). Off that harbor an action took place between the two ships, resulting in the sinking of the Alabama. Semmes and forty of his crew were taken out of the water by a British yacht, which, instead of delivering up the rescued men to the Kearsarge, steamed off to the English coast and there landed them.

55. Of all the achievements of the navy of the United States during the war, not one was more brilliant than that of Admiral Farragut in Mobile bay, which place was well defended by forts, gun-boats, and an iron-clad ram (resembling the celebrated Merrimac) called the Tennessee. The attacking fleet of monitors and wooden vessels moved up the bay, Farragut being on board his flag-ship, the Hartford, lashed at the main-top to the rigging, the better to observe operations and give orders. He succeeded in passing the forts and dispersing the gun-boats, when the encounter with the ram took place ; but, sorely beset by the



REAR-ADMIRAL FARRAGUT.

fleet, badly crippled, and her commander severely wounded, the Tennessee was compelled to strike her colors (Aug. 5).

56. The twentieth national election took place in the fall of this year. The Republicans had again nominated Lincoln. His opponent, the Democratic nominee, was General McClellan. The seceded States, of course, took no part in the contest. Lincoln was chosen by a very large majority, and Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, was elected vice-president. Nevada's first presidential vote was given at this election.

Re-election
of President
Lincoln.

CLOSE OF THE WAR.

57. Sherman, having halted at Savannah only long enough to refit his army, commenced a march, in the depth of winter, through the Carolinas, to join Grant, who was confronting Lee near Richmond. "The army that was coming was not like those which in the earlier days of the war waited for the roads to dry, for the weather to become cooler and then to become warmer." Like a tornado it passed on. "A black smoke, rising to the skies, marked its track." Columbia was captured. Charleston, in consequence, also fell;¹ and once more the national flag was raised over Fort Sumter, now a pile of ruins. Onward Sherman pressed, passing into North Carolina, where he encountered and defeated a large Confederate army, commanded by Johnston. The end was near.

Sherman's
campaign
of 1865.

58. It became apparent to Lee that he must either evacuate Richmond and Petersburg, or be captured. He then began to form a plan by which he might retreat into North Carolina, and there join Johnston. Anticipating this, Grant is-

¹ Fort Fisher, the main defense of Wilmington, was captured after a desperate resistance, by a land force commanded by General Terry, aided by Porter's fleet (Jan. 15). A month later, General Schofield, co-operating with the fleet, reduced Wilmington. This was a severe loss to the Confederacy (Feb. 22). Schofield then acted under orders from Sherman.

and instructions for a general movement against Richmond, and, on the morning of Wednesday, March 29th, it began. Sheridan's advance led to the battle of Five Forks and to a decisive victory for Sheridan (April 1). The next morning, at daybreak, a general assault upon the Confederate lines was made, and before noon the entire exterior defenses were captured. "In Richmond, for it was Sunday, the people had assembled in the churches, knowing little of what was going on twenty miles distant at the front. Davis had repaired to his customary place of worship. There came up the aisle a messenger, who handed him a dispatch from Lee, which contained intelligence of the most momentous event of the war. The news quickly passed from lip to lip, from church to church."

59. "Men, women, and children rushed from the churches. Wagons on the streets were soon hastily loaded at the depots with boxes, trunks, etc., and driven to the Danville depot. Those who had determined to leave with the fugitive government looked on with amazement; then, convinced of the fact, rushed to follow the example. Vehicles suddenly rose to a premium value that was astounding; and ten, fifteen, and even a hundred dollars, in gold or Federal currency, was offered for a conveyance. Suddenly, as if by magic, the streets became filled with men, walking as though for a wager, and behind them excited negroes with trunks, bundles, and luggage of every description. All over the city it was the same—wagons, trunks, bandboxes, and their owners, a mass of hurrying fugitives, filling the streets. The banks were all open, and depositors were as busy as bees removing their specie deposits; and the directors were equally active in getting off their bullion. Hundreds of thousands of dollars of paper money were destroyed.

¹ Jefferson Davis fled southward on the abandonment of Richmond; but soon a party of cavalry started on his track. They followed him through the Carolinas into Georgia, where they suddenly came upon his hiding place; and, notwithstanding an attempt to escape, he was discovered and seized. He was conveyed a prisoner to Fortress Monroe, where he was kept in confinement until 1867, when he was released.

60. Night came, and with it came confusion worse confounded. There was no sleep for human eyes in Richmond that night. The City Council had met in the evening, and resolved to destroy all the liquor in the city, to avoid the disorder consequent on the temptation to drink at such a time. About the hour of midnight the work commenced. Hundreds of barrels of liquor were rolled into the street. The gutters ran with a liquor-freshet, and the fumes filled and impregnated the air. Fine cases of bottled liquors were tossed into the street from third-story windows, and wrecked into a thousand pieces. As the work progressed, some straggling soldiers retreating through the city, managed to get hold of a quantity of the liquor. From that moment, law and order ceased to exist. The air was filled with wild cries of distress, or the yells of roving pillagers.

61. But a more terrible element was to appear upon the scene. An order had been issued from General Ewell's headquarters, to fire the four principal tobacco warehouses of the city. Mayor Mayo dispatched a remonstrance against this order, which plainly put in jeopardy the whole business portion of Richmond. It was not heeded. Nothing was, therefore, left for the citizens but to submit to the destruction of their property. The warehouses were fired. The rams on the James river were blown up. The bridges leading out of the city were also fired, and were soon wrapped in flames.

62. Morning broke upon a scene such as those who witnessed it can never forget. The roar of an immense conflagration sounded in their ears; tongues of flame leaped from street to street; and in this baleful glare were to be seen, as of demons, the figures of busy plunderers, moving, pushing, rioting, through the black smoke, and into the open street, bearing away every conceivable sort of plunder." "The sun was an hour or more above the horizon, when suddenly there ran up the whole length of Main street the cry of 'Yankees!' 'Yankees!'" The Union soldiers were indeed entering the city, and Petersburg was also in possession of the national forces. Over both cities the stars and stripes again floated.

63. Lee retreated to the southwest, hoping to be able to join Johnston in North Carolina ; but his troops were hotly pursued. "There was no rest for them either by night or by day. If they attempted to snatch a few moments' sleep, they were roused by the hoof-clatter of Sheridan's cavalry." At last, overtaken, and seeing no hope of escape, Lee agreed to surrender. In the largest building of Appomattox Court House, which boasted of only five dwellings, he and Grant met. "Lee stood beside a table, wearing a bright bluish-gray uniform, a military hat with a gold cord, buckskin gauntlets, high riding-boots, and a beautiful sword. Grant, with his slouched hat, dark blue frock-coat covered with mud, pantaloons tucked in his soiled boots—wore no sword. They shook hands, sat down," and soon agreed to the terms of surrender (April 9).¹ The surrender of Johnston soon followed, and the Great Civil War was at an end.

Surrender
of Lee and
Johnston.

64. The North had triumphed, and on every side were joy and gladness. Flags waved, bells rang, guns were fired, houses were illuminated ; but this great joy was soon and suddenly turned into mourning. Just forty days after President Lincoln had entered on his second term, but less than a week after Lee's surrender, he was assassinated² in a theater at Washington by a person named

Assassination
of Lincoln.

¹ 'On this occasion Grant exhibited the greatest magnanimity. He declined to receive the sword of Lee, and in his capitulation paroled him and the less than eight thousand Confederates who then and there grounded their arms.'—*Alex. H. Stephens*.

² As the President sat in his box in Ford's theater, with his wife and friends, the assassin stealthily approached, entered the box, and shot his victim in the back of the head. Then leaping to the stage, he waved his pistol, and shouted, 'Sic semper tyrannis !' (the motto of Virginia—*So be it to tyrants*), and rushed away. In jumping, however, his spur had caught in the American flag which draped the box, and he fell, injuring his leg severely. He nevertheless succeeded in making his escape, and fled into Maryland, where he was tracked to his hiding-place, and refusing to surrender, was shot by one of the soldiers. Another assassin, with similar feelings of revenge, on the same evening broke into the chamber of Wm. H. Seward, the Secretary of State, who was lying sick, and made an almost fatal attack upon his life.

Booth, who, sympathizing with the Confederate cause, had become frenzied by its failure, and fancied that in killing the President he was avenging the wrongs of the South. The dying President lingered till morning in entire unconsciousness, and then passed away (April 15). The grief of the American people was deep and bitter. "Never was a public man more sincerely lamented."

65. Probably no other war in the history of the world called forth such mighty efforts as were made by both parties in this, the great "American Conflict;" nor was any similar

Cost of the war. struggle ever waged on so grand a scale, or with so vast a destruction of men and material, especially in proportion to the time of its duration—about four years. On the side of the National government nearly two million seven hundred thousand men were enlisted during the war, of whom at least one million and a half were actually and effectively engaged in the service. The Confederates, it is stated, could enlist only about six hundred thousand men. Of this number "one third were either killed outright upon the field or died of disease and wounds." The total losses, both sides included, probably amounted to about six hundred thousand men; and, with the wounded and disabled, did not fall far short of a million.

66. The national debt, at the close of the war, amounted to about twenty-seven hundred millions of dollars. "To it, should be added, the sums expended by the individual states and local bodies. The total rises above four thousand millions of dollars." To raise the enormous sums for the support of the great armies and fleets, and for other purposes in carrying on the war, the Federal government had asked for loans, which were freely granted; taxes were imposed on incomes and manufactures; and revenue stamps were required for bonds, deeds, receipts, etc. The Confederate debt, which must have amounted to a vast sum, was never paid.

67. "In a land where every man is free to think and free

to act as he likes—where, one might suppose, there would of necessity, be a Babel hubbub of confusion, and society only a rope of sand, the shot of a gun at their flag **Miracles** brought half a million of riflemen into the field. **of the war.** The waste of battle and of the hospitals was for years more than supplied. With admirable energy, an iron-clad navy, that could match the navies of the world, was sent to sea. Never was there such an exhibition of public resolution and of private charity. If an army of a hundred thousand men melted away before cannon and by fever, there was another army of a hundred and fifty thousand men put into its place. The wars of Europe, even those of the French Empire, were outdone in brilliancy and in result.”

Johnson's Administration.

1. On the death of the lamented Lincoln, the vice-president, Andrew Johnson, became the third “accidental President.” The funeral obsequies



ANDREW JOHNSON.

of the late President occupied for a short **Funeral of Abraham Lincoln.** time the attention of

the whole people. His remains were borne to Springfield, Illinois, the former home of the deceased; and, as the procession moved on its long journey of nearly two thousand miles, the people everywhere sought to give expression to their reverential sorrow. At the great cities the

body lay in state, and all business was suspended.

2. The great work of disbanding the army was the first to be attended to. The leading newspaper in Europe had said: ‘It is true that the United States have easily raised great

armies, but they never will be able to return to a peace footing. The soldiers are masters of the situation ; **The army.** they cannot be disbanded. Military employment must be found for them." This prediction, it was soon shown, had no sufficient foundation ; for just as quickly as the soldiers were paid they gave back the arms they had used so bravely, and returned to their homes.

3. The manner in which the States of the South should be restored to their former political standing, and the conditions that should be imposed to insure the protection of the emancipated slaves, occupied the attention of the President and Congress for a considerable time, as they were not able to agree upon the proper policy to be pursued. Proclamations were issued by the President, removing restrictions on commerce in the South, and declaring amnesty, or pardon, to all persons (except certain specified classes) who had been concerned in the organization and defense of the Confederacy. Several of the States that had belonged to the Confederacy hastened to repeal their secession ordinances, and accept a proposed amendment to the Constitution abolishing slavery in every part of the United States. This amendment—the thirteenth—having been duly approved by three-fourths of all the States of the Union, slavery was declared to be constitutionally abolished (Dec. 18, 1865).¹

4. Much of the progress of "reconstruction" had been effected by Congress, in spite of the President's opposition. The latter held that the Southern States were never legally out of the Union, their ordinances of secession being void ; therefore they were entitled to representation at once in the United States Congress. Congress, however, while agreeing with the president, that the ordinances were void, insisted that, before the States which had been at war with the Union were admitted to their former relations to the Government, they should be required to retrace certain steps they

¹ The next amendment, the 14th, was adopted in July, 1868.

had taken in legislation, respecting secession, and be further required to give certain guarantees.

5. The President declared the position taken by Congress to be a "new rebellion;" and in his messages and speeches he manifested open hostility to that body. The quarrel was brought to an issue by the passage of a resolution in the House of Representatives, impeaching President Johnson of high crimes and misdemeanors. The impeachment articles, eleven in number, were duly submitted to the Senate, according to the provisions of the Constitution, and the President was tried on three of them. After a long trial, he was acquitted, a large majority, but not two-thirds of the Senators, having pronounced him guilty, when the Senate, as a court, adjourned (May 26, 1868).

6. Previous to this, in 1867, the number of States had been increased to thirty-seven, by the admission of Nebraska, originally a part of the "Louisiana Purchase." During the same year the territorial possessions of the United States were very greatly enlarged by the addition of Alaska, formerly known as Russian America, a country valuable for its coast fisheries, its furs, and its forests of white pine and yellow cedar. ~~This vast tract, larger than the original thirteen States, was purchased of Russia for seven million two hundred thousand dollars in gold.~~ **Nebraska and Alaska.**

Grant's Administration.

1. The candidate of the Republican party for President, in the fall of 1868, was General Grant; that of the Democrats was Horatio Seymour. The former was elected by a very large majority. Grant's administration commenced on the 4th of March, 1869. During that year the **Reconstruction** three States, Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas, **completed.** were restored to representation in Congress, and thus the "reconstruction of the Union" was fully accomplished.

Texas was the last State to accept the amended Constitution.



ULYSSES S. GRANT.

This included a new amendment—the fifteenth—which guaranteed the right of suffrage to all citizens of the United States without regard to “race, color, or previous condition of servitude.” Its object was to secure to the negroes of every State in the Union the privilege of voting.

2. The depredations committed by the Alabama and other Confederate privateers, built and equipped in British

ports, were a cause of much ill-feeling on the part of the people of the United States against the British government; and, while the latter refused to make any compensation for the injury inflicted, this feeling continued. At length, after a correspondence between the two governments, continued from Lincoln’s administration, a commission, composed of English and American representatives, met at Washington, and concluded a treaty which provided for the settlement of “all causes of difference between the two countries (1871).”

3. In conformity with this treaty, a tribunal of five arbitrators—one from each of the countries, the United States, Great Britain, Italy, Switzerland, and Brazil—met in

Destructive Conflagrations.—In October, 1871, the most destructive fire in the history of this country occurred at Chicago. About eighteen thousand buildings were consumed. The area burned over was more than two thousand acres; and the value of property destroyed was not much less than two hundred million dollars. During the same month, forest fires raged in parts of Michigan, Wisconsin, and Minnesota, and were scarcely less destructive than the Chicago conflagration. In a little more than a year after (Nov., 1872), a fire occurred in Boston, which laid waste sixty-five acres. The total loss, in houses and merchandise, was about seventy-five million dollars.

Geneva, Switzerland, where they examined and decided all questions submitted to them ; and finally made an award of damages to the amount of fifteen and a half million dollars, to be paid to the United States for the satisfaction of all the claims "known as the Alabama claims, growing out of the acts committed by the several vessels (1872)." Accordingly that amount was promptly paid by Great Britain.¹

4. The twenty-second presidential election took place in the fall of 1872. There was little at issue between the political parties. Grant was again the candidate of the Republicans. His competitor was Horace Greeley, "a distinguished journalist and leader of public opinion." The latter was the nominee of Republicans, who, calling themselves Liberal Republicans, were not satisfied with Grant's administration. He also received the nomination of the Democratic party. After the election on the part of the people was over, and it was certain that Grant had received a large majority of their votes, but before the "State electors" had met in their "respective States" to carry out the popular decision, Greeley died. The excitement and labor of the campaign, together with domestic bereavement, had broken him down.

Business Depression.—A money panic occurred in the Fall of 1873 ; and business depression,—the result of excessive speculation in railroad stocks, of railroad building, and other causes,—followed, and continued for a number of years. Some called all this trouble "the natural result of the war."

¹ Among the provisions of the Washington treaty was one for the settlement of the northwest boundary from a point on the forty-ninth parallel to the Pacific ocean ; and another for the settlement of a long-standing dispute respecting the right of the people of the United States to catch fish off the coast of the British American provinces. The boundary dispute was referred to the Emperor of Germany, who made a decision in favor of the United States (1871). The fishery dispute was not settled till several years later. Three commissioners met in Halifax, Nova Scotia, and by a majority vote, decided that the United States should pay five and a half million dollars for the fishery privilege for a period of twelve years. The award was not regarded as equitable by the people and government of the United States, but the amount was duly paid (1878).

5. The year 1876, the centennial of American independence, was one of great rejoicing throughout the Union. The important events of the Revolution that had occurred a hundred years before—prominently that of the Declaration of Independence—were duly commemorated.

**The
nation's
Centennial.**

Among the most interesting events of this centennial year, was the International Exhibition at Philadelphia, commonly known as the "World's Fair." For the purposes of this exhibition, nearly two hundred buildings were erected in Fairmount Park, the six principal ones covering more than sixty acres. In these were exhibited specimens of the farming products and the manufactured goods of nearly every State in the Union, and of the most important foreign countries. Beautiful works of art, and other articles designed to show the progress made by different States and countries in science and education, were also exhibited. During the six months in which the "Fair" was open, nearly ten million persons visited it.

6. Another important event of the year was the admission of Colorado into the Union, hence this "Rocky Mountain Sister" is familiarly called the Centennial State. Part of its

**The
Centennial
State.**

territory, that north of the Arkansas river and east of the Rocky mountains, was originally a portion of the "Louisiana Purchase." All the remaining portion was included in the Mexican cession of 1848. The Union now consists of thirty-eight States (1879).

7. The growth of the nation during the hundred years of its existence was indeed marvelous. The first census, taken in 1790, showed a total population in the thirteen States and

**The
century
of progress.**

national territory, of about four millions. The last census, that of 1870, made known the fact that the population of the United States exceeded thirty-eight millions. Of this number, the city of New York, which, in 1790, was smaller than Philadelphia, and contained only about thirty-three thousand inhabitants, had now almost a million. All the great cities of what used to be

called the West, attained their astonishing growth within the century. Cincinnati, in 1805, contained only about five hundred inhabitants ; and Chicago, in 1831, was a mere village. St. Louis was but a small trading town, when, with Louisiana, it came under the United States government. New Orleans, then (in 1790) a French settlement, but in the possession of Spain, was a town of only a few hundred inhabitants.

8. The vast fertile domain of our country, constantly presenting new fields for farming industry, has made agriculture the leading pursuit, except in some small sections. The immense production of the cereal grains, such as wheat, Indian corn, rye, oats, and barley, in the Northern States ; and of cotton, rice, sugar, etc., in the Southern, has offered a splendid reward to the farmer and the planter. The cultivation of cotton has been a prominent feature in the agricultural history of the country, and its results have revolutionized the commerce of the world. In 1790, it had hardly commenced ; but, in 1860, before the breaking out of the Civil War, it reached the enormous aggregate of two thousand million pounds, or four million bales, and was the chief article of export of the country.

9. The magnetic telegraph has already been referred to. In 1860, there were over fifty thousand miles of telegraph wires in operation. The laying of the Atlantic cable, a telegraph stretching from Ireland to Newfoundland, upon the bed of the Atlantic ocean, was one of the most valuable as well as interesting achievements of science. After failures in the attempt in 1857, 1858, and 1865, it was at last accomplished, in 1866, by means of the Great Eastern, the largest steam vessel ever constructed. The success of this enterprise was largely due to the intelligence and untiring energy of Cyrus W. Field.

10. Perhaps no country in the world has been more distinguished for useful inventions than the United States. It was the discoveries of Dr. Franklin in electricity that led to its practical applications ; and to Morse is due the credit of

making the most useful of these in the electro-magnetic telegraph (see p. 236). The cotton-gin, as we have seen, increased a hundredfold the value of the cotton culture (see p. 188). The history of the sewing-machine, like that of almost every other great piece of mechanism, shows that "the invention was a growth rather than an inspiration;" but the name of Elias Howe is inseparably connected with the success of this invention of priceless value to civilization. American ingenuity, too, has given us that wonder-working contrivance, the cylinder press, by means of which twenty-five thousand copies of a newspaper may be struck off in a single hour.¹ To these may be added a host of other valuable inventions, including farming implements of the greatest utility.

11. The improvements in the means of spreading information, by means of newspapers and books, have kept pace with every other kind of civil progress. The press, that mighty engine of civilization, has been ever busy, ever increasing its power to meet the demands of the people for knowledge. Eight thousand periodicals were at this time issued in the United States, or about one for every five thousand inhabitants; and the number of books published annually is more than three thousand.



IRVING.

12. American literature is rich in works of genius. The writings of Washington Irving are everywhere admired for their easy, natural, and beautiful style, their kindly influence, and playful humor. Cooper, the American novelist, has never been surpassed in the power of description, particularly of the peculiar feature of Indian life, and life on the ocean.

Bancroft, Prescott, Hildreth, Motley, Palfrey, and Parkman, stand among the best writers

¹ R. Hoe & Co. have now (1879) a press that will print 50,000 papers in an hour.

of history the world has ever produced. The History of the United States, by one of these writers, George Bancroft, is a work of wide-spread fame. It has occupied very many years of its gifted author's life, and is not yet finished.

13. American poets may justly claim a place with the most celebrated of all countries. Several poems written by William Cullen Bryant must be as lasting as the language itself. There are few school graduates who have not learned to admire "Thanatopsis," the "Planting of the Apple Tree," and other of his poems, which have been used as the means of cultivating the taste of our youth, and impressing upon their minds sentiments of truth, beauty, and tenderness. Longfellow, Whittier, Holmes, and Lowell must



BANCROFT.

also be added as among the great poets, not only of our own country, but of the world. In the domain of fiction and miscellaneous writing, besides Irving and Cooper, Hawthorne, Harriet Beecher Stowe, and Julia Ward Howe, ought to be mentioned with high commendation. This brief list would be greatly extended if we should include all who have achieved for themselves



BRYANT.

fame, and added luster to the literature of their country.

14. "The public speeches of a nation's chief legislators are among the most luminous landmarks of its policy, the most lucid developments of the character and genius of its institutions, and the noblest exhibitions of its

intellect. The speeches of many of our greatest orators have not been preserved. Of the orations of Otis, which were described as 'flames of fire,' we have but a few meagre reports. We are persuaded of the eloquence of Henry only by the history of its effects. The passionate appeals of the elder Adams, which 'moved his hearers from their seats,' are not in print. Of the great orators of a later day—Webster, Clay, Calhoun, John Quincy Adams, Everett, Sumner,



LONGFELLOW.

and others—we have the means of forming a more accurate judgment. Their works belong to our standard literature. They are thoroughly imbued with the national spirit. They glow with the feelings of the people."

15. As Grant's second term of office drew towards its close, the two great political parties made their nominations for president. The candidate of the Democrats was Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, that of the Republicans ^{23d National} election. was Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio. The election was duly held; but in consequence of disputes respecting the electoral votes of certain of the States, the result was in doubt. How should the votes be counted? As the Constitution did not clearly provide a method, a Commission, composed of five Senators, five Representatives, and five judges of the Supreme Court, was formed by Congress, to decide questions at issue, both parties agreeing to abide by the result. The Commission having given its decisions, one hundred and eighty-five votes were counted for Hayes, and one hundred and eighty-four for Tilden. The president of the Senate, in the presence of both Houses of Congress assembled in joint convention, then declared Mr. Hayes to be the president elect (March 2, 1877).

SUMMARY.

- 1857.** *Buchanan's Administration*—The "slavery question" was the great topic of discussion, and "John Brown's Raid" intensified the discussion. The presidential election was the signal for the secession of South Carolina and other Southern States, and for the formation of the Southern Confederacy. Minnesota, Oregon, and Kansas were admitted into the Union (1857-1861).
- 1861.** *Lincoln's.*—The great final conflict between the North and the South, the seeds of which were planted when slavery was introduced into Virginia (1619), was already begun when Lincoln was inaugurated. The gun fired upon the American flag at Fort Sumter was followed by McClellan's defeat of the Confederates in West Virginia, by the movement against Richmond with its disastrous termination at Bull Run (July 21), by the blockade of the Confederate ports, by the extension of the war into Missouri, and by the capture of Mason and Slidell.
- 1862.** The second year began with the campaign for opening the Mississippi. The Union forces gained a victory at Mill Spring, captured Forts Henry and Donelson, occupied Nashville, won a victory at Shiloh, and gained New Orleans. Meanwhile a second campaign against Richmond, under McClellan, was on the eve of moving when the Confederate ram Virginia destroyed two Union ships-of-war, and then had the memorable engagement with the "Little Monitor." McClellan's campaign, with its "seven days' fighting," ended in failure; and thus Lee, the Confederate commander, found it easy to make a northern invasion; but, though defeating Pope in the "second battle of Bull Run," he met with a repulse at Antietam, and was compelled to fall back into Virginia. The year closed with the failure of Burnside's campaign against Richmond.
- 1863.** Lincoln issued his emancipation proclamation on the first day of the third year of the war. The operations for the opening of the Mississippi were continued: Murfreesboro was captured, and the surrender of Vicksburg to Grant (July 4), with that of Port Hudson to Banks, finished the task. The fourth campaign against Richmond, under Hooker, met with a disastrous defeat at Chancellorsville. Thus encouraged once more, Lee made another invasion of the North, but at Gettysburg met a defeat (July 3) from which the Confederates never recovered. Under Bragg, near Chattanooga, they won a victory, but in a second battle lost more than they had gained. The admission of West Virginia into the Union and the "Draft Riot" in New York were also important events of the year.
- 1864.** After the Red river expedition, Sherman's movement against Atlanta and Grant's against Richmond began. Grant, with Lee as his antagonist, fought the Battle of the Wilderness, and then

advanced to the vicinity of Petersburg. Lee's army, being safe behind intrenchments, and the Shenandoah valley open, the Confederates, under Early, entered the valley and invaded Maryland, but, after some successes, were defeated by Sheridan, and, as an army, destroyed. Sherman, after fighting a number of battles and capturing Atlanta, made his great march to the sea. The destruction of the Alabama by the Kearsarge, Farragut's victory in Mobile bay, and the admission of Nevada into the Union, were also important events.

- 1865.** Sherman continued his campaign, and, advancing towards Richmond, captured Columbia; Charleston and Wilmington, in consequence, fell into the hands of the Union forces. Meanwhile Grant, never losing an inch of ground, so pressed upon the Confederates that they were finally compelled to evacuate Petersburg and Richmond. The surrender of Lee and Johnson, the assassination of Lincoln, and the constitutional abolishment of slavery, were the other notable events of the year.

Johnson's Administration.—The abolishment of slavery, as stated by the adoption of the thirteenth amendment to the Constitution (Dec. 1865), the adoption of the fourteenth amendment (July 1868), the President's impeachment and trial, and the purchase of Alaska, occurred during Johnson's administration (1865-1869).

- 1869.** Grant's.—The adoption of the fifteenth amendment to the Constitution (1870), the "Alabama Treaty," the great fire in Chicago, the National Centennial, the World's Fair at Philadelphia, and the admission of Colorado into the Union, belong to Grant's administration (1869-1877).

TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

(See the hints and directions, p. 49.)

BIOGRAPHICAL.

James Buchanan.	253-257
Abraham Lincoln. (See Raymond's Life of Lincoln, also Barrett's, Crosby's, and Holland's; also Carpenter's "Six Months at the White House.")	255-294
Jefferson Davis. (See Alfrend's Life of Davis, also Pollard's "Southern Confederacy.")	256-291
Winfield Scott. (See Mansfield's Life of Scott, also Headley's, and Victor's, and Scott's Autobiography.)	212, 228, 240, 262
George B. McClellan. (See Hillard's Life of McClellan, also Victor's.)	261-290
David G. Farragut. (See Headley's "Farragut and our Naval Commanders.")	266-289
Robert E. Lee. (See Cooke's Life of Lee, also McCabe's "Life and Campaigns of Lee.")	271-293

- John C. Fremont.** (See Upham's "Life and Public Services of Fremont," also Magoon's Life of Fremont.) - - - 289-272
- Wm. T. Sherman.** (See "Memoirs of Gen. W. T. Sherman by himself.") - - - 283-290
- Joseph E. Johnston.** (See "Narrative of Military Operations by Joseph E. Johnston.") - - - 271-293
- Thomas J. Jackson.** (See Addey's Life of Jackson, also Dabney's.) 271-277
- Andrew Johnson.** (See Peterson's "Life, Speeches, and Services of Andrew Johnson.") - - - 290-297
- U. S. Grant.** (See Badeau's Military History of Grant, also Phelps's Life of Grant, and Mrs. Stowe's "Men of Our Times.") - - - 263 (note)-304

GEOGRAPHICAL.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Harper's Ferry, Va. | 254-273 | Fredericksburg, Va. | 274 |
| Charleston. | 128, 142-166, 255-290 | Chancellorsville, Va. | 277 |
| Fort Sumter. | 166, 256-290 | Chambersburg, Pa. 273 (note), 277, 288 | |
| Montgomery, Ala. | 256, 261 | Gettysburg, Pa. | 277, 278 |
| Columbia river. | 196, 257 | Vicksburg, Miss. | 266, 280, 281 |
| Alexandria, Va. | 261 | New York. | 257, 268 281 |
| Norfolk, Va. | 261, 268, 271 | Murfreesboro', Tenn. 274 (note), 282 | |
| Richmond, Va. | 261-292 | Chattanooga, Tenn. | 282, 283 |
| Washington. | 195-213, 247-293 | Atlanta, Ga. | 285 |
| New Orleans. | 46, 214, 266-268 | Savannah. | 99, 164, 165, 267, 287 |
| Tennessee river. | 265, 266, 282 | Petersburg, Va. | 288, 292 |
| Nashville, Tenn. | 265, 286 | Winchester, Va. | 288 |
| Memphis, Tenn. | 266 | Shenandoah valley. | 288, 289 |
| Corinth, Miss. | 266 | Mobile and Mobile bay. | 214, 289 |
| Wilmington, N. C. | 290 (note). | Columbia, S. C. | 290 |

HISTORICAL.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Buchanan's election. | 253 | Opening of the Mississippi. 265-281 |
| John Brown's raid. | 253, 254 | Draft Riot in New York. . . |
| Lincoln's election and inauguration. | 255, 258 | 281 |
| Secession. | 228, 255, 256, 259 | Rosecrans's operations. 274 (note), 282 |
| Causes of the Civil War. . . | 253-258 | The War in Tennessee. |
| Southern Confederacy. | 256, 261 | 265-286 |
| Battle of Bull Run. | 261 | Thomas's operations. |
| The Blockade. | 259-276 | 265-283 |
| The War in Missouri. 262, 263 (note). | | Red river expedition. |
| The Trent Affair. | 264 | 284 |
| The War in Kentucky. 265-284 (note) | | Sherman's march to the sea |
| Battle of Shiloh. | 266, 280 | 286 |
| Capture of New Orleans. . . | 266, 267 | Grant's Campaign in Virginia. |
| Battle—Virginia and Monitor. | 269 | 285-293 |
| The Peninsular Campaign. . | 270 | Butler's operations . . . |
| Lee's first invasion. | 272 | 261-288 |
| Burnside's Campaign. | 274 | Alabama and Kearsarge. . . |
| Emancipation. | 276 | 289 |
| Hooker's operations. | 271-283 | Sheridan's operations. |
| Lee's second invasion. | 277 | 288-293 |
| | | Surrender of Lee and Johnston. |
| | | 293 |
| | | Assassination of Lincoln. . . |
| | | 293 |
| | | Reconstruction. |
| | | 296, 297 |
| | | President Johnson's impeachment and trial. |
| | | 296, 297 |
| | | The Alabama Claims. . . |
| | | 264, 289, 298 |
| | | The World's Fair. |
| | | 300 |
| | | Century of Progress. |
| | | 300 |
| | | Political Parties. |
| | | 179, 194-304 |

Hayes's Administration.

1. The oath of office was taken in the "White House"—the President's mansion—by Mr. Hayes, on Saturday evening, March 3d, 1877, a few persons only, besides the Chief



RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

Justice of the United States, who administered the oath, being present. This was done to prevent an interregnum from Sunday to Monday. The inaugural ceremonies took place on Monday (the 5th), in the open air, at the east front of the Capitol, in the presence of at least fifteen thousand persons. The new President had been an officer in the Union army during the Great Civil War, in which conflict he had rendered "gallant and distinguished service," and was four times wounded. Afterward he was a member of Congress and Governor of Ohio. His inaugural address, breathing the spirit of conciliation, was satisfactory to all parts of the Union—the South as well as the North, the East as well as the West. William A. Wheeler was inducted into office as Vice-President.

2. During this administration, the fishery dispute, respecting the right of the people of the United States to catch fish off the coast of the British-American provinces, **Important Events.** has been settled for a term of years (see note, p. 299). The railroad riots, begun in Maryland by the firemen and brakemen of a freight train, against a reduction of their wages, and extended through Pennsylvania and other States, by which a vast amount of property was destroyed and several lives lost, was an alarming event of the summer of 1877. At an early stage in the progress of the Great Civil War, the banks of the country, as well as the general government,

discontinued the payment of gold and silver, using paper money—mostly “greenbacks”—instead. This “suspension of specie payments” continued till the 1st of January, 1879, when the banks and government resumed specie payments, and gold and silver money once more came into common use.

ACQUISITION OF TERRITORY.

(See Map opposite page 243.)

Original Territory.—The territorial limits of the United States at the close of the Revolution extended to the Mississippi on the west and the great lakes on the north. Within these limits were included the territory of Maine, then a district of Massachusetts, and the territory of Vermont, claimed by both New York and New Hampshire (see p. 184), but no part of the country bordering on the Gulf of Mexico was so included.

The Louisiana Purchase.—The first acquisition of territory was a vast domain stretching from the Mississippi to the Rocky mountains. This was purchased of France in 1803 (see p. 196). All of the present States of Louisiana, Missouri, Arkansas, Iowa, and Nebraska, and the Territories of Montana and Dakota, with the greater part of Minnesota and Kansas, and a small portion of Colorado and Wyoming, belonged to this domain. That part of Minnesota east of the Mississippi belonged to the original territory of the United States.

Florida.—The second acquisition was Florida. This was made in 1819-21, by purchase from Spain (see p. 220). During the second war with England (p. 206) the United States occupied that part of the Florida lands, now of the State of Alabama, bordering on the Gulf of Mexico, and they held possession of it when the treaty of cession was made. How far Florida extended westward, even at that late day, was not fully beyond dispute.

Oregon.—The entire region west of the Rocky mountains, from latitude 42° to about 54°, was long known as Oregon. It was claimed by both the United States and Great Britain. Some writers have regarded Oregon as a part of the "Louisiana Purchase," but the researches of Mr. Greenhow (see the notes, pp. 198, 243) and the whole history of the "Oregon Controversy" go to prove the contrary. The claim of the United States was based upon the fact: 1st, that an American ship was the first to enter and ascend to a considerable distance the great river of the region (see p. 257); 2d, that the first extensive exploration of the region was made by Americans under the direction of the United States government (see pp. 196, 257); and 3d, that the first settlement in the region was made by Americans (see p. 257). To this it may be added that when, in 1819-21, the United States made a treaty with Spain for the purchase of Florida, all the "rights, claims, and pretensions" of Spain to the Oregon region were transferred to the United States. After an angry controversy with Great Britain, lasting through several years, that power, in 1846, abandoned her pretensions to all south of the 49th parallel. The region thus yielded was then organized as the Territory of Oregon. It now includes the State of Oregon and the Territories of Washington and Idaho.

Texas, California, etc.—Texas was acquired by annexation (see pp. 236, 238), and the immense tract now belonging to the United States between that State and the Pacific was acquired from Mexico by conquest and purchase (see p. 243). All of the present States of California and Nevada, and the Territories of New Mexico, Arizona, and Utah, with such portion of Kansas, Colorado, and Wyoming as was not included in the "Louisiana Purchase," belonged to the region acquired by annexation, or by conquest and purchase from Mexico.

Alaska.—This territory, formerly known as Russian America, was purchased of Russia in 1867 (see p. 297).

THE STATES.

THE ORIGIN OF THEIR NAMES, AND THE POPULAR OR PET NAMES
APPLIED TO THEM.

Virginia was so called by Queen Elizabeth because it was discovered during the reign of the virgin queen. The popular name for this State is the *Old Dominion*, but the origin of the term has not been satisfactorily determined. It is also called the *Mother of States*, because from its extensive original domain a number of States were formed, in whole or in part. The name *Mother of Presidents* is likewise given to it, because six of the Presidents of the United States were born in the State.

New York.—The name was bestowed in compliment to the Duke of York (see p. 85). This, the *Empire State*, is the most populous and the wealthiest State in the Union. It is also known as the *Excelsior State*, the motto *Excelsior* being on its coat of arms.

Massachusetts.—"The name probably arose from the name of a tribe of Indians formerly at Barnstable, or from two Indian words, *mas*, signifying an *Indian arrow-head*, and *wetuset*, a hill." Massachusetts, before the Revolution, was called the Massachusetts Bay Colony, hence its popular name of the *Bay State*, or the *Old Bay State*.

New Hampshire.—The province was named after the county in England, Hampshire, in which John Mason lived (see p. 67). New Hampshire is known as the *Granite State*, the mountainous portions being largely composed of granite.

Connecticut.—This was the Indian name of the river, meaning the long river. Connecticut is often alluded to as the *Land of Steady Habits*, in allusion to the staid deportment of its inhabitants. Also, the *Nutmeg State*, "the inhabitants of which have such a reputation for shrewdness that they have been jocosely accused of palming off wooden nutmegs on unsuspecting purchasers, instead of the genuine article."

Maryland.—In the charter granted by Charles I. the province was named *Terra Mariæ*, Mary's Land, in honor of his wife, Henrietta Maria (see note, p. 88).

Rhode Island.—The island itself, says one authority, "was so called from a fancied resemblance to the island of Rhodes in the Mediterranean sea." Another authority says: that in consequence of the reddish

appearance of the island, it "was soon known by the Dutch as *Roode*, or Red Island. From this is derived the name of the island and State."

Rhode Island is called *Little Rhody*, it being the smallest of the States. Delaware.—This State takes its name from Lord De la Ware, one of the governors of Virginia (see p. 55). It is sometimes called the *Diamond State* from its small size and great importance. Also, the *Blue Hen*, an officer in the war of the Revolution, commanding a Delaware regiment, having asserted that no fighting cock could be truly game whose mother was not a blue hen.

North Carolina.—The name Carolina was given to the region in honor of the French king, Charles (*Carolus*, in Latin) IX. (see p. 97). When we hear any one speak of the *Old North State* we know that North Carolina is meant. It is also called the *Turpentine State*, immense quantities of turpentine being produced there.

South Carolina is called the *Palmetto State*, "from the arms of the State, which contain a picture of a palmetto tree."

New Jersey derived its name from the island of Jersey (see p. 86). The pet name that has long been applied to the people of this State is the *Jersey Blues*.

Pennsylvania.—The word means *Penn's woods* or *Penn's forest* (see p. 92). Pennsylvania is called the *Keystone State*, "from its having been the central State of the Union at the time of the formation of the Constitution. If the names of the thirteen original States are arranged in the form of an arch, Pennsylvania will occupy the place of the keystone."

Georgia.—The colony was so called in honor of the king, George II. (see p. 99). Georgia has been spoken of as the *Empire State of the South*, but the term more properly belongs to Texas.

Vermont.—When the French were in possession of the St. Lawrence valley they called the Green Mountains, Vermont, *vert*, meaning green, and *mont*, mountain. Vermont is, in familiar terms, called the *Green Mountain State*, and its male inhabitants are called the *Green Mountain Boys*.

Kentucky.—An Indian word, signifying, says J. H. Trumbull, "at the head of a river." The popular name of the State is the *Corn-Cracker State*; its inhabitants are often called *Corn-Crackers*.

Tennessee.—An Indian word, signifying *river of the big bend*. Tennessee has been called the *Volunteer State*, from the fact that during the war of 1812 and the wars against the Seminoles it furnished large numbers of volunteer soldiers.

Ohio.—An Indian word, meaning *beautiful*. Ohio is called the *Buckeye State*, from the buckeye tree which abounds there. The inhabitants are often called *Buckeyes*.

Louisiana was so called in honor of Louis XIV., of France (see p. 46). It is called the *Oreole State*, the descendants of the original French and Spanish settlers being a large part of the habitants.

Indiana.—From the word *Indian*. The name Indiana was first applied in 1768 to a grant of land north of and near the Ohio river which a company of traders that year obtained from the Indians. Indiana is known as the *Hoosier State*, and its inhabitants as *Hoosiers*. "The word is said to be a corruption of *husher*, formerly a common term for a bully throughout the West."

Mississippi.—An Indian name, signifying the *great and long river*. Because of its numerous bayous or creeks, Mississippi is known as the *Bayou State*.

Illinois.—The first part of this word, signifying *men*, is of Indian origin ; the remaining part, *ois*, meaning *tribe of men*, is from the French. This State, in allusion to its wide-spread and beautiful prairies, is known as the *Prairie State*.

Alabama.—An Indian word, said to signify *here we rest*.

Maine.—Authors do not agree as to how and when Maine received its name. One writer says : "It was called the *Main* land, to distinguish it from the islands along the coast, which were valuable for fishing purposes." Varney, in his History of Maine, says : "In 1639 Gorges procured a royal grant of land extending from the Piscataqua to the Kennebec. The name of the territory under the new charter was changed to *Maine*, in honor of the queen (Henrietta Maria, wife of Charles I.), whose patrimonial estate, as Princess of France, was the French province of *Mayne*." Maine is the *Lumber State*, "the inhabitants being largely engaged in cutting and rafting lumber."

Missouri.—This is an Indian name, signifying *muddy*. It was, of course, first applied to the river.

Arkansas.—Kansas, an Indian word, signifies *smoky water*. The prefix *ar* (*arc*), meaning *a bow*, is French. Because of the number of bears that infested its forests, Arkansas is often called the *Bear State*.

Michigan.—Trumbull says : "The word is Indian, signifying *a weir for fish*." Another authority says : "It signifies *great lake*." Michigan is known as the *Lake State*, it bordering on four great lakes ; also as the *Wolverine State*, because of the great number of wolverines formerly abounding there. The inhabitants are sometimes designated as *Wolverines*.

Florida was discovered on *Pascua Florida* day, hence its name (see p. 83). Florida's pet name is the *Peninsula State*.

Texas.—"The name was derived from a small tribe of Indians that inhabited a village called *Texas*, meaning friendly." Texas is called

the *Lone Star State*, the Texas flag, before the admission of the State into the Union, having a single star. The coat of arms of the State has a "lone star" (see p. 236).

Iowa.—This, according to Trumbull, is "the French form of an Indian word, signifying *the drowsy or the sleepy ones*." Iowa is called the *Hawkeye State*, after an Indian chief.

Wisconsin.—This State takes its name from a large tributary of the Mississippi discovered by Marquette, and called by him Masconsin (*wild rushing channel*). Masconsin became changed to Ouisconsin, and finally to Wisconsin. Owing to the great number of badgers that were formerly in the State, it was and is called the *Badger State*. The State's coat of arms has a picture of a badger.

California.—A romance was published in Spain in 1510, in which the word California, applied to an imaginary island, for the first time occurs. Cortez had read the book, it is supposed, and when he sailed along the west coast of Mexico, in 1535, he called the country California. It has been suggested that the root of the word is Arabic, meaning *caliph*. California is known as the *Golden State*, it being the most important gold-producing region in the world.

Minnesota.—The name is from two Indian words, signifying *sky-colored water* or *cloudy water*. The familiar appellation of Minnesota is the *North Star State*. On its seal are the words *L'étoile du Nord*, the Star of the North.

Oregon.—The name, says Trumbull, "comes from an Indian language, with which the traveler Carver had been for many years familiar, and it is the accurate translation into that language of the name by which, as Carver had reason for believing, the 'Great River of the West' was designated by the tribes that lived near it." Owing to a peculiarity of the climate of Oregon, characterized by dry months in the summer and early autumn, and excessive rain in the winter, the State, and more particularly that portion lying west of the Cascade mountains, has been called the *Web-foot Country*; its inhabitants are called *Web-foots*.

Kansas.—An Indian word, signifying *smoky water*. The name *Garden of the West* is often given to this State, but it is also given to Illinois and other Western States that are noted for their productiveness.

West Virginia.—The name Virginia, during the reign of Queen Elizabeth, was applied to all the region which the English claimed in the new world, (see p. 40). West-Virginia, because of its grand mountain scenery, is sometimes called the *Switzerland of America*. The term is also occasionally applied to New Hampshire.

Nevada.—This State was named from the mountain range on the west of

it, called the Sierra Nevada. The two words Sierra Nevada are Spanish, the former meaning serrated or saw-toothed; the latter, snowy. When applied to a mountain they signify a serrated, snowy mountain.

Nebraska.—The word is of Indian origin, signifying *shallow water*. It was first applied to the Platte river, which runs through the State.

Colorado.—This word is Spanish, and means *red* or *ruddy*. Colorado is familiarly called the *Centennial State* (see p. 300).

THE SUCCESSIVE CAPITALS.

THE first capital of the United States was **Philadelphia**. In the old State House, or, as it is more commonly called, Independence Hall, of that city, the Declaration of Independence was adopted by a Congress of delegates from the colonies (p. 145). A little more than five months after that event, while the British forces under Cornwallis were advancing against Washington across New Jersey (p. 149), Congress adjourned to **Baltimore** (December, 1776), but returned to **Philadelphia** less than three months later (March, 1777). On the approach of Howe against Philadelphia, in September of that year (p. 154), Congress adjourned at first to **Lancaster, Pa.** (September 27th to 30th, 1777), and then to **York, Pa.** After the retirement of the British from Pennsylvania (p. 162), Congress returned to **Philadelphia** (July, 1778), and that city continued to be the capital till June, 1783, when Congress adjourned to **Princeton, N. J.** (June 30), and, in November of the same year, to **Annapolis, Md.** (p. 177). After a recess of five months, a session of Congress was opened at **Trenton, N. J.**, and here measures were suggested which resulted in making the city of Washington the permanent seat of government. In January, 1785, Congress adjourned to **New York**. It must be remembered that the Congress of the Revolution, under the Articles of Confederation, was not much like our present Congress. It was more of a continuous body, in which, after the first three or four years, all the States were seldom represented at the same time.

When the Constitution went into operation New York was still the capital (p. 182), and in that city Washington was inaugurated president, and there he resided until 1790, when, by an act of Congress, the capital was removed to **Philadelphia** for a period of ten years (p. 191). By this act it was also determined to establish the permanent capital somewhere on the Potomac river, the site to be selected by the president. After the adjournment of Congress, Washington made a tour through the Southern States, and, stopping several days on the Potomac, performed the duty imposed upon him. In the nation's new capital, the city of **Washington**, Congress assembled in November of 1800,

POLITICAL PARTIES.

1. During the war between Great Britain and her American colonies the Tory party in power was more determined to adopt and prosecute harsh and unjust measures against the colonists than the opposition, the Whig party. Hence the colonists who adhered to the crown were called **Tories**, while those who were in sympathy with the cause of liberty and independence were called **Whigs**; and for many years these latter took pleasure in styling themselves American Whigs.

2. When the Constitution was presented to the States for adoption (1787) it met with very decided opposition. Its friends, believing that in the event of its rejection the Union could not continue to exist, took the name of **Federalists**: upon their opponents they bestowed the name of **Anti-Federalists**. The former wanted a strong government, strong enough to make itself obeyed at home and respected abroad. The latter, "opposed to conferring so much power upon the general government," preferred a confederacy, such as then existed, to any federal government whatever. In the ranks of the Federalists were included Washington, Hamilton, John Adams, Jay, and Marshall. The leaders of the other side, who at first permitted themselves to be designated as Anti-Federalists, but who subsequently called themselves **Republicans**, and at a later period Democrats, were Jefferson, Randolph, George Clinton, Burr, and others (p. 179). After the adoption of the Constitution, for a period of thirty years, these two parties continued to exist; but the questions relating to the regulation of commerce, the tariff, the public debt, a national bank, and the French Revolution, created new issues, and to a large extent blended party lines. The opposition of the Federalists to the war of 1812, the favor they extended to the Hartford Convention (p. 215), and other causes, completed their overthrow and led to their final extinction as a party.

3. The first three elections—Washington's two and John Adams' one—were Federal victories. The election of Jefferson (in 1801), the first **Republican** victory, was the first great political revolution in the United States. The two elections of Madison were also triumphs of the Republican party, though Madison had co-operated with Hamilton and Jay in defending the Constitution (p. 179). The Republicans were now, as they had been all along since the first election of Jefferson, opposed to any currency but gold and silver. The two succeeding elections, those of Monroe, may also be regarded as Republican victories, though party lines were almost obliterated, the eight years of Monroe's administration being known as "the era of good feeling" (p. 219). The next

presidential election, there being no regularly organized political parties, was more of a personal than a party contest. Most of the members of the now extinct Federal party, however, supported Adams (p. 222).

4. The presidential contest of 1828, "the most bitter in American history," was largely of a personal character. Its result, the election of Jackson, was a victory for the Democratic party (p. 226). The opponents of the **Democrats** began at this time to be called **Whigs**, though they were more generally known as National Republicans. Jackson's administration was engaged in an almost constant strife with the Whigs, the Anti-Masons, and the United States Bank; but his popularity secured him a second election and also the election of his friend Van Buren (p. 230). A faction of the Democratic party at this time was called **Loco-Focos**. The name originated in 1834, from an incident that occurred at a meeting in Tammany Hall, New York. Two factions, differing widely in opinion, were contending amid a scene of confusion and tumult, when suddenly the gas-lights were extinguished by one of the factions with a view to break up the meeting. At once, however, the opposite faction relighted the hall by means of loco-foco matches, and accomplished their object. In the election of 1840 the Whigs were successful, their candidate, Harrison, being chosen by a large majority (p. 233).

5. In the contest of 1844 the Democratic party favored the "annexation of Texas," the "whole of Oregon or none," and a low tariff. It was the most closely contested election thus far in the history of the country. If the Abolition vote had been given to Clay he would have been elected. As it was, Polk, the Democratic nominee, was the successful candidate (p. 237). As the next canvass approached two factions again appeared in the Democratic party. One of these, known as the Hunkers, or Conservatives, endeavored to ignore the slavery question altogether. The other faction, known as Free Soil Democrats, but called by their opponents Barnburners, took a stand against the further extension of slavery, and finally joined the **Free Soilers**. Three candidates were then put in nomination, including ex-president Van Buren, the nominee of the Free Soilers. The result was in favor of Taylor, and thus the Whigs came a second time into power (p. 244); but they held it for only the brief period of four years, when the Democrats, with Pierce as their standard-bearer, were successful (p. 249). Before the next, the eighteenth national election, took place, the Whig party, neither pro-slavery nor anti-slavery, ceased to exist, and two new parties, the Republican and the American, came into being. The **Republicans** were opposed to the extension of slavery, the **Americans** to the easy naturalization of foreigners. The latter belonged to a secret organization, of whose name, nature, and objects nothing at first was

told even to its members. As they consequently declared that they knew nothing about it, they were commonly called Know-Nothings. The Democrats, with Buchanan as their candidate, carried the election (p. 253).

6. The presidential contest in the fall of 1860 saw four candidates in the field, Breckinridge, Douglass, Bell, and Lincoln. The first, the candidate of one wing of the Democratic party, was in favor of carrying slavery into the Territories; the second, the candidate of the other wing of the party, announced that the people of the territories ought to decide the question of slavery for themselves. Bell, the nominee of the American, or, as it was now called, the **Constitutional Union Party**, evaded the question of slavery altogether; while Lincoln, the Republican candidate, was opposed to the further extension of slavery (p. 255). Lincoln's election was the signal for the secession movement. In 1864, with Lincoln, the Republicans were again successful (p. 290).

7. The Republican party, after the great civil war, holding that the Southern States that had united as the *Confederate States of America* could only be admitted to all their former rights in the Union on terms satisfactory to Congress, nominated Grant for the presidency. His opponent was Horatio Seymour, of New York. Grant was elected (p. 297). His competitor four years later was Horace Greeley who had been nominated by a large number of Grant's former supporters, but who had become dissatisfied with the administration. They called themselves **Liberal Republicans**. Greeley was also nominated by the Democrats, but did not receive their full vote. Again was Grant successful. The next general election (in 1876) found three parties contending. The new party, the **National Greenbackers**, "composed of men who desired national paper-money instead of national bank-notes, and who opposed the proposed resumption of specie payments," nominated Peter Cooper for president. They polled only about 80,000 popular votes. The contest was between Hayes and Tilden, and for three months the result was in doubt, but was finally declared to be in favor of Hayes (p. 304).

Presidents, Vice-Presidents, and States.

PRESIDENTS AND VICE-PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

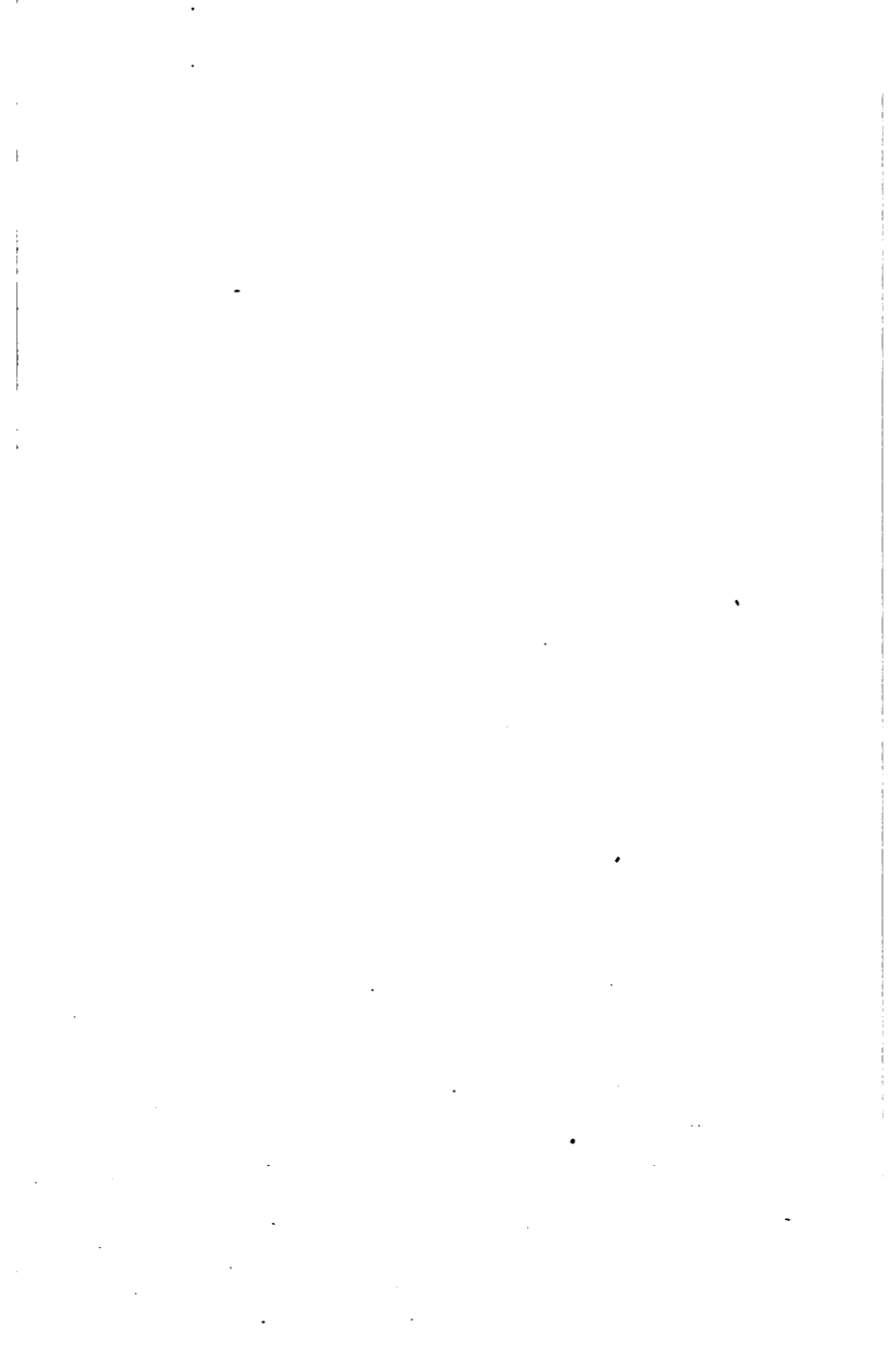
No.	PRESIDENTS.	RESIDENCE.	INAUGURATED.	VICE-PRESIDENTS.
1	George Washington	Virginia	April 30, 1789	John Adams.
2	John Adams	Massachusetts	March 4, 1797	Thomas Jefferson.
3	Thomas Jefferson	Virginia	March 4, 1801	Aaron Burr. George Clinton.*
4	James Madison	Virginia	March 4, 1809	George Clinton. Elbridge Gerry.*
5	James Monroe	Virginia	March 4, 1817	Daniel D. Tompkins.
6	John Q. Adams	Massachusetts	March 4, 1825	John C. Calhoun. John C. Calhoun.†
7	Andrew Jackson	Tennessee	March 4, 1829	Martin Van Buren. Richard M. Johnson.
8	Martin Van Buren	New York	March 4, 1837	John Tyler.
9	William H. Harrison*	Ohio	March 4, 1841	
10	John Tyler	Virginia	April 6, 1841	
11	James K. Polk	Tennessee	March 4, 1845	George M. Dallas.
12	Zachary Taylor*	Louisiana	March 5, 1849	Millard Fillmore.
13	Millard Fillmore	New York	July 10, 1850	
14	Franklin Pierce	New Hampshire	March 4, 1853	William R. King.*
15	James Buchanan	Pennsylvania	March 4, 1857	John C. Breckinridge. Hamilton Hamilit. Andrew Johnson.
16	Abraham Lincoln*	Illinois	March 4, 1861	
17	Andrew Johnson	Tennessee	April 15, 1865	Schuyler Colfax. Henry Wilson.*
18	Ulysses S. Grant	Illinois	March 4, 1869	William A. Wheeler.
19	Rutherford B. Hayes	Ohio	March 5, 1877	

SETTLEMENT AND ADMISSION OF THE STATES.

STATES.	SETTLED.			ADMIT'D	IN WHOSE ADMINISTRATION.
	When.	Where.	By whom.		
Virginia	1607	Jamestown	English	The 13 original States	
New York	1614	New York	Dutch		
Massachusetts	1620	Plymouth	English		
New Hampshire	1623	Little Harbor	English		
Connecticut	1633	Windsor	English		
Maryland	1634	St. Mary's	English		
Rhode Island	1636	Providence	English		
Delaware	1638	Wilmington	Swedes		
North Carolina	1650	Chowan River	English		
New Jersey	1664	Elizabeth	Dutch		
South Carolina	1670	Ashley River	English		
Pennsylvania	1682	Philadelphia	English		
Georgia	1733	Savannah	English		
Vermont	1724	Fort Dummer	English	1791	
Kentucky	1775	Boonesboro	English	1792	Washington.
Tennessee	1775	Fort Loudon	English	1796	
Ohio	1788	Marietta	English	1803	Jefferson.
Louisiana	1699	Iberville	French	1812	
Indiana	1790	Vincennes	French	1816	Madison.
Mississippi	1716	Natchez	French	1817	
Illinois	1682	Kaskaskia	French	1818	
Alabama	1711	Mobile	French	1819	Monroe.
Maine	1625	Bristol	French	1820	
Missouri	1764	St. Louis	French	1821	
Arkansas	1685	Arkansas Post	French	1836	Jackson.
Michigan	1670	Detroit	French	1837	
Florida	1565	St. Augustine	Spaniards	1845	Tyler.
Texas	1692	San Antonio	Spaniards	1845	
Iowa	1835	Burlington	English	1846	Polk.
Wisconsin	1669	Green Bay	French	1848	
California	1769	San Diego	Spaniards	1850	Fillmore.
Minnesota	1846	St. Paul	Americans	1858	
Oregon	1811	Astoria	Americans	1859	Buchanan.
Kansas			Americans	1861	
West Virginia	1774	Wheeling	English	1863	
Nevada	1850	Genoa	Americans	1864	Lincoln.
Nebraska				1867	Johnson.
Colorado				1876	Grant.

* Died in office.

† Resigned.



APPENDIX.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

A Declaration by the Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, July 4, 1776.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these, are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these states. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:—

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature; a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the state remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these states; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in time of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined, with others, to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them by a mock trial, from punishment, for any

murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these states :

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world :

For imposing taxes on us without our consent :

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefit of trial by jury :

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences :

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies :

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments :

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms ; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may defile a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and mag-

nanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other, our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

New Hampshire.—Josiah Bartlett, William Whipple, Matthew Thornton. **Massachusetts Bay.**—Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry. **Rhode Island.**—Stephen Hopkins, William Ellery. **Connecticut.**—Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington, William Williams, Oliver Wolcott. **New York.**—William Floyd, Philip Livingston, Francis Lewis, Lewis Morris. **New Jersey.**—Richard Stockton, John Witherspoon, Francis Hopkinson, John Hart, Abraham Clark. **Pennsylvania.**—Robert Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benjamin Franklin, John Morton, George Clymer, James Smith, George Taylor, James Wilson, George Ross. **Delaware.**—Cæsar Rodney, George Read, Thomas M'Kean. **Maryland.**—Samuel Chase, William Paca, Thomas Stone, Charles Carroll, of Carrollton. **Virginia.**—George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Harrison, Thomas Nelson, jun., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton. **North Carolina.**—William Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn. **South Carolina.**—Edward Rutledge, Thomas Heyward, jun., Thomas Lynch, jun., Arthur Middleton. **Georgia.**—Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, George Walton.

This declaration was signed on the day of its adoption, by John Hancock, the president of Congress, also by the secretary; and thus it went forth to the world. It was engrossed, and (Aug. 2) signed by fifty-four delegates; afterward two more signed, making fifty-six in all.

THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

1. Origin of the Constitution.—When the Revolutionary struggle commenced, there were three forms of colonial government in force among the colonies. (See the History, p. 113.)

On the 11th of June, 1776, Congress resolved that a committee should be appointed to prepare a form of confederation, to be entered into by the colonies. On the 12th of July following, this committee, consisting of one from each state, reported a draft of Articles of Confederation. The Report was considered and debated from time to time until the 15th of November, 1777, when, with some amendments, it was adopted. These Articles of Confederation were ratified in 1778 by all the states except Delaware and Maryland, and by Delaware in 1779; but, in consequence of the delay on the part of Maryland, they did not go into effect until the 1st of March, 1781, the day on which they were signed by the delegates from that state.

2. It was soon found that the Articles of Confederation were not adequate to the wants of the government. They were deficient as regards the regulation of commerce, the settling of controversies between the states, the making of treaties with foreign nations, and especially so in not conferring the necessary power upon Congress to liquidate the debts incurred during the war. Consequently, a convention of delegates from all the states, except Rhode Island, met at Philadelphia, in May, 1787, for the purpose of revising the Articles of Confederation; but it was thought best by a majority of the delegates to adopt an entirely new form of government, instead of making any attempts to amend the defective one then in existence. Accordingly, on the 17th of September, 1787, after four months' deliberation, the present Constitution,—except some changes which have since been made,—was adopted by the Convention. (See the History, p. 178.) The new Constitution was submitted to the people, who, in the newspapers, legislative halls, and elsewhere, discussed it with earnestness and thoroughness; the ratification of nine states being requisite before it could go into effect. It met with considerable opposition; but after it had been adopted by all the states, except North Carolina and Rhode Island, it went into operation March 4th, 1789.

THE CONSTITUTION WAS ADOPTED AS FOLLOWS BY:

Delaware	Dec. 7, 1787	Maryland	April 28, 1788
Pennsylvania	Dec. 12, 1787	South Carolina	May 23, 1788
New Jersey	Dec. 18, 1787	New Hampshire	June 21, 1788
Georgia	Jan. 2, 1788	Virginia	June 26, 1788
Connecticut	Jan. 9, 1788	New York	July 26, 1788
Massachusetts	Feb. 6, 1788	North Carolina	Nov. 21, 1789
Rhode Island			May 29, 1790.

THE CONSTITUTION.

PREAMBLE.¹

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I. THE LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

SECTION I. *Congress in General.*

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION II. *House of Representatives.*

1st Clause. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several states, and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

2d Clause. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

3d Clause. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and, excluding Indians not taxed, three-

¹ The object of the Preamble is to state the purposes of the Constitution. Three general departments of government are established under the Constitution, viz. : the legislative, the power that enacts the laws ; the executive, the power that enforces the laws ; and the judicial, the power that interprets the laws.

fifths of all other persons.¹ (See Article XIV. of the Amendments.) The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the state of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

4th Clause. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

5th Clause. The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.²

SECTION III. *The Senate.*

1st Clause. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

2d Clause. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.³

3d Clause. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

¹ By the term "all other persons" was meant slaves.

² An impeachment is an accusation against a public officer, charging him with misconduct in the discharge of his official duties.

³ A senator's full term consists of six years; he is chosen by the legislature of his State. A representative's full term is only two years; he is elected by the people of his congressional district.

4th Clause. The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5th Clause. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore,¹ in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

6th Clause. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall all be on oath or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

7th Clause. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION IV. *Both Houses.*

1st Clause. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.¹

2d Clause. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION V. *The Houses Separately.*

1st Clause. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum² to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide.

2d Clause. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings,

¹ A "president pro tempore" is one chosen only for the time being.

² An act of Congress requires the legislature of each state, which shall be chosen next preceding the expiration of any senatorial term, on the second Tuesday after its first meeting, to elect a successor, each house nominating *viva voce*, and then convening in joint assembly to compare nominations. In case of agreement, such person shall be declared duly elected; and if they do not agree, then balloting to continue from day to day, at 12 M. during the session, until choice has been made. Vacancies are to be filled in like manner.

³ By a quorum is meant a sufficient number to do business. Usually a majority is a quorum.

punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

3d Clause. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4th Clause. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECTION VII. *Privileges and Disabilities of Members.*

1st Clause. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States.¹ They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace,² be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

2d Clause. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SECTION VII. *Mode of Passing Laws.*

1st Clause. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

2d Clause. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the president of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which

¹ The members of Congress are compensated for their services by the general government, out of the treasury of the United States. Each member receives \$5000 per annum, and mileage at the rate of twenty cents a mile. For each day's absence, except when caused by sickness, \$3 per diem is deducted from the salary. The speaker of the House of Representatives receives double the salary of a member.

² Treason is defined by the Constitution (see Article III., Section III. p. 18). Felony is a crime punishable with death. A breach of the peace is a violation of the public order.

it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it.¹ If after such reconsideration two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

8d Clause. Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.²

SECTION VIII. *Powers granted to Congress.*

The Congress shall have power—

1st Clause. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts, and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States.³

2d Clause. To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

3d Clause. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several state, and with the Indian tribes;

4th Clause. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization,⁴ and uni-

¹ The president's act of objecting to a bill is called a veto. This, the veto power, was given to the president to enable him to protect the executive department against the encroachments of the legislative. It was also given with a view to greater security against the enactment of improper laws.

² If it were not for this provision, Congress might pass laws, calling them orders or resolutions, and thus evade the president's veto.

³ Taxes are contributions of money exacted by government from individuals for public purposes. They are of two kinds: direct, when they are laid on the person or property of individuals; and indirect, when laid on the importation, exportation, and consumption of goods. Duties are taxes on the importation or exportation of goods. Imports are taxes on goods imported. Excises are taxes on goods produced or manufactured in the country.

⁴ The act by which a foreigner becomes a citizen of the United States is called naturalization. A person must reside in this country five years before he can be naturalized and thus be entitled to all the rights and privileges of citizenship.

form laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States ;

5th Clause. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures ;

6th Clause. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States ;

7th Clause. To establish post-offices and post-roads ;

8th Clause. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries ;¹

9th Clause. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court ;

10th Clause. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations ;²

11th Clause. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal,³ and make rules concerning captures on land and water ;

12th Clause. To raise and support armies ; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years ;

13th Clause. To provide and maintain a navy ;

14th Clause. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces ;

15th Clause. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions ;

16th Clause. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress ;

17th Clause. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States ; and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, maga-

¹ This exclusive right extended to authors is called a copy-right. It is granted for a period of twenty-eight years, after which it may be renewed for the further period of fourteen years. The inventor of a machine is entitled to the exclusive right, called a patent right, of manufacturing it for a period of fourteen years. At the end of the fourteen years the Commissioner of Patents is authorized to extend the right for the further period of seven years.

² Piracy is defined as "robbery on the high seas," the "high seas" being all the waters of the ocean beyond the boundaries of low-water mark.

³ "Letters of marque and reprisal" are commissions, granted by the government to individuals, authorizing them to prey upon the commerce of another nation.

zines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings;¹—and

18th Clause. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION IX. *Powers denied to the United States.*

1st Clause. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.²

2d Clause. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.³

3d Clause. No bill of attainder or ex post facto law shall be passed.⁴

4th Clause. No capitation,⁵ or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

5th Clause. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state.

6th Clause. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one state over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one state, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

7th Clause. No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

¹ In 1788 Maryland ceded 60 square miles of land, and next year Virginia ceded 40 square miles, to the United States as a site for the national capital. This made a square of 10 miles, or 100 square miles, 60 square miles being on the east side of the Potomac and 40 on the west, which was named the District of Columbia, in honor of Christopher Columbus. The tract on the Virginia side of the river was retroceded to that State in 1846, consequently the District now consists of the territory ceded by Maryland in 1788.

² By the term "such person" was meant slaves. The great object of the clause was to enable Congress to put an end to the importation of slaves into the United States, and this was accomplished by a law which went into effect on the 1st of January, 1808.

³ "A writ of habeas corpus" is a written command from a judge or other magistrate, directing that the body of a certain person shall be brought before him. Its object is to provide a means of redress for all manner of illegal imprisonment.

⁴ A bill of attainder is an act of the legislature inflicting the punishment of death, without trial, upon persons supposed to be guilty of high crimes. An ex post facto law is a law which renders an act punishable which was not punishable at the time of its commission.

⁵ A capitation tax is a direct tax upon individuals.

8th Clause. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION X. *Powers denied to the States.*

1st Clause. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit;¹ make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

2d Clause. No state shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws;² and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any state on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

3d Clause. No state shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage,³ keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II. THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

SECTION I. *President and Vice-President.*

1st Clause. The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows.⁴

2d Clause. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legisla-

¹ Bills of credit, within the meaning of the Constitution, are bills intended to circulate as money among the people.

² Inspection laws require certain articles of commerce to be examined by officers called inspectors.

³ A tax laid on vessels at a certain rate per ton is called a duty of tonnage.

⁴ It will be seen that the Constitution does not limit the number of terms for which a president may be re-elected. Washington, at the close of his second term, declined to be a candidate for a third term; and this example has been a precedent by which subsequent presidents have been guided. The president and vice-president are not chosen by the people directly, but by electors.

ture thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

THE TWELFTH AMENDMENT TO THE CONSTITUTION.¹

1st Clause. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice president, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate; the president of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted, the person having the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as president, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a president whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the president.

2d Clause. The person having the greatest number of votes as vice president, shall be the vice president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a

¹ The original clause of the Constitution, prescribing the mode in which the president and vice-president were to be elected, was repealed in 1804, and the twelfth amendment (as given above) was adopted in its place. By the original clause, the electors voted for two persons without naming their choice for the higher position, "the person having the greatest number of votes" being declared president, and the next, vice-president. Washington, John Adams, and Jefferson (for first term) were so elected.

majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the vice-president; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

3d Clause. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.

4th Clause. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes, which day shall be the same throughout the United States.¹

5th Clause. No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

6th Clause. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president; and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.²

7th Clause. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.³

8th Clause. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—

“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States, and will, to the best of

¹ In the event of there being no president of the United States, or vice-president, as stated above, the president of the Senate, *pro tempore*, shall act as president; and, in the event of there being no president of the Senate, the Speaker of the House of Representatives shall act as president.

² The electors are chosen by the people on the Tuesday next after the first Monday in the last November of each presidential term; and the electors meet to give their votes on the first Wednesday in the next succeeding December, in their respective states, at the places—usually the capital—appointed by the state legislatures.

³ The president's salary is \$50,000 a year, together with the use of the presidential mansion and its furniture. The vice-president's salary is \$8,000 a year. The president *pro tem.* of the Senate receives the same compensation as the vice-president.

my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION II. *Powers of the President.*

1st Clause. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant, reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2d Clause. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.¹

3d Clause. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION III. *Duties of the President.*

He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient;² he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public minis-

¹ Six executive departments, namely: Of State, of the Navy, of War, of the Treasury, of the Post-office, and of the Interior, to aid the president in the discharge of his duty, have been established by Congress. The heads of these departments, as well as the attorney-general, are appointed by the president with the advice and consent of the Senate; and the seven persons so appointed constitute the president's cabinet.

² It is the custom for the president to inform Congress of the state of the Union and make recommendations by means of written messages; but this was not the custom with Washington and John Adams. They used to go to Congress and make their recommendations by prepared addresses, which they read. Congress is under no obligation whatever to adopt the president's recommendations.

ters; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION IV. *Impeachment of the President.*

The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III. THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

SECTION I. *The United States Courts.*

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.¹

SECTION II. *Jurisdiction of the United States Courts.*

1st Clause. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states; between a state and citizens of another state; between citizens of different states; between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

2d Clause. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.²

¹ The supreme court of the United States is composed of one chief-justice, at a salary of \$10,500 a year, and eight associate justices, each of whom has a salary of \$10,000 a year.

² Original jurisdiction is that in which a suit originates or commences. Appellate jurisdiction is that in which the decision of an inferior court is upon an appeal.

3d Clause. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the state where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION III. *Treason.*

1st Clause. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2d Clause. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.¹

ARTICLE IV. MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.

SECTION I. *State Records.*

Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION II. *Privileges of Citizens.*

1st Clause. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

2d Clause. A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

3d Clause. No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.²

¹ Attainder means a staining, corruption, or rendering impure: and by corruption of blood a person is disabled to inherit lands from an ancestor, nor can he either retain those in his possession or transmit them by descent to his heirs. They go to the government.

² The person referred to was a fugitive slave or person bound by indentures of apprenticeship. The "fugitive slave law" passed by Congress during Fillmore's administration.

SECTION III. *New States and Territories.*

1st Clause. New states may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned as well as of the Congress.

2d Clause. The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state.

SECTION IV. *Guarantees to the States.*

The United States shall guarantee to every state in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V. POWERS OF AMENDMENT.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress: provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI. PUBLIC DEBT, SUPREMACY OF THE CONSTITUTION, OATH OF OFFICE, RELIGIOUS TEST.

1st Clause. All debts contracted and engagements entered into,

tion under authority of this clause was productive of much excitement in the country. At the North public sentiment was against it, and it was only executed through the most determined effort of the government. In Boston the presence of a large body of soldiers and policemen was necessary to prevent the people from setting free a captured fugitive slave who was about to be sent South to his owner. All this has been changed by the adoption of the last three articles of the amendments to the Constitution. (See p.)

before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

2d Clause. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

3d Clause. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII. RATIFICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

The ratification of the conventions of nine states, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the states so ratifying the same.

AMENDMENTS.¹

PROPOSED BY CONGRESS, AND RATIFIED BY THE LEGISLATURES OF THE SEVERAL STATES, PURSUANT TO THE FIFTH ARTICLE OF THE ORIGINAL CONSTITUTION.

ARTICLE I. *Freedom of Religion.*

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II. *Right to bear Arms.*

A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

¹ While the constitution was under discussion, and before it had been adopted by the requisite nine states, it was generally believed that it did not sufficiently protect the rights of the people. With a view, therefore, of securing to both people and states certain rights beyond the possibility of their being encroached upon, the first ten articles of the amendments were proposed in 1789, during the first session of the first Congress under the Constitution, and, having been ratified by three fourths of the states, were declared adopted in 1791.

ARTICLE III. *Quartering Soldiers on Citizens.*

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV. *Search Warrants.*

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V. *Trial for Crime.*

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb;¹ nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI. *Rights of accused Persons.*

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

ARTICLE VII. *Suits at Common Law.*

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

¹ No person can be a second time tried for an offence of which he has been legally acquitted.

ARTICLE VIII. *Excessive Bail.*

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX. *Rights Retained by the People.*

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X. *Reserved Rights of the States.*

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.¹

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit, in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XIII.² *Slavery.*

SECTION I. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SEC. II. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.³

ARTICLE XIV.

SECTION I. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the state wherein they reside. No state shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any state deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SEC. II. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several

¹ The eleventh amendment was proposed by Congress in 1794, and declared adopted in 1798.

² For the twelfth amendment, see the Appendix, p. 14.

³ See the History, p. : 96.

states according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each state, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for president and vice-president of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a state, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such state, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such state.

SEC. III. No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of president and vice-president, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any state, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any state Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any state, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

SEC. IV. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any state shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

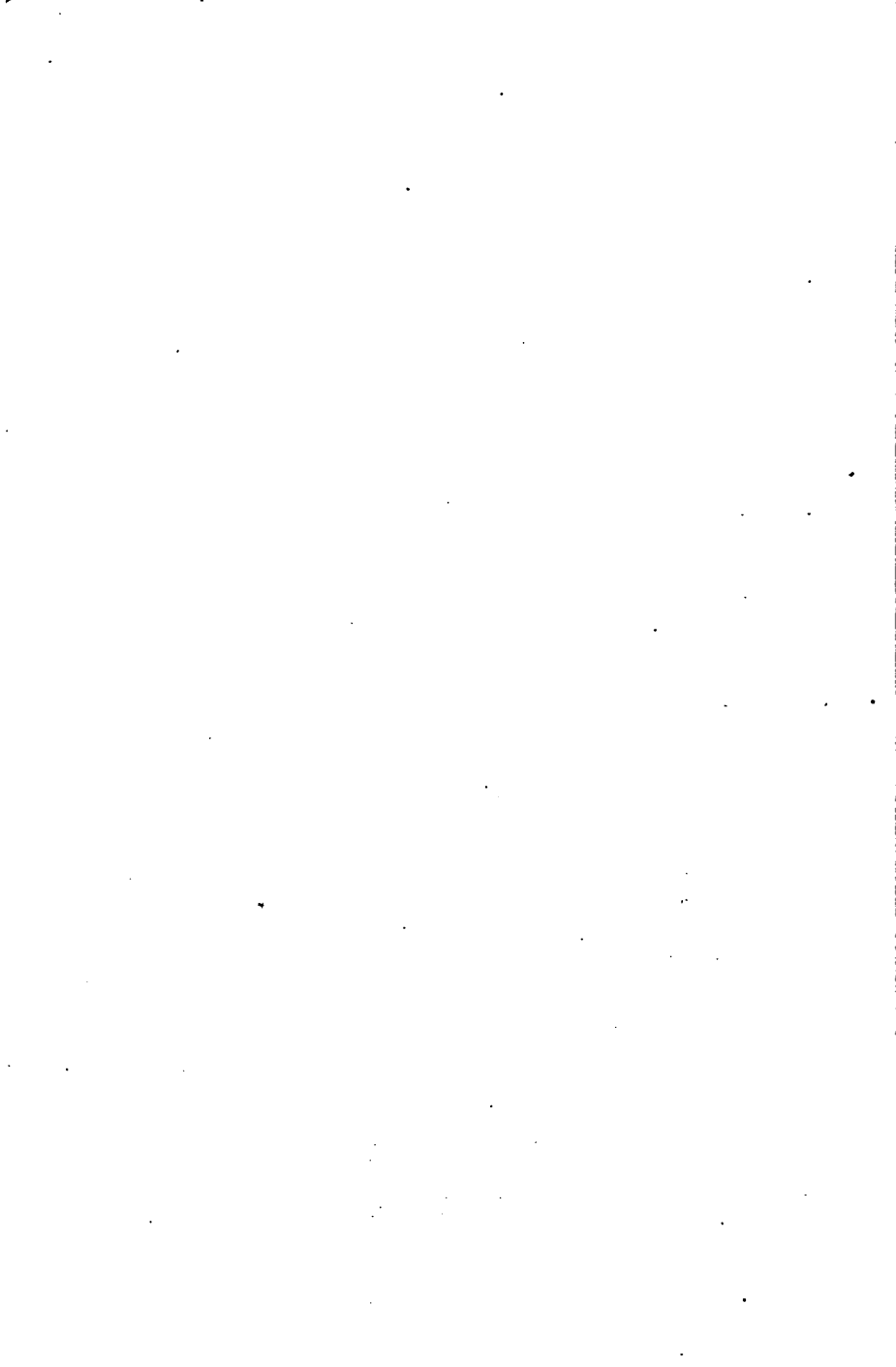
SEC. V. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE XV.

SEC. I. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any state, on account, of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SEC. II. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.¹

¹ See the History, p. 298.



INDEX.

Abercromby	108	Brewster, Elder	61
Acadia	41, 101, 105	Brooklyn	147
Adams, John 189, 146, 182, 183, 191, 233,	304	Brown, Gen. Jacob	213
Adams, J. Q.	233	Brown, John	253
Adams, Samuel	128, 183	Bryant, W. C.	303
Alabama	35, 220, 256	Buchanan, James	253
Alabama Claims	298	Buena Vista	229
Alabama, privateer	264, 269, 298	Bull Run, Battle of	261, 273
Alarcon	37	Bunker Hill	135, 136, 222
Alaska	297	Burgoyne, Gen.	156
Albemarle Colony	98	Burnside, Gen.	274, 288
Alexandria, Va.	261	Burr, Aaron	141, 195, 200
Algiers	216	Butler, Gen. B. F.	283, 288
Alien and Sedition Laws	192	Cabots	30, 60, 108
Allen, Ethan	135, 141	Cabrillo	37
American party	253, 255	Calhoun, John C.	224, 226, 228, 247
Amerigo Vespucci	30	California	229, 243, 247
Anderson, Maj.	256, 258	Calvert, Sir George	87
André, Maj.	169	Camden, S. C.	167, 178
Andros, Sir Edmund	73, 86	Canada	140
Annapolis, Md.	177, 178	Canals	226
Annapolis, N. S.	41, 101	Cape Charles	153
Antietam, Battle of	273	Cod	64, 115
Anti-Federalist	179	Henry	59
Appomattox Court House	238	Carolina	40, 96, 113
Argall	56	Carteret, Sir George	86
Arkansas	45, 229, 261	Cartier	41
Post, Capture of	274	Carver, Gov.	64
Arnold, Benedict 141, 157, 159, 168, 172,	174	Cedar Creek, Battle of	228
Articles of Confederation	178	Mountain, Battle of	273
Astor, John Jacob	257	Centennial Celebration	300
Astoria, Oregon	257	Cerro Gordo, Battle of	240
Atlanta, Capture of	285	Chambersburg	273, 277, 288
Atlantic Cable	301	Champlain	41
Aztecs	241	Chancellorsville	277
Bacon's Rebellion	59	Charleston	99, 113, 143, 166, 259, 290
Bainbridge, Com.	207	Charlestown	68, 122, 137
Balboa	31	Chattanooga	229
Baltimore, city	112, 213	Chemung, Battle of	164
Baltimore, Lord	87, 90	Cherry Valley, Massacre of	164
Bancroft, George	308	Chesapeake and Leopard	204
Bank of United States	184, 227	and Shannon	208
Banks, Gen.	272, 281, 284	Chicago	44, 298, 301
Barbary States	198	Chickahominy River	271
Baum, Col.	158	Chickamanga	232
Beauregard, Gen.	259, 263, 265	Chippewa, Battle of	213
Bell, John	255	Christian Commission	279
Belmont, Battle of	263	Cincinnati	301
Bennington, Battle of	158	Civil War	256
Berkeley, Sir William	59, 86	Clarendon County Colony	98
Black Hawk's War	230	Clayborne's Rebellion	88, 90
Bon Homme Richard	166	Clark, Gen. G. R.	164
Boone, Daniel	190	Clay, Henry	222, 229, 237, 247
Boston	18, 68, 106, 115, 127, 135, 298	Clinton, De Witt	177
Massacre	127	Clinton, Gen.	142, 162, 166
Tea Party	128	Cold Harbor, Battle of	287
Braddock, Gen.	106	Colonial Congress of 1765	126
Bradford, Gov.	65, 66, 67	Colleges	116
Bragg, Gen.	239, 252	Colorado	300
Brandywine, Battle of	198	Columbia River	257
Breckenridge, John C.	255	Columbia, S. C.	290
Breed's Hill	186	Columbus	15, 18, 19, 31

Compromises.....	220, 229, 247	Five Forks, Battle of.....	291
Concord.....	181, 184	Flag, Adoption of the National.....	158
Confederacy, Formation of.....	256	Florida.....	33, 47, 214, 220, 244, 256
Confederation, Articles of.....	268	Floyd, Gen.....	285
Congress, Continental.....	180, 189, 177	Foots, Admiral.....	285, 286
Connecticut.....	69, 113	Fort Donelson.....	285
Reserve.....	185	Du Quesne.....	107
Constitution of the United States.....	178	Edward.....	107, 158
and Guerriere.....	207	Fisher.....	290
Continental Money.....	118	Henry.....	285
Cooper, J. F.....	302	Lee.....	149
Cooper, Peter.....	233	McAllister.....	287
Corinth, Miss.....	266, 274	McHenry.....	214
Cornwallis, Lord.....	149, 168, 174, 175	Mems.....	211
Coronado.....	87	Montrie.....	143, 256
Cortes.....	84, 87	Pickens.....	257
Cotton.....	114, 188, 234	Pillow.....	284
Cotton-gin.....	114, 187, 302	Pitt.....	106, 111
Cowpens, Battle of.....	173	Pulaski.....	287
Crawford, W. H.....	293	Schuyler.....	156
Creek War.....	211	Stanwix.....	156
Crown Point.....	107, 156	Sumter.....	256, 257, 290
Cuba.....	22	Washington.....	149
Davenport, John.....	70	William Henry.....	107
Davis, Jefferson.....	256, 259, 291	Fortress Monroe.....	261, 271
Deane, Silas.....	154	Fox, George.....	74
Dearborn, Gen.....	212	France.....	160, 161, 182, 196
De Ayilon.....	34	Franklin, Benjamin.....	
Decatur, Lieut.....	199, 207, 217	115, 126, 146, 154, 160, 165, 179, 231	
Declaration of Independence.....	145	Fredericksburg.....	274
De Gama, Vasco.....	19	Free Soil party.....	245
De Grasse.....	174	Fremont, John C.....	239, 253, 268, 272
De Kalb.....	168	French Explorations.....	41-96
Delaware.....	91, 113	French and Indian War.....	102, 125
Delaware, Lord.....	56	Fugitive Slave law.....	247
De Leon, Ponce.....	32	Fulton, Robert.....	201
De Narvaez.....	34	Gadsden Purchase.....	243
De Soto.....	34	Gage, Gen.....	181, 142
D'Estaing.....	162, 165	Gansevoort, Colonel.....	156
Detroit.....	111, 206	Garrison, William L.....	252
Dieskau.....	107	Gaspee, Affair of the.....	128
Dinwiddie, Robert, Gov.....	103	Gates, Gen.....	159, 167
Dix, John A.....	257	Georgia.....	35, 99, 112, 164, 220, 256, 292
Dorr's Rebellion.....	235	Germantown, Battle of.....	154
Douglas, Stephen A.....	255	Gettysburg, Battle of.....	277
Dover, N. H.....	67	Ghent, Treaty of.....	216
Draft Riot.....	281	Gorges.....	67
Drake, Sir Francis.....	87	Gosnold, Bartholomew.....	54, 60
"Dred Scott" Decision.....	254	Grand Model.....	98
Du Quesne.....	104	Grant, Gen.....	293, 295, 295, 297
Dutch Explorations.....	47, 80	Great Meadows.....	105
Early, Gen.....	238	Salt Lake.....	249
Eaton, Theophilus.....	70	Greeley, Horace.....	299
Education.....	116	Greene, Gen.....	185, 151, 172, 174, 187
Elizabeth, Queen.....	88	Greenland.....	16
Elizabethtown (Elizabeth), N. J.....	87	Guadalupe Hidalgo, Treaty.....	243
Emancipation Proclamation.....	276	Guilford Court House.....	173
Embargo.....	205	Hadley, Surprise of.....	76
Endicott, John.....	68	Hale, Capt. Nathan.....	149, 171
English Explorations.....	29-80	Halleck, Gen.....	266, 272
Erie, Pa.....	16	Hamilton, Alexander.....	173, 179, 184, 200
Eutaw Springs, Battle of.....	173	Hancock, John.....	129, 192, 146, 147
Everett, Edward.....	227	Harmar, Gen., Defeat of.....	185
Fair Oaks, Battle of.....	271	Harper's Ferry.....	254, 261, 273
Faneuil Hall.....	129	Harrison, Gen.....	205, 211, 230, 232
Farragut, Admiral.....	236, 239	Hartford.....	69
Federalist party.....	179	Convention.....	215
Field, Cyrus W.....	301	Hatteras Inlet.....	293
Fillmore, Millard.....	247	Hayes, Rutherford B.....	304, 306
Fitch, John.....	201	Hayne, Col.....	166

Henry, Patrick.....	136, 131, 138, 304	Lincoln, President.....	255, 258, 298
Herkimer, Gen.....	156	Livingston, Robert R.....	184
Hessians.....	148, 150, 159	Locke, John.....	98
Hispaniola.....	22	London Company.....	52, 53
Hobkirk's Hill, Battle of.....	173	Long Island, Battle of.....	143, 172
Hood, Gen.....	285	Longstreet, Gen.....	283
Hooker, Gen.....	271, 276	Lookout Mountain, Battle of.....	282
Hooker, Rev. Thomas.....	69	Louisburg.....	101, 107
Howe, Admiral.....	153	Louisiana.....	102, 218, 256
Howe, Elias.....	302	Louisiana Purchase.....	47, 102, 111, 196, 198 (note), 218, 235, 243 (note 1), 257, 299 (note), 310 (Oregon).
Howe, Gen.....	186, 143, 148, 153, 162	Lundy's Lane, Battle of.....	212
Hubbardton, Battle of.....	156	Madison, President.....	179, 205
Hudson, Henry.....	47, 80	Magellan.....	81
Hudson River.....	47, 80	Magnetic Telegraph.....	286
Huguenots.....	96, 112	Maine.....	60, 230
Hull, Capt.....	207	Malvern Hill, Battle of.....	271
Hull, Gen.....	206	March to the Sea.....	286
Iberville River, La.....	111	Marco Polo.....	18
Iceland.....	16, 18	Marion, Gen.....	143, 166
Illinois.....	43, 220	Marquette.....	41
Indiana.....	219	Maryland.....	87, 113
Indians.....	22, 25, 66	Mason, John.....	67
Indian wars.....	59, 70, 76, 185, 219, 230	Mason and Dixon's Line.....	91
Internal Improvements.....	225	Mason and Eldell, Seizure of.....	264
Inventions.....	187, 301	Massachusetts.....	63, 74, 113
Iowa.....	244	Massasoit.....	67
Irving, Washington.....	302	Matamoras.....	239
Iroquois.....	102	Mayflower.....	63
Isabella, Queen.....	21	McClellan, Gen.....	261, 262, 270, 273, 290
Island No. 10.....	266	McCrea, Jane.....	158
Jackson, Andrew.....	211, 219, 226	McDonough, Com.....	213
Jackson, "Stonewall".....	271, 277	McDowell, Gen.....	262, 273
Jamestown.....	53	Meade, Gen.....	277, 287
Jasper, Sergeant.....	143	Memphis.....	266
Jay, John.....	181, 179, 185, 186	Mercer, Gen.....	159, 177
Jefferson, Thomas.....	145, 184, 195, 223	Merrimack and Monitor.....	268
Johnson, President.....	290, 295	Mexican War.....	236, 239
Johnson, Col. R. M.....	230	Mexico.....	37, 236, 238
Johnston, Gen. A. S.....	266	Michigan.....	229
Johnston, Gen. J. E.....	271, 285, 290, 293	Miller, Col.....	212
Joliet, the explorer.....	41	Mill Spring, Battle of.....	265
Jones, John Paul.....	165	Minnesota.....	257
Kansas.....	37, 249, 253	Minuit, Peter.....	83, 92
Kansas-Nebraska Bill.....	249	Minute Men.....	131
Kearny, Gen.....	239	Missionary Ridge.....	289
Kentucky.....	190, 265	Mississippi.....	35, 41, 220, 256
Kidd, Captain.....	84	Missouri.....	45, 220
Kieft, Gov.....	83	Mobile.....	214, 289
King George's War.....	101	Money.....	118
Philip's War.....	75	Monmouth, Battle of.....	162
William's War.....	101	Monocacy, Battle of.....	288
King's Mountain, Battle of.....	172	Monroe, President.....	219
Kington.....	160	Montcalm, Gen.....	106
Knox, Gen.....	177, 184	Morocco.....	196
Knoxville.....	283	Monterey.....	239
Lafayette.....	153, 163, 172, 220, 221	Montgomery, Ala.....	256
Lake Champlain.....	107, 140, 156, 213	Montgomery, Gen. Richard.....	140
Eric.....	209	Montreal.....	111, 141
George.....	108	Morgan, Gen.....	159, 172
La Salle.....	43, 102	Morgan's Raid.....	283
Lawrence, Capt.....	208	Mormons, The.....	248
Lee, Arthur.....	154	Morris, Gouverneur.....	200
Lee, Gen. Charles.....	140, 142, 162	Morristown.....	152
Lee, Col. Henry.....	173, 194	Morse, Samuel T. B.....	236, 301
Lee, Richard Henry.....	131, 144	Moultrie, Col.....	143
Lee, Robert E.....	271, 274, 282, 288	Mound-builders.....	27
Leisler, Jacob.....	85	Mount Vernon.....	178, 182, 194
Lewis and Clark Expedition.....	196, 257	Mulligan, Col.....	263
Lexington, Mass., Battle of.....	134		
Lincoln, Gen.....	164, 166		

Murfreesboro, Battle of	282	Plains of Abraham	110
Narvaes	34	Plattsburg	212
Nashville	265, 286	Plymouth Colony	63, 67
Nauvoo	248	Company	52, 60
Navigation Acts	113	Council	61
Nebrasks	249, 297	Pocahontas	55
Nevada	253, 290	Point Comfort	53, 58
New Albion	39	Political parties	179
New Brunswick	41	Polk, President	237
New England	59, 107	Pontiac's War	111
Newfoundland	87	Pope, Gen	266, 272
New Hampshire	67, 114	Popham, George	60
New Haven	70	Porter, Admiral	215, 268, 269, 290
New Jersey	80, 86, 113, 117	Port Hudson	281
New London	174	Royal, S. C	97, 263
New Mexico	239, 247	Royal, N. S.	41, 101
New Netherlands	69, 83	Porto Rico	52
New Orleans	214, 257, 266	Portsmouth	67
Newport, R. I.	163	Powhatan	54
Newport, Capt. Christopher	52	Preble, Commodore	198
Newspapers	115	Prescott, Col.	125
New Sweden	93	Princeton, Battle of	153
New York	80, 83, 112, 116, 126, 177, 257	Printing	115, 202
Niagara	107, 111	Providence	73
Norfolk	271	Puebla	240
Norsemen	15	Pulaaki	154, 165
North Carolina	94, 135, 184	Puritans	44, 61, 71, 86
North, Lord	176	Putnam, Gen.	135
Northmen	15	Quakers	74, 112
Norway	16	Quebec	41, 107, 108, 109, 141
North-west Territory	190	Queen Anne's War	101
Nova Scotia	41	Rahl, Gen	151
Nullification in South Carolina	226	Railroads	223
Nueces River	228	Raleigh, Sir Walter	40, 98
Oglethorpe, James Edward	99, 112	Randolph, Edmund	184
Ohio	23, 103, 196	Rawdon, Lord.	173
Olauste	264	Reconstruction of Southern States	296, 297
Oregon	267	Red River Expedition	284
Oriskany	156	Resaca de la Palma, Battle of	235
Osceola	230	Revere, Paul	122
Ossawatimie	254	Revolution	125
Otis, James	126, 304	Rhode Island	73, 112, 184
Pacific	31, 39	Ribault	96
Paine, Thomas	142	Richmond, Ky	274
Pakenham, Gen	214	Richmond, Va	174, 261, 291
Palo Alto, Battle of	238	Rio Grande	85, 228
Palos	23	Roanoke Island	40, 52, 267
Paoli	154	Robinson, John	61
Penn, William	86, 91	Rochambeau	174
Pennsylvania	91, 113, 117	Rocky Mountains	47, 248
Pensacola	214, 219	Rolfe, John	57
Pequod War	70	Rosecrans, Gen	274, 282
Perry, Commodore	209, 250	Roger Williams	72
Perryville, Battle of	274	Ross, Gen	213
Petersburg	288, 292	Salem	68
Philadelphia	94, 112, 129, 154, 161, 178	Witchcraft	78
Phillip, King	75	San Francisco	37, 39, 242, 246
Phipps, Sir William	78	Sanitary Commission	279
Pickens, Gen	166	San Salvador	22, 32
Piedmont	228	Santa Anna	229
Pierce, President	249	Santa Fe	53
Pigot, Gen	138	Saratoga, Battle of	159
Pike, Gen	212	Savannah	112, 164, 237
Pilgrims	61, 62	Saybrook Colony	69
Pillow, Gen	235	Schools	115, 116, 255
Pinckney, W	192	Schuyler, Gen	140, 166
Pitcairn, Maj	133	Scott, Gen	212, 228, 239, 256, 261, 262
Pitt, William	107, 127	Secession	238, 255
Pittsburg Landing, Battle of	266	Seminole Wars	219, 230
Pizarro	31, 84		

- Semmes, Capt. 264, 268
 Seward, William H. 236 (note), xix
 Sewing Machine. 302
 Shays's Rebellion. 178
 Shenandoah Valley. 271, 288
 Sheridan, Gen. 288, 291, 293
 Sherman, Gen. W. T. 283, 284, 285, 286
 Shiloh, Battle of. 266
 Slavery. 58, 60, 70, 78, 91 (note), 112, 114,
 (Appendix, p. 12, 1st clause, with note),
 183, 220, 225, 231, 236, 238, 244, 247, 248,
 249, 253, 254, 255, 258, 259, 276, 284, 296,
 298.
 Slote, Commodore. 239
 Smith, John. 53, 56 (note), 59, 60
 South Carolina. 96, 113, 228, 255, 256
 South Mountain, Battle of. 273
 Spanish Explorations. 21-48
 Speedwell, the Ship. 63
 Spottsylvania Court House, Battle of. 287
 Stamp Act. 125, 127
 Standish, Miles. 64
 Stark, General. 135, 138, 151, 158, 172
 St. Augustine, Fla. 53 (note), 120
 St. Clair, Gen. 156, 185
 St. Lawrence River. 41, 110
 St. Leger's Expedition. 156
 St. Louis. 301
 St. Mary's, Md. 89
 Steamboats. 201, 233
 Stillwater, Battle of. 159
 Stockton, Com. 239
 Stony Point, Battle of. 165
 Stuyvesant, Gov. 84, 112
 Sullivan, Gen. 151, 163, 164
 Sumter, Fort. 256, 257, 290
 Sumter, Gen. 166, 167, 256
 Sumter, Steamer. 264
 Swedes. 84, 86, 94
 Tariff. 225, 228, 229
 Tarleton, Col. 173
 Taxation, Colonial. 127, 129
 Taxed Tea. 129
 Taylor, Gen. Zachary. 230, 233, 244
 Tecumseh. 205, 211
 Telegraph. 236, 301
 Tennessee. 190, 261, 265, 282
 Texas. 236, 238, 256
 Thames, Battle of. 211
 Thomas, Gen. 265, 282, 286
 Ticonderoga. 107, 108, 135, 156
 Tilden, S. J. 304
 Tippecanoe, Battle of. 205
 Tobacco. 40, 57, 114, 255
 Topical Reviews. 40, 124, 181, 252, 266
 Tories. 159, 163
 Treaties of Paris. 111, 176
 Trenton. 150, 189
 Tripoli, War with. 198, 218
 Tunis. 218
 Tyler, President. 234, 235
 United States Bank. 184, 227 (note), 235
 Utah. 247
 Valley Forge. 155
 Van Buren, President. 229, 230
 Van Twiller. 83
 Vasco da Gama. 19 (note)
 Vera Cruz. 240
 Vermont. 158, 164
 Verazzani. 80 (note)
 Vicksburg. 266, 261
 Vinland. 18
 Virginia. 37, 55, 112, 127, 259, 261, 270
 Virginia and Monitor Battle. 268
 Wampum. 118
 Ward, Gen. 135
 War of 1812. 206
 with Mexico. 236
 Warren, Joseph. 129, 182, 138
 Washington. 103, 107, 128, 131, 139,
 153, 176, 179, 182, 194.
 Washington City. 195, 213, 262
 Wayne, Gen. 154, 165, 185
 Webster, Daniel. 147, 222, 235, 248
 Wesleys, The. 100
 West Point. 81, 169
 West Virginia. 28, 261, 283
 Whiskey Rebellion. 186
 Whitefield, George. 100
 White Plains. 149
 Whitney, Eli. 186
 Wilderness, Battle of the. 287
 Wilkes, Capt. 264
 Williamsburg, Va. 271
 Williams, Roger. 72
 Wilmington. 290
 Wilmot Proviso. 245
 Wilson's Creek. 263
 Winchester. 288
 Wingfield. 53
 Winslow, Governor. 73
 Winthrop, the elder. 68
 Winthrop, the younger. 69
 Wisconsin. 41, 244
 Witchcraft. 73
 Wolfe, Gen. 109
 Wool, Gen. 271
 Wyoming Massacre. 163
 York (Toronto), Canada. 212
 York, Pa. 212
 Yorktown, Va. 174





**PERMANENT TWO HOUR
TWO HOUR RESERVE**

RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROW

TWO HOUR RESERVE

14 DAY USE

RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

**EDUCATION-PSYCHOLOGY
LIBRARY**

**This book is due on the last date stamped below, or
on the date to which renewed.**

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

AUG 9 1968

JUL 31 REC'D -4 PM

JUL 11 1968

**JUL 7 REC'D -9 AM
FEB 13 1975**

MAR 11 1975

MAR 11 REC'D -10 AM

YB 37626

